



ATHENS UNIVERSITY
OF ECONOMICS
AND BUSINESS



MSc in International Shipping, Finance and Management

Microsoft Office Excel

Shipping, Finance & Management Skills

Instructor:

Stella Moysiadou, Researcher

**Laboratory for International Shipping, Finance and
Management**

Contact Details:

stm@aueb.gr

CONTENTS

Microsoft Office
*Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills*



- STARTING MICROSOFT EXCEL
- NAVIGATING BETWEEN WORKSHEETS
- NAVIGATING WITHIN A WORKSHEET
- WRITTEN COMMUNICATION: CREATING EFFECTIVE WORKBOOKS
- ENTERING TEXT
- ENTERING DATES
- ENTERING NUMBERS
- CHANGING THE COLUMN WIDTH OR ROW HEIGHT
- INSERTING A COLUMN OR ROW
- DELETING AND CLEARING A ROW OR COLUMN
- SAVING A WORKBOOK
- WORKING WITH CELLS AND RANGES
- INSERTING, DELETING, RENAMING A WORKSHEET
- MOVING AND COPYING A WORKSHEET
- UNDOING AND REDOING AN ACTION
- USING FIND AND REPLACE
- USING THE SPELLING CHECKER
- CHANGING WORKSHEET VIEWS
- WORKING WITH PORTRAIT AND LANDSCAPE ORIENTATION
- PRINTING THE WORKBOOK
- VIEWING AND PRINTING WORKSHEET FORMULAS
- WORKING WITH FORMULAS
- ENTERING A FORMULA
- COPYING AND PASTING FORMULAS
- UNDERSTANDING CELL REFERENCES
- COPYING FORMULAS AND FORMATS WITH AUTOFILL
- USING THE AUTO FILL OPTIONS BUTTON
- FILLING A SERIES
- ENTERING A FUNCTION
- ENTERING FUNCTIONS WITH THE AUTOSUM FEATURE

CONTENTS

Microsoft Office
*Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills*



- WORKING WITH LOGICAL FUNCTIONS
- USING THE IF FUNCTION TO EXPLORE FINANCIAL OPTIONS
- CREATING NESTED IFs
- FINDING AND FIXING ERRORS IN FORMULAS
- USING THE AND FUNCTION
- USING THE OR FUNCTION
- USING STRUCTURED REFERENCES TO CREATE FORMULAS IN EXCEL TABLES
- USING LOOKUP TABLES AND FUNCTIONS
- USING THE VLOOKUP FUNCTION TO FIND AN EXACT MATCH
- USING THE VLOOKUP FUNCTION TO FIND AN APPROXIMATE MATCH
- LOOKING UP VALUES USING THE HLOOKUP FUNCTION
- THE INDEX FUNCTION'S SYNTAX AND USAGE
- THE MATCH FUNCTION'S SYNTAX AND USAGE
- HOW TO USE INDEX MATCH FUNCTION IN EXCEL
- USING THE IFERROR FUNCTION
- SUMMARIZING DATA CONDITIONALLY
- EXCEL'S MATH FUNCTIONS
- EXCEL'S STATISTICAL FUNCTIONS
- CALCULATING MEASURES OF CENTRAL TENDENCY
- CALCULATING MEASURES OF VARIATION
- USING THE ANALYSIS TOOLPAK STATISTICAL TOOLS
- USING THE DESCRIPTIVE STATISTICS TOOL
- DETERMINING THE CORRELATION BETWEEN DATA
- WORKING WITH HISTOGRAMS
- USING THE RANDOM NUMBER GENERATION TOOL
- WORKING WITH RANK AND PERCENTILE

CONTENTS

Microsoft Office
*Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills*



- USING EXCEL'S REGRESSION ADD-IN
- ANALYSIS OF VARIANCE: ONE-WAY ANOVA
- SETTING UP SOLVER TO FIND A SOLUTION
- CREATING A SOLVER ANSWER REPORT
- SAVING AND LOADING SOLVER MODELS
- CALCULATING THE LOAN PAYMENT
- CALCULATING THE PRINCIPAL AND INTEREST
- CALCULATING THE TERM OF THE LOAN
- CALCULATING THE INTEREST RATE REQUIRED FOR A LOAN
- CALCULATING HOW MUCH YOU CAN BORROW
- CONVERTING BETWEEN THE NOMINAL RATE AND THE EFFECTIVE RATE
- CALCULATING THE FUTURE VALUE
- SAVING TIME WITH EXCEL TABLE FEATURES
- SPLITTING THE WORKSHEET WINDOW INTO PANES
- WRITTEN COMMUNICATION:
SUMMARIZING DATA WITH A PIVOTTABLE
- CREATING A PIVOTCHART
- WORKING WITH CHARTS
- FORMATTING WORKBOOKS FOR READABILITY AND APPEAL
- WORKING WITH THEMES
- WORKING WITH TABLE STYLES
- HIGHLIGHTING CELLS WITH CONDITIONAL FORMATS
- HIDING WORKSHEET DATA
- FORMATTING THE WORKSHEET FOR PRINTING
- GROUPING WORKSHEETS
- USING 3-D REFERENCES TO ADD VALUES ACROSS WORKSHEETS
- LINKING WORKBOOKS
- NAVIGATING AND ARRANGING MULTIPLE WORKBOOKS
- CREATING AN EXCEL WORKSPACE

CONTENTS

Microsoft Office
*Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills*



- CREATING A HYPERLINK
- CREATING TEMPLATES
- VALIDATING DATA ENTRY
- PROTECTING A WORKSHEET
- PROTECTING A WORKBOOK
- INSERTING COMMENTS
- SHARING A WORKBOOK WITH MULTIPLE USERS
- MERGE AND COMPARE WORKBOOKS
- SETTING DOCUMENT PROPERTIES
- INSPECTING A WORKBOOK
- ENCRYPTING A WORKBOOK
- MARKING A WORKBOOK AS FINAL
- PROVIDING A DIGITAL SIGNATURE
- ENSURING BACKWARD COMPATIBILITY IN A WORKBOOK
- AUTOMATING TASKS WITH MACROS

STARTING MICROSOFT EXCEL

Microsoft Office
*Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills*



- Click the **Start** button on the taskbar, click **All Programs**, click Microsoft Office, and then point to **Microsoft Excel 2010**.
- If you don't see Microsoft Excel 2010 on the Microsoft Office submenu, look for it on a different submenu or on the All Programs menu.
- Click Microsoft Excel 2010. The Excel window opens.
- If you want your Excel **window zoomed**, click the Zoom In button on the status bar to increase the zoom level. The magnification increases the screen size of each cell, but reduces the number of worksheet cells visible in the workbook window.
- If necessary, click the **Maximize** button on the Excel window title bar. The Excel window fills the screen.
- By default, Excel starts with a blank workbook maximized to fill the Excel window. The name of the active workbook, Book1, appears in the title bar. You can open more than one workbook window at a time to display the contents of different workbooks. You can also open multiple workbook windows for one workbook to display different views of the workbook's contents.

VISUAL OVERVIEW

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



Excel stores spreadsheets in files called **workbooks**. The contents of a workbook are shown in a workbook window.

The **Name box** displays the cell reference of the active cell.

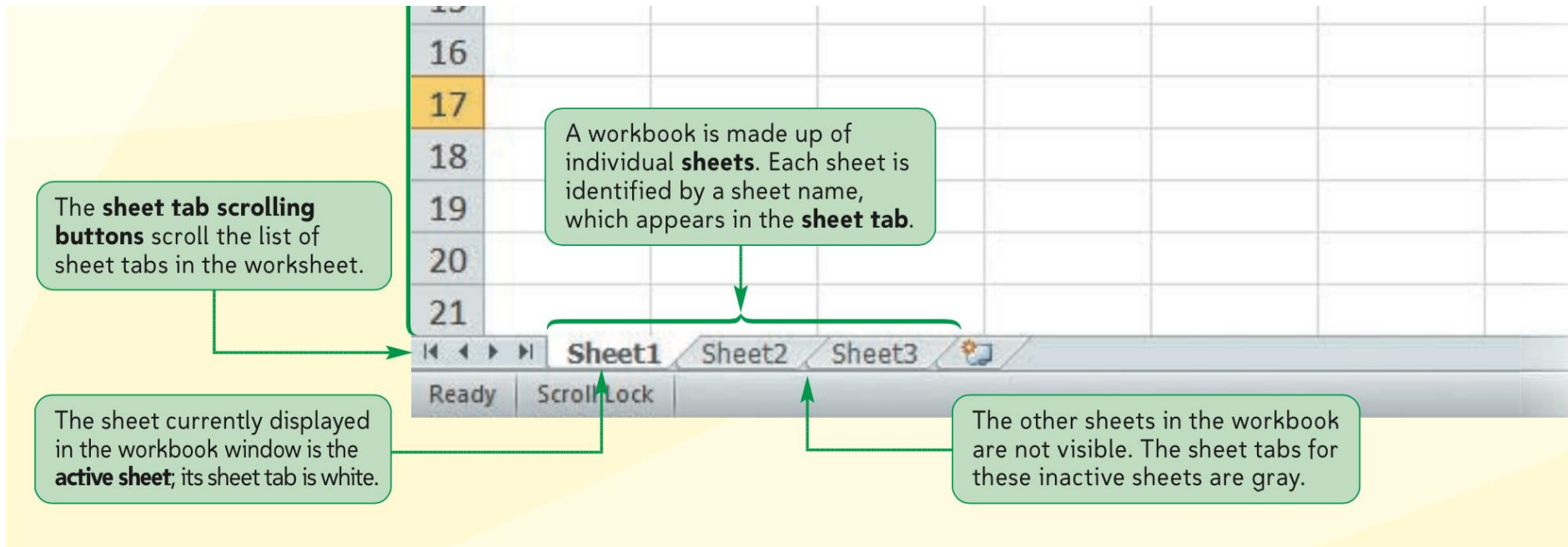
The **Select All button** is used to select all of the cells in the active worksheet.

The **formula bar** displays the value or formula entered in the active cell.

A screenshot of the Microsoft Excel 2010 interface. The ribbon at the top shows the 'File' tab selected, with other tabs like 'Home', 'Insert', 'Page Layout', 'Formulas', 'Data', 'Review', and 'View' visible. The 'Home' tab is active, showing the 'Clipboard' group with 'Paste' and 'Clipboard' buttons, the 'Font' group with 'Calibri' font, size '11', and various formatting options (bold, italic, underline, text color, background color), and the 'Alignment' group with various alignment options. The 'Name box' at the top left of the worksheet area displays 'K17'. The 'Formula bar' at the top right of the worksheet area displays 'fx'. The worksheet grid shows columns A through F and rows 1 through 5. A green arrow points from the 'Name box' to the 'K17' cell. Another green arrow points from the 'Formula bar' to the 'fx' cell. A third green arrow points from the 'Select All button' (the triangle in the top-left corner of the grid) to the '1' row header. A fourth green arrow points from the 'Excel stores spreadsheets...' text box to the 'Book1' tab at the top right of the window.

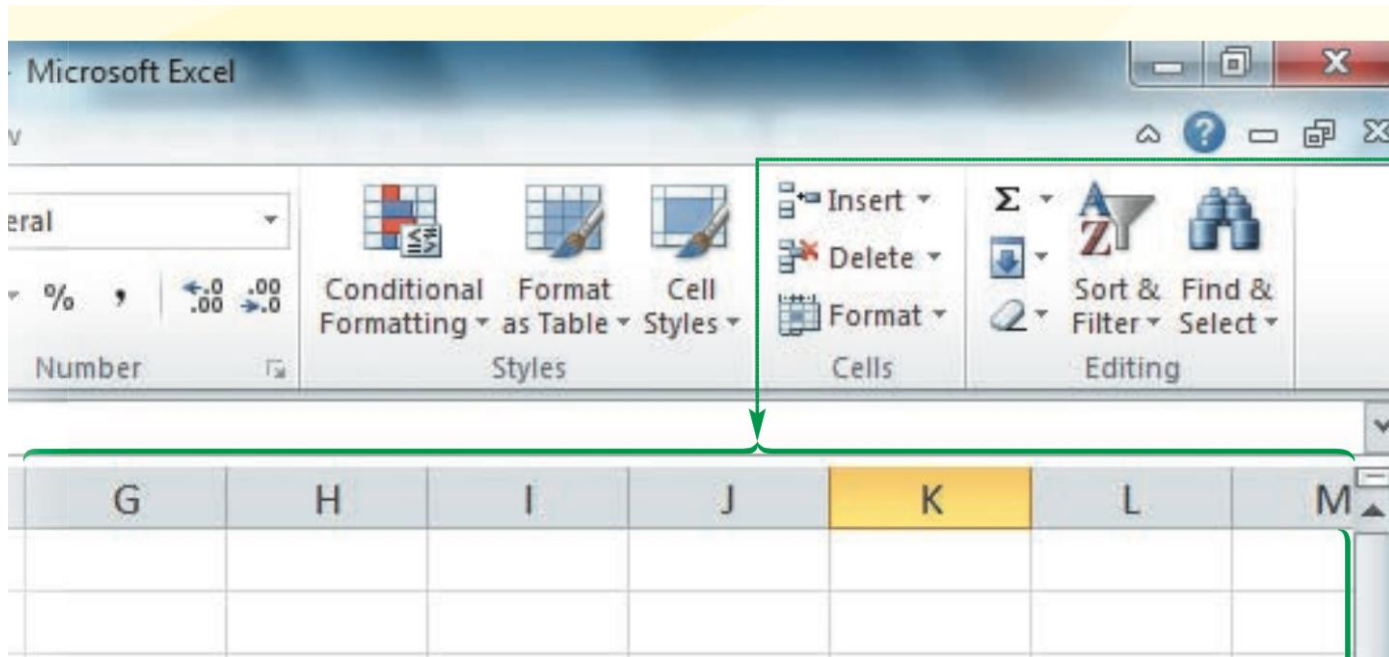
VISUAL OVERVIEW

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



VISUAL OVERVIEW

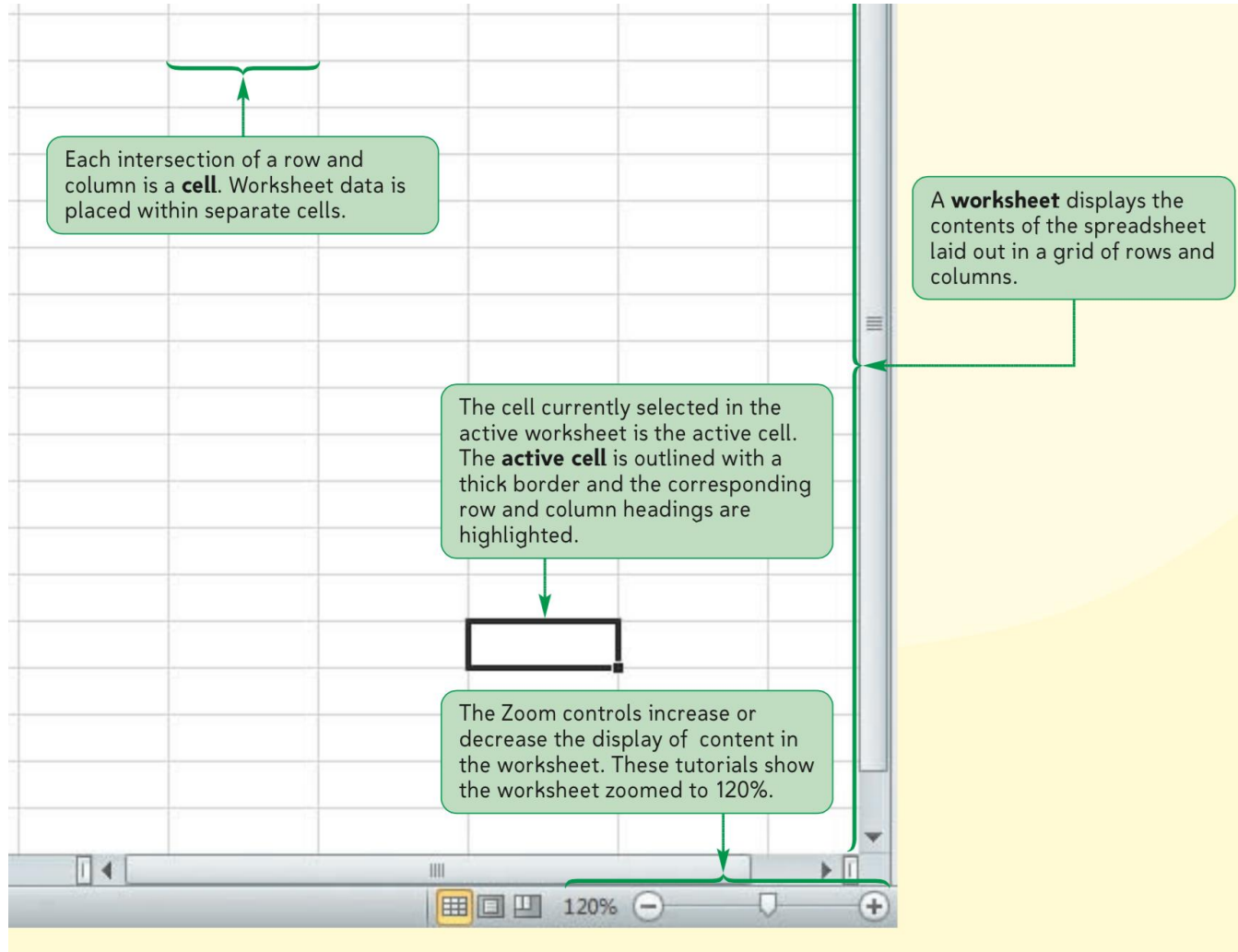
Microsoft Office
*Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills*



The **column headings** are the letters along the top of the worksheet window that identify the different columns in the worksheet. You click a letter to select the entire column.

VISUAL OVERVIEW

Microsoft Office
*Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills*



NAVIGATING BETWEEN WORKSHEETS

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- A workbook can have two kinds of sheets: worksheets and chart sheets.
- A **worksheet** contains a grid of rows and columns into which the user enters data values and formulas.
- A **chart sheet** contains an Excel chart that provides a visual representation of worksheet data. Charts can also be embedded within worksheets, displaying both the data and charts in one sheet.
- By default, all new Excel workbooks are created with three worksheets named Sheet1, Sheet2, and Sheet3. The Sheet1 worksheet is the active sheet.
- **Multiple sheets** enable you to better organize data in the workbook. For example, a sales report workbook might have a different worksheet for each sales region and another worksheet that summarizes the results from all the regions.
- Some workbooks contain so many sheets that their sheet tabs cannot all be displayed at the same time in the workbook window. For these workbooks, you can scroll through the sheet tabs using the sheet tab scrolling buttons. Scrolling through the sheet tabs does not change the active sheet. To change the active sheet, you must click a sheet tab.

NAVIGATING WITHIN A WORKSHEET

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- Each cell within a worksheet is identified by a **cell reference**, which indicates its column and row location. For example, the cell reference B6 refers to the cell located where column B intersects row 6.
- The column letter always appears before the row number in any cell reference.
- Row numbers range from 1 to 1,048,576.
- The first 26 column letters range in alphabetical order from A to Z. After Z, the next column headings are labeled AA, AB, AC, and so forth.
- Excel allows a maximum of 16,385 columns in a worksheet (the last column has the heading XFD).
- When Excel starts, cell A1 is the active cell.
- To view more of the active worksheet, you can use the horizontal and vertical scroll bars, located at the bottom and right side of the workbook window, respectively, to move through the worksheet horizontally and vertically. You can scroll one row or column at a time, or you can scroll several rows and columns. Scrolling through the worksheet does not change the location of the active cell.
- As you work, you'll need to change which cell is the active cell. You can use your mouse to click a cell to make it the active cell, or you can use the keyboard to move between cells.

NAVIGATING WITHIN A WORKSHEET

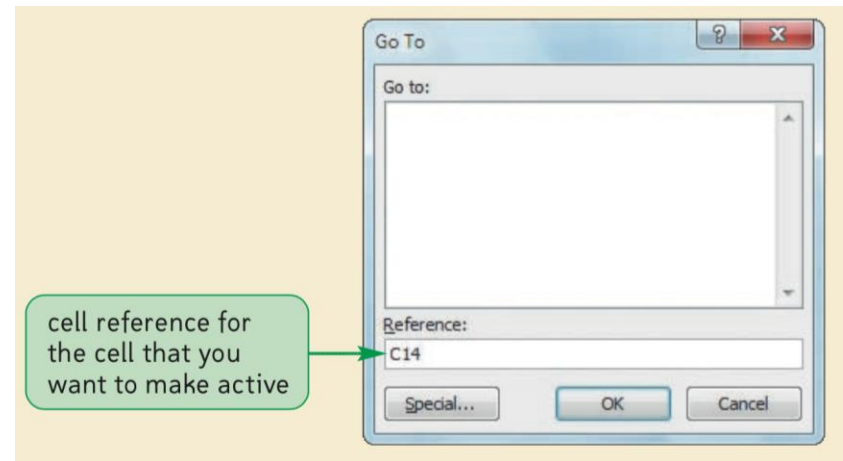
Microsoft Office
*Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills*



Press	To move the active cell
↑ ↓ ← →	Up, down, left, or right one cell
Home	To column A of the current row
Ctrl+Home	To cell A1
Ctrl+End	To the last cell in the worksheet that contains data
Enter	Down one row or to the start of the next row of data
Shift+Enter	Up one row
Tab	One column to the right
Shift+Tab	One column to the left
Page Up, Page Down	Up or down one screen
Ctrl+Page Up, Ctrl+Page Down	To the previous or next sheet in the workbook

NAVIGATING WITHIN A WORKSHEET

- To use the **Go To dialog box** to make a different cell active:
 - Click the Home tab on the Ribbon. In the Editing group, click the Find & Select button, and then click Go To on the menu that opens. The Go To dialog box opens.
 - Type C14 in the Reference box. Click the OK button. Cell C14 is the active cell and its cell reference appears in the Name box.



TIP

You can also open the Go To dialog box by pressing the F5 key or the Ctrl+G keys.

- To use the **Name box** to make a different cell active:
 - Click in the Name box, type A1, and then press the Enter key. Cell A1 is once again the active cell.

WRITTEN COMMUNICATION: CREATING EFFECTIVE WORKBOOKS

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- Workbooks convey information in written form. As with any writing, the final product creates an impression and provides an indicator of your interest, knowledge, and attention to detail. **To create the best impression**, all workbooks—especially those you intend to share with others such as coworkers and clients—should be well planned, well organized, and well written.
- A well-designed workbook should clearly identify its overall goal and present information in an organized format. The data it includes should be accurate both in the entered values and calculated values. **Developing an effective workbook** includes the following steps:
 - Determine the workbook's **purpose, content, and organization** before you start.
 - **Create a list of the sheets** used in the workbook, making note of each sheet's purpose.
 - Insert a **documentation sheet** that describes the workbook's purpose and organization. Include the name of the workbook author, the date the workbook was created, and any additional information that will help others to track the workbook to its source.

WRITTEN COMMUNICATION: CREATING EFFECTIVE WORKBOOKS

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- Enter all of the data in the workbook. Add text to indicate what the values represent and, if possible, where they originated so others can view the source of your data.
- **Enter formulas** for calculated items rather than entering the calculated values into the workbook. For more complicated calculations, **provide documentation** explaining them.
- **Test the workbook** with a variety of values; edit the data and formulas to correct errors.
- **Save the workbook and create a backup copy** when the project is completed. Print the workbook's contents if you need to provide a hard-copy version to others or for your files.
- **Maintain a history of your workbook** as it goes through different versions, so that you and others can quickly see how the workbook has changed during revisions. By including clearly written documentation, explanatory text, a logical organization, and accurate data and formulas, you'll create effective workbooks that others can use easily.

ENTERING TEXT



- New data values are placed into the cell that is currently **active** in the worksheet. As you **enter data**, the entry appears in both the active cell and the formula bar.
- Any text you enter in a cell that doesn't fit within that cell covers the adjacent cells to the right as long as they are empty. If the adjacent cells contain text or data, only the text that fits into the cell is displayed. The rest of the text entry is hidden, or **truncated**, from the view. The text itself is not affected. The complete text is still entered in the cell; it's just not displayed. To display all of the text, you must increase the cell's width.
- As you type text into the active cell, Excel tries to anticipate the remaining characters by displaying text that begins with the same letters as a previous entry in the same column. This feature, known as **AutoComplete**, helps make entering repetitive text easier. To accept the suggested text, press the Tab or Enter key. To override the suggested text, continue to type the text you want to enter in the cell. AutoComplete does not work with dates or numbers, or when a blank cell is between the previous entry and the text you're typing.
- To place text on separate lines within the same cell, you press and hold the Alt key while you press the Enter key. This creates **a line break within the cell**.

ENTERING DATES

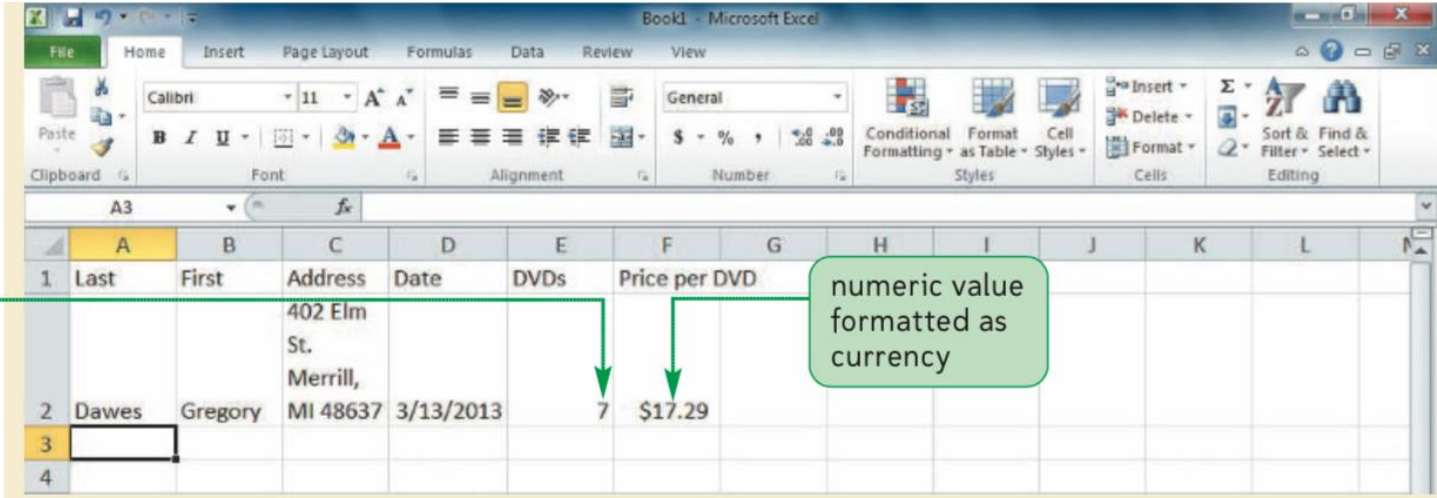
Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- You can enter dates in **any of the standard date formats**. For example, you can enter the date April 6, 2013 in any of the following date formats (and many others) and Excel recognizes each entry as representing the same date: 4/6/2013, 4/6/13, 4-6-2013, April 6, 2013, 6-Apr-13.
- Even though you enter a date as text, **Excel stores the date as a numeric value** equal to the number of days between the specified date and January 0, 1900. This means that the date January 1, 1900 has a value of 1 and so forth. Times are also entered as text and are stored as fractional parts of a 24-hour day. Storing dates and times as numeric values allows Excel to perform date and time calculations, such as determining the elapsed time between one date and another.
- Based on the default date format your computer uses, **Excel might alter the date format you type**. For example, if you enter the date 4/6/13 into the active cell, Excel might display the date with the four-digit year value, 4/6/2013; if you enter the text April 6, 2013, Excel might convert the date format to 6-Apr-13. Changing the date or time format doesn't affect the underlying date or time value.

ENTERING NUMBERS

- In Excel, numbers can be **integers** such as 378, **decimals** such as 1.95, or **negatives** such as -5.2. In the case of **currency** and **percentages**, you can include the currency symbol and percent sign when you enter the value. Excel treats a currency value such as \$87.25 as the number 87.25, and a percentage such as 95% as the decimal 0.95. Currency and percentages, like dates, are formatted in a convenient way for you to read. Excel right-aligns numbers within each cell.
- If a number exceeds its cell size, you see ##### for the truncated numeric value. You can display the entire number by increasing the column width.



The screenshot shows the Microsoft Excel 2010 interface with a spreadsheet titled 'Book1'. The ribbon includes File, Home, Insert, Page Layout, Formulas, Data, Review, and View. The 'Home' ribbon is active, showing options for Clipboard, Font, Alignment, Number, Styles, Cells, and Editing. The spreadsheet has columns A through L and rows 1 through 4. The data is as follows:

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
1	Last	First	Address	Date	DVDs	Price per DVD						
2	Dawes	Gregory	402 Elm St. Merrill, MI 48637	3/13/2013	7	\$17.29						
3												
4												

Annotations:

- A green box labeled 'numbers are right-aligned within the cell' points to the 'Dawes' cell in column A, row 2.
- A green box labeled 'numeric value formatted as currency' points to the '\$17.29' cell in column F, row 2.

CHANGING THE COLUMN WIDTH OR ROW HEIGHT



- **Drag** the right border of the column heading left to decrease the column width or right to increase the column width.
- Drag the bottom border of the row heading up to decrease the row height or down to increase the row height.

OR

- **Double-click** the right border of a column heading or the bottom border of a row heading to autofit the column or row to the cell contents (or select one or more columns or rows, click the Home tab on the Ribbon, click the Format button in the Cells group, and then click AutoFit Column Width or AutoFit Row Height).

OR

- Select one or more columns or rows.
- Click the **Home tab** on the Ribbon, click the Format button in the Cells group, and then click Column Width or Row Height.
- Enter the column width or row height you want, and then click the OK button.



INSERTING A COLUMN OR ROW

- **Select** the column(s) or row(s) where you want to insert the new column(s) or row(s); Excel will insert the same number of columns or rows as you select to the left of the selected columns or above the selected rows.

OR

- In the Cells group on the Home tab, click the Insert button (or right-click a column or row heading or selected column and row headings, and then click Insert on the short-cut menu).

The screenshot shows the Microsoft Excel 2010 interface with the 'Home' tab selected. The ribbon shows the 'Cells' group with the 'Insert' button highlighted. The worksheet contains a table with the following data:

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
1	Last	First	Address	Phone	Date	DVDs	Price per DVD		
2	Ferris	Andrew	135 College Ave. Bar Harbor, ME 04609	(207) 555-0101	3/5/2013	2	\$17.29		
3	Dawes	Gregory	402 Elm St. Merrill, MI 48637	(989) 555-3433	3/13/2013	7	\$17.29		
4	Garcia	Susan	1025 Drake Ave. Exeter, NH 03833	(603) 555-1091	3/14/2013	25	\$15.79		
5	Torbet	Dr. Lilla	5 North Ln. Oswego, NY 13126	(315) 555-7823	3/17/2013	32	\$12.99		
6	Rhoden	Tony	24 Mountain Dr. Auburn, ME 04210	(207) 555-9915	3/24/2013	20	\$15.79		

Annotations:

- A green arrow points to row 3, labeled "inserted row".
- A green bracket on the left side of rows 4 through 6 is labeled "existing rows are shifted down".

DELETING AND CLEARING A ROW OR COLUMN



- You can remove data in two ways: **clearing and deleting**.
- Clearing data from a worksheet removes the data, leaving blank cells where the data had been. Deleting data from the worksheet removes both the data and the cells.
- When a cell is deleted, the remaining cells in the worksheet shift into the deleted location. For example, when you delete a column, the columns to the right shift left to fill the vacated space. Similarly, the rows below a deleted row shift up to fill the vacated space.
- Note that pressing the Delete key does not delete the selected row or column; instead, it clears the contents, leaving the row or column in place.
- **To clear and delete a row:**
 - Click the row heading. The entire row is selected.
 - Right-click the row heading, and then click Clear Contents on the shortcut menu. Excel clears the values in the row, but leaves the blank row in that space.
 - Verify that the row is still selected.
 - In the Cells group on the Home tab, click the Delete button. The row is deleted, and the rows below it shift up.

SAVING A WORKBOOK

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- Click the **File** tab on the Ribbon to display Backstage view.
- Click the **Save** command in the navigation bar. The **Save As** dialog box opens because this is the first time you are saving this workbook.
- Navigate to the folder you want to save your file in.
- Verify that Excel Workbook appears in the Save as type box. If your computer is set up to show filename extensions, you will see the Excel **file extension .xlsx** in the Save as type box as well.
- In the File name box, type a name for your file.
- Click the Save button. The Save As dialog box closes and the workbook file is saved with its descriptive filename.

WORKING WITH CELLS AND RANGES

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- Just as a cell reference indicates the location of an individual worksheet cell, a **range reference** indicates the location and size of a cell range.
- For **adjacent ranges**, the range reference includes the cell reference of the upper-left and lower-right cells in the rectangular block separated by a colon. For example, the range reference A1:G5 refers to all the cells in the rectangular block from cells A1 through G5.
- The range reference for **non-adjacent ranges** separates each adjacent range reference by a semicolon. For example, the cell reference A1:A5;F1:G5 references two rectangular blocks of cells: one covering cells A1 through A5 and the other covering cells F1 through G5.
- Selecting a range enables you to work with all of the cells in the range as a group. This means you can move the groups of cells, delete them, or clear all their contents at the same time.

SELECTING RANGES



- **To select an adjacent range:**

- Click the cell in the upper-left corner of the adjacent range, drag the pointer to the cell in the lower-right corner of the adjacent range, and then release the mouse button.

OR

- Click the cell in the upper-left corner of the adjacent range, press the Shift key as you click the cell in the lower-right corner of the adjacent range, and then release the Shift key.
- **To select a nonadjacent range of cells:**
 - Select a cell or an adjacent range, press the Ctrl key as you select each additional cell or adjacent range, and then release the Ctrl key.
- **To select all the cells in a worksheet:**
 - Click the Select All button located at the intersection of the row and column headings (or press the Ctrl+A keys).
- **To select an entire row or entire rows:**
 - Click a row heading to select a single row. To select multiple rows, click and drag the pointer over multiple row headings.
- **To select an entire column or entire columns:**
 - Click a column heading to select a single column. To select multiple columns, click and drag the pointer over multiple column headings.

SELECTING ADJACENT RANGES

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



the active cell
in the selected
range is white

RipCity Digital Orders - Microsoft Excel

File Home Insert Page Layout Formulas Data Review View

Clipboard Font Alignment Number Conditional Formatting Styles Cells Sort & Find & Filter Select Editing

A1 Last

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
1	Last	First	Address	Phone	Date	DVDs	Price per DVD		
2	Ferris	Andrew	135 College Ave. Bar Harbor, ME 04609	(207) 555-0101	3/5/2013	2	\$17.29		
3	Garcia	Susan	1025 Drake Ave. Exeter, NH 03833	(603) 555-1091	3/14/2013	25	\$15.79		
4	Torbet	Dr. Lilla	5 North Ln. Oswego, NY 13126	(315) 555-7823	3/17/2013	32	\$12.99		
5	Rhoden	Tony	24 Mountain Dr. Auburn, ME 04210	(207) 555-9915	3/24/2013	20	\$15.79		
6									
7									
8									

selected range is highlighted in the worksheet

SELECTING NON-ADJACENT RANGES

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



The screenshot shows the Microsoft Excel 2010 interface with the 'RipCity Digital Orders' workbook. The spreadsheet contains data for customers and their DVD orders. Two adjacent ranges are highlighted in blue: A1:A5 (Last names) and F1:G5 (DVDs and Price per DVD). Green arrows point from text boxes to these ranges.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
1	Last	First	Address	Phone	Date	DVDs	Price per DVD		
2	Ferris	Andrew	135 College Ave. Bar Harbor, ME 04609	(207) 555-0101	3/5/2013	2	\$17.29		
3	Garcia	Susan	1025 Drake Ave. Exeter, NH 03833	(603) 555-1091	3/14/2013	25	\$15.79		
4	Torbet	Dr. Lilla	5 North Ln. Oswego, NY 13126	(315) 555-7823	3/17/2013	32	\$12.99		
5	Rhoden	Tony	24 Mountain Dr. Auburn, ME 04210	(207) 555-9915	3/24/2013	20	\$15.79		
6									
7									
8									
9									
10									

adjacent range A1:A5

adjacent range F1:G5

MOVING AND COPYING A CELL OR RANGE



- Select the cell or range you want to move or copy.
- Move the pointer over the border of the selection until the pointer changes shape.
- To move the range, click the border and drag the selection to a new location (or to copy the range, hold down the Ctrl key and drag the selection to a new location).
- To move to a location that is not visible, drag the selection to the edge of the worksheet window until it scrolls down or across, and then drop the selection into the new location.

OR

- Select the cell or range you want to move or copy.
- In the Clipboard group on the Home tab, click the Cut button or the Copy button (or right-click the selection, and then click Cut or Copy on the shortcut menu).
- Select the cell or upper-left cell of the range where you want to move or copy the content.
- In the Clipboard group, click the Paste button (or right-click the selection, and then click Paste on the shortcut menu).

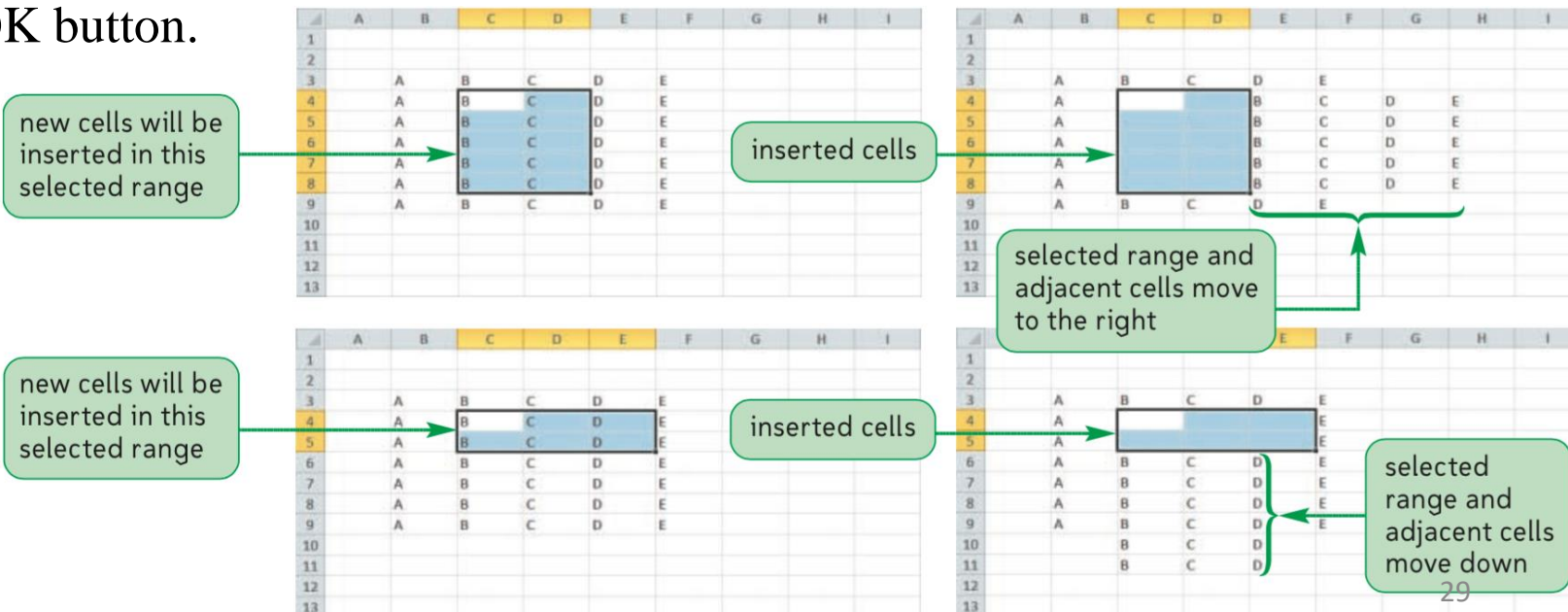


INSERTING OR DELETING A RANGE

- Select a range that matches the range you want to insert or delete.
- In the Cells group on the Home tab, click the Insert button or the Delete button.

OR

- Select the range that matches the range you want to insert or delete.
- In the Cells group on the Home tab, click the Insert button arrow and then click Insert Cells, or click the Delete button arrow and then click Delete Cells (or right-click the selected range, and then click Insert or Delete on the shortcut menu).
- Click the option button for the direction to shift the cells, columns, or rows.
- Click the OK button.



INSERTING, DELETING, RENAMING A WORKSHEET

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- **To insert a new worksheet** to the left of the active sheet, right-click a sheet tab, click Insert on the shortcut menu, select a sheet type, and then click the OK button.
- **To delete a worksheet:**
 - Right-click the sheet tab, and then click Delete on the shortcut menu. The worksheet is removed from the workbook.

OR

- Click the sheet tab to make it the active sheet.
 - In the Cells group on the Home tab, click the Delete button arrow, and then click Delete Sheet. The worksheet is removed from the workbook.
- **To rename a worksheet:**
 - Double-click sheet tab. The sheet name is selected in the sheet tab.
 - Type the name you want and then press the Enter key. The width of the sheet tab adjusts automatically to the new sheet name.
 - You can also rename a sheet by right-clicking the sheet tab and clicking Rename on the shortcut menu.

MOVING AND COPYING A WORKSHEET

Microsoft Office
*Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills*



- You can change the placement of the worksheets in a workbook. A good practice is to place the most important worksheets at the beginning of the workbook (the leftmost sheet tabs) and less important worksheets toward the end (the rightmost tabs).
- **To move a sheet:**
 - Click the sheet tab you want to move, to make that worksheet active.
 - Press and hold the mouse button so the pointer changes and a small triangle appears in the upper-left corner of the tab.
 - Drag the pointer to the right or left of the other sheet tabs and then release the mouse button to the place you want to move the sheet.
- **To copy a sheet:**
 - To copy a worksheet, hold down the Ctrl key as you drag and drop the sheet tab. The copy appears where you drop the sheet tab; the original remains in its initial position.

UNDOING AND REDOING AN ACTION

Microsoft Office
*Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills*



- As you revise a workbook, you might need to undo a previous action. Excel maintains a list of the actions you perform in a workbook during the current session, so you can undo most of these actions. You can reverse the most recent action or you can reverse more than one action. If you undo more than one action, all actions subsequent to the earliest action you select are also undone.
- To undo an edit, on the Quick Access Toolbar, click the **Undo button**.
- To redo an edit, on the Quick Access Toolbar, click the **Redo button**.

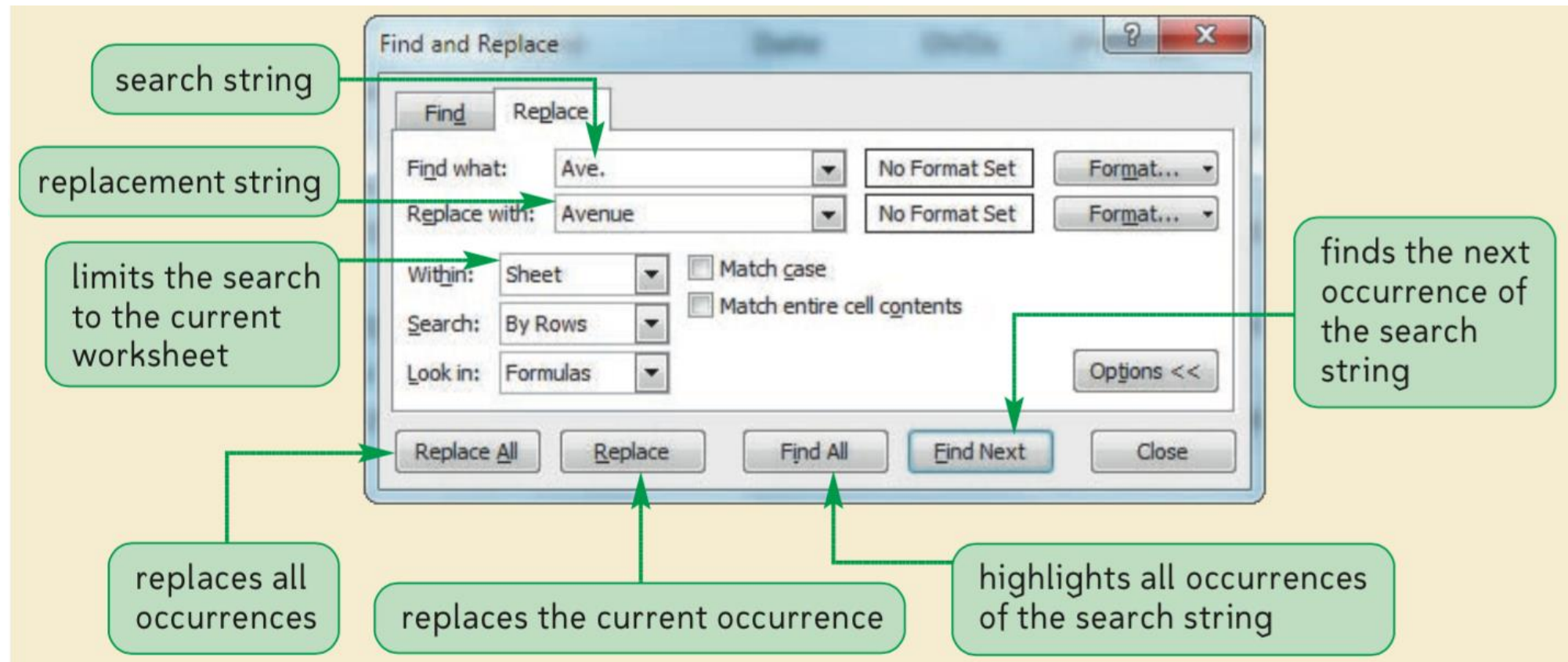
USING FIND AND REPLACE



- For greater speed and accuracy, you can use the Find command to locate a string of characters known as **a search string** and replace that text with **a replacement string** of new text characters.
- You can limit the search to the current worksheet or search the entire workbook. You can specify whether to match the capitalization in the Find what box and whether the search text should match the entire cell contents or part of the cell contents. You can choose to review each occurrence of the search value and decide whether to replace it, or you can replace all occurrences at once.
- In the Editing group on the Home tab, click the Find & Select button, and then click Replace. The **Find and Replace dialog box** opens.
- Type the search string in the Find what box, press the Tab key, and then type the replacement string of new text characters in the Replace with box.
- Click the **Options** button. The dialog box expands to display additional Find and Replace options.
- Verify that Sheet appears in the Within box to limit the find and replace to the current worksheet only.
- Click the Replace All button. Excel finds and replaces the search string wherever it appears in the current worksheet. A dialog box opens, indicating that Excel has completed its search and made x replacements.

USING FIND AND REPLACE

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



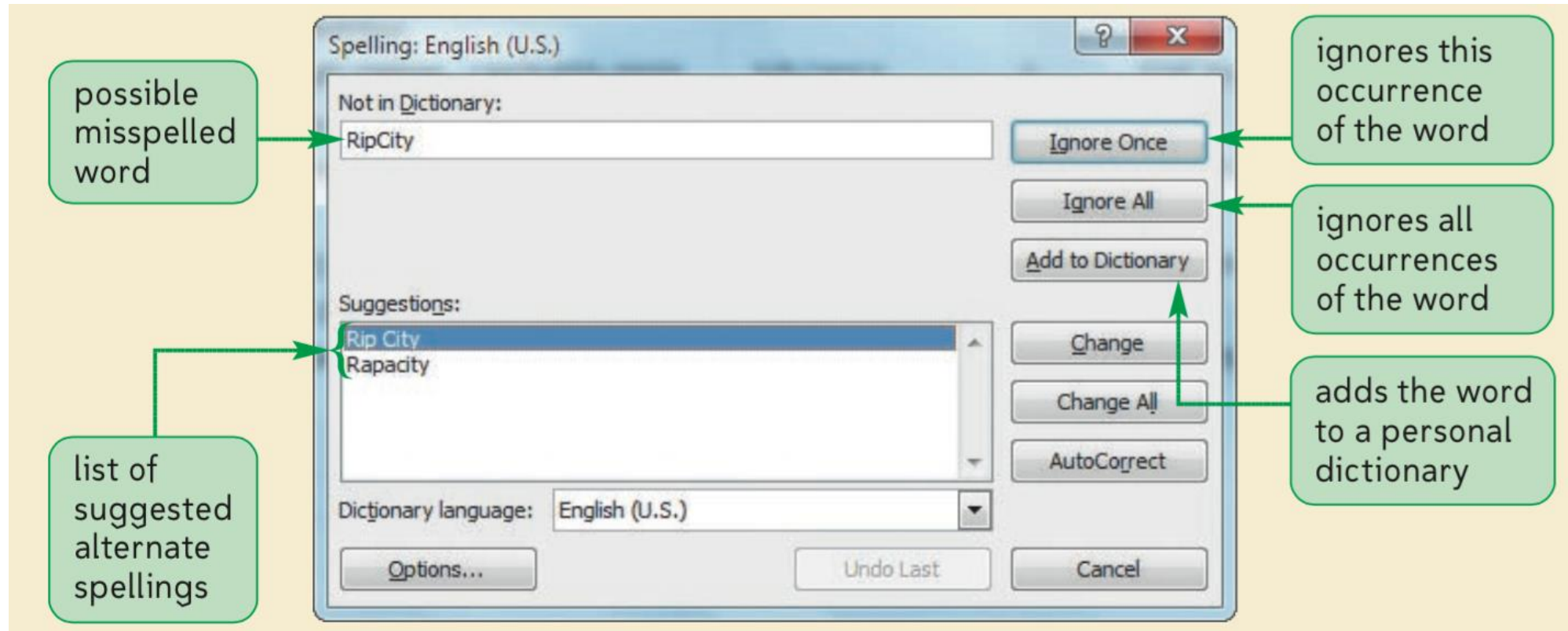
USING THE SPELLING CHECKER



- Another editing tool is the **spelling checker**. Although the spelling checker's dictionary includes a large number of words, as well as common first and last names and places, many words you use in workbooks might not be included.
- If the spelling checker finds a word that is not in its dictionary, the word appears in a dialog box along with a list of suggested replacements. You can replace the word with one from the list, or you can ignore the word and go to the next possible misspelling. You can also add words to the dictionary to prevent them from being flagged as misspellings in the future.
- Note that the spelling checker will not find a correctly spelled word used incorrectly, such as “there” instead of “their” or “your” instead of “you’re.” The best way to catch these types of errors is to proofread your worksheets.
- To check the spelling in a worksheet:
 - Click cell A1 to start the spell check from the upper-left corner of the sheet.
 - Click the Review tab on the Ribbon, and then click the Spelling button in the Proofing group.

USING THE SPELLING CHECKER

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



CHANGING WORKSHEET VIEWS

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- You can view a worksheet in three ways. **Normal view** shows the contents of the worksheet. **Page Layout view** shows how the worksheet will appear when printed. **Page Break Preview** displays the location of the different page breaks within the worksheet. This is useful when a worksheet will span several printed pages and you need to control what content appears on each page.
- **Switching the worksheet views:**
 - Click the Page Layout button on the status bar. The page layout of the worksheet appears in the program window.
 - If you want to see the rest of the data, which extends to a second page, use the Zoom slider to reduce the zoom level.
 - Click the Page Break Preview button on the status bar. The view switches to Page Break Preview, which shows only those parts of the current worksheet that will print. A dotted blue border separates one page from another. If the Welcome to Page Break Preview dialog box opens, this is the first time you've switched to Page Break Preview. Click the OK button to close the dialog box and continue.
 - Zoom the worksheet to 120% so that you can more easily read the contents of the worksheet.
 - Click the Normal button on the status bar. The worksheet returns to Normal view. A dotted black line indicates where the page break will occur.

CHANGING WORKSHEET VIEWS

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



Click to add header

Last	First	Address	Phone	Date	DVDs
Ferris	Andrew	135 College Avenue	(207) 555-0101	3/5/2013	2
Garcia	Susan	1025 Drake Avenue	(603) 555-1091	#####	25
Torbet	Dr. Lisa	5 North Lane Oswego, NY 13126	(315) 555-7823	#####	32
Rhoden	Tony	24 Mountain Drive Auburn, ME 04210	(207) 555-9915	#####	20
TOTAL					79

Click to add header

Price per DVD Charge	
\$18.29	\$36.58
\$15.79	\$394.75
\$12.99	\$415.68
\$15.79	\$315.80
#####	

worksheet will span two pages

Page Layout button

Documentation Customer Orders

Ready Page: 1 of 2

60%

CHANGING WORKSHEET VIEWS

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



The screenshot shows an Excel worksheet with a solid blue border around the data area (rows 1-10, columns A-H). A dotted line indicates a page break between column F and column G. The worksheet contains customer order data. The status bar at the bottom shows the 'Page Break Preview' button is active.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	RipCity Digital							
2	Customer Orders							
3	3/31/2013							
4								
5	Last	First	Address	Phone	Date	DVDs	Price per DVD	Charge
6	Ferris	Andrew	135 College Avenue Bar Harbor, ME 04609	(207) 555-0101	3/5/2013	2	\$18.29	\$36.58
7	Garcia	Susan	1025 Drake Avenue Exeter, NH 03833	(603) 555-1091	3/14/2013	25	\$15.79	\$394.75
8	Torbet	Dr. Lila	5 North Lane Oswego, NY 13126	(315) 555-7823	3/17/2013	32	\$12.99	\$415.68
9	Rhoden	Tony	24 Mountain Drive Auburn, ME 04210	(207) 555-9915	3/24/2013	20	\$15.79	\$315.80
10					TOTAL	79		\$1,162.81

solid blue line
surrounds section
to be printed

dotted line indicates
a page break

Page Break
Preview button

WORKING WITH PORTRAIT AND LANDSCAPE ORIENTATION

Microsoft Office
*Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills*



- In **portrait orientation**, the page is taller than it is wide.
- In **landscape orientation**, the page is wider than it is tall.
- By default, Excel displays pages in portrait orientation.
- In many cases, however, you will want to print the page in landscape orientation.
Changing the page orientation affects only the active worksheet.
- **To change the page orientation of the worksheet:**
 - Click the Page Layout tab on the Ribbon.
 - In the Page Setup group, click the Orientation button, and then click Landscape. The orientation switches to landscape, and the worksheet contents fit on one page.
 - Click the Page Layout button on the status bar, and then verify that all the worksheet contents fit on one page.

PRINTING THE WORKBOOK



- You can print the contents of a workbook by using the **Print tab** in Backstage view.
- The Print tab provides options for choosing what to print and how to print. For example, you can specify the number of copies to print, which printer to use, and what to print.
- You can choose to print only the selected cells, the active sheets, or all worksheets in the workbook that contain data. The printout will include only the data in the worksheet. The other elements in the worksheet, such as the row and column headings and the gridlines around the worksheet cells, will not print by default.
- You also see a preview of the workbook so you can see exactly how printed pages will look with the settings you've chosen before you print. A good practice is to always review the print preview before printing to ensure that the printout looks exactly as you intended and avoid unnecessary reprinting.
- **To preview and print the workbook:**
 - Click the File tab on the Ribbon to display Backstage view.
 - Click the Print tab in the navigation bar to display the print options and preview of the first sheet in the workbook.

PRINTING THE WORKBOOK

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



The screenshot shows the Microsoft Excel 2010 interface with the 'Print' dialog box open. The 'File' menu is visible on the left, and the 'Print' option is highlighted. The 'Print' dialog box is in the center, showing the 'Print' button, 'Copies' (1), 'Printer' (HP Universal Printing PS), and 'Settings' (Print Active Sheets, Pages: 1 to 1, Print on Both Sides, Collated, Portrait Orientation, Letter, Normal Margins, No Scaling). A 'preview of printout' is shown on the right, displaying a sample document titled 'RipCity Digital Customer Orders' with author 'Amanda Dunn' and purpose 'To record orders from RipCity Digital customers'. The status bar at the bottom shows '1 of 1'.

Annotations and actions:

- click to print the worksheet with the selected settings (points to the 'Print' button)
- select the printer (points to the 'Printer' dropdown menu)
- select what part of the workbook to print (points to the 'Print' button in the 'File' menu)
- set the printer options (points to the 'Settings' section)
- click to scroll through the print preview (points to the 'preview of printout' area)

VIEWING AND PRINTING WORKSHEET FORMULAS

Microsoft Office
*Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills*



- The printout of the worksheet displays only the worksheet values and none of the formulas. Most of the time, you will be interested in only the final results of the worksheet, not the formulas used to calculate those results. However, in some cases, you might want to view the formulas used to develop the workbook. This is particularly useful when you encounter unexpected results and you want to examine the underlying formulas, or you want to discuss your formulas with a colleague.
- You can view the formulas in a workbook by switching to formula view, a view of the worksheet contents that displays formulas instead of the resulting values.
- **To view the formulas in the worksheet:**
 - Click the sheet tab, if necessary, and then click the Normal button on the status bar. The worksheet is active and displayed in Normal view.
 - To toggle in and out of formula view, press the Ctrl+` keys. The ` grave accent symbol is usually located above the Tab key on your keyboard.

VIEWING AND PRINTING WORKSHEET FORMULAS

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



text and numbers remain unchanged

numeric date values are displayed

formulas are displayed rather than values

	D	E	F	G	H
1					
2					
3					
4					
5	Phone	Date	DVDs	Price per DVD	Charge
6	(207) 555-0101	41338	2	18.29	=F6*G6
7	(603) 555-1091	41347	25	15.79	=F7*G7
8	(315) 555-7823	41350	32	12.99	=F8*G8
9	(207) 555-9915	41357	20	15.79	=F9*G9
10		TOTAL	=SUM(F6:F9)		=SUM(H6:H9)
11					



VIEWING AND PRINTING WORKSHEET FORMULAS

- If you want **to get a printout of the formula view**, it is possible that the worksheet will not fit on one page because of the expanded column widths. You can scale the worksheet to force the contents to fit on a single page. Scaling a printout reduces the width and the height of the printout to fit the number of pages you specify by shrinking the text size as needed. You can also scale a printout proportionally to a percentage of its actual size.
- **To scale the worksheet formulas to print on one page:**
 - Click the Page Layout tab on the Ribbon.
 - In the Scale to Fit group, click the Width arrow, and then click 1 page.
 - In the Scale to Fit group, click the Height arrow, and then click 1 page. You'll verify that the worksheet formula view fits on a single page.
 - Click the Page Layout button on the status bar, and then zoom the worksheet to 50%. The formula view of the worksheet fits on one page.
 - Click the File tab on the Ribbon to display Backstage view, and then click the Print tab in the navigation bar to view the print options.
 - In the Settings group, click the top button, and then click Print Active Sheets to print only the active worksheet.
 - Click the Print button. The active sheet prints.

VIEWING AND PRINTING WORKSHEET FORMULAS

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



printout width and height set to a single page

text reduced to fit the worksheet on one page

zoom set to 50%

First	Last	Address	Phone	Date	DOB	Price per DVD	Chorus
Foris	Andrew	656 Galloway Avenue East Haverhill, ME 04449	(207) 555-4401	4/13/88	2	\$6.29	=F6*G6
Garcia	Susan	9026 Dwyer Avenue Duxbury, MA 01930	(603) 555-1091	4/13/87	25	\$6.79	=F7*G7
Tankus	Dr. Lila	8 Hawthorne Quincy, MA 02266	(617) 555-7622	4/13/89	22	\$6.99	=F8*G8
Rhodes	Tony	241 Mountain Drive Andover, MA 01820	(207) 555-4445	4/13/87	20	\$6.79	=F9*G9
TOTAL						=SUM(F6:F9)	=SUM(H6:H9)

WORKING WITH FORMULAS



- A **formula** is an expression that returns a value. In most cases, this is a numeric value though it could also be a text string, a yes/no value, or a date. Every Excel formula begins with an equal sign (=) followed by an expression describing the operation that returns the value. Note that if you don't begin the formula with the equal sign, Excel assumes that you are entering text and will not treat the cell contents as a formula.
- A formula is written using **operators** that combine different values, resulting in a single value that is then displayed within the cell. The most commonly used operators are arithmetic operators that perform addition, subtraction, multiplication, division, and exponentiation.
- Most Excel formulas contain **references** to cells rather than specific values. This allows you to change the values being used in the calculation without having to modify the formula itself.
- If a formula contains more than one arithmetic operator, Excel performs the calculation using the same **order of precedence** you might have already seen in math classes. The order of precedence is a set of predefined rules used to determine the sequence in which operators are applied in a calculation. Excel first calculates the value of any operation within parentheses, then it applies exponentiation (^), multiplication (*), and division (/), and finally it performs addition (+) and subtraction (-).

EXCEL ARITHMETIC OPERATORS

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



Operation	Arithmetic Operator	Example	Description
Addition	+	=10+A1 =B1+B2+B3	Adds 10 to the value in cell A1 Adds the values in cells B1, B2, and B3
Subtraction	–	=C9–B2 =1– D2	Subtracts the value in cell B2 from the value in cell C9 Subtracts the value in cell D2 from 1
Multiplication	*	=C9*B9 =E5*0.06	Multiplies the values in cells C9 and B9 Multiplies the value in cell E5 by 0.06
Division	/	=C9/B9 =D15/12	Divides the value in cell C9 by the value in cell B9 Divides the value in cell D15 by 12
Exponentiation	^	=B5^3 =3^B5	Raises the value of cell B5 to the third power Raises 3 to the value in cell B5

ENTERING A FORMULA



- **To insert a formula:**
 - Click the cell in which you want the formula results to appear.
 - Type = and a formula that calculates a value using cell references and arithmetic operators.
 - Press the Enter key or press the Tab key to complete the formula.
- After a formula has been entered into a cell, the worksheet displays the value returned by the formula. If the results are not what you expect, you might have entered the formula incorrectly. You can view the formula by selecting the cell and reviewing the expression displayed in the formula bar. One challenge with formulas, particularly long formulas, is interpreting the cell references. Excel makes this simpler by color coding each cell reference in the formula and its corresponding cell in the worksheet.

formula displayed in the formula bar

cell border colors match the colors in the formula bar

formula in cell H6 multiplies the values in cells F6 and G6

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	RipCity Digital							
2	Customer Orders							
3	3/31/2013							
4								
5	Last	First	Address	Phone	Date	DVDs	Price per DVD	Charge
6	Ferris	Andrew	135 College Ave. Bar Harbor, ME 04609	(207) 555-0101	3/5/2013	2	\$17.29	=F6*G6
7	Garcia	Susan	1025 Drake Ave. Exeter, NH 03833	(603) 555-1091	3/14/2013	25	\$15.79	

COPYING AND PASTING FORMULAS



- Sometimes you'll need to repeat the same formula throughout your worksheet. Rather than retyping the formula, you can copy a formula from one cell and paste it into another cell. Pasting a formula is different from pasting a value. With formulas, Excel adjusts the formula's cell references to reflect the new location of the formula in the worksheet. This is because you usually want to copy the actions of a formula rather than the specific value the formula generates.
- **To copy and paste a formula:**
 - Click the cell that contains the formula you want to copy.
 - In the Clipboard group on the Home tab, click the Copy button. Excel copies the formula to the Clipboard. The cell from which the formula was copied has a dotted border to remind you that cell is being copied.
 - Select the range of cells in which you want to paste the formula.
 - In the Clipboard group, click the Paste button. Excel pastes the formula into the selected range. A shortcut button appears below the selected range, providing options for pasting formulas and values.

UNDERSTANDING CELL REFERENCES

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- **Relative references:** when Excel copies and pastes them, they are always interpreted in relation, or relative, to the location of the cell containing the formula.
 - To enter a relative reference, type the cell reference as it appears in the worksheet. For example, enter B2 for cell B2.
- Instead of using relative references, you may need to use a cell reference that will remain fixed when the formula is copied to a new location. Cell references that remain fixed are called **absolute references**. In Excel, absolute references have a \$ (dollar sign) before each column and row designation. For example, B8 is a relative reference to cell B8, whereas \$B\$8 is an absolute reference to cell B8.
 - To enter an absolute reference, type \$ (a dollar sign) before both the row and column references. For example, enter \$B\$2.
- A formula can also include cell references that are mixed. A **mixed reference** contains both relative and absolute references. For example, a mixed reference for cell A2 can be either \$A2 or A\$2. In the mixed reference \$A2, the column reference to column A is absolute and the reference to row 2 is relative. When you copy and paste a formula with a mixed reference to a new location, the absolute portion of the cell reference remains fixed and the relative portion shifts.
 - To enter a mixed reference, type \$ before either the row or column reference. For example, enter \$B2 or B\$2.

UNDERSTANDING CELL REFERENCES

- As you develop formulas and worksheets, you might want **to quickly switch a cell reference from relative to absolute or mixed**. Rather than retyping the formula, you can switch the reference in editing mode by selecting the cell reference and pressing the F4 key. As you press the function key, Excel cycles through the different reference types, starting by changing a relative reference to an absolute reference, then to a mixed reference with the row absolute, then to a mixed reference with the column absolute, and then finally back to a relative reference.

The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with several cells containing formulas. A dashed green circle highlights a group of cells with formulas: `=D$5`, `=D$6`, `=L19+L20`, `=M19+M20`, and `=N19+N20`. A red arrow points from the formula bar area towards a callout box on the right. The callout box contains the text: "A **mixed reference** contains an absolute row or an absolute column. This relative reference could be changed to the mixed reference `$N20` or `N$20`."

<code>=D\$5</code>	<code>=D\$5</code>	<code>=D\$5</code>	3,100	3,100	3,100	3,100
<code>=D\$6</code>	<code>=D\$6</code>	<code>=D\$6</code>	1,300	1,300	1,300	1,300
<code>=L19+L20</code>	<code>=M19+M20</code>	<code>=N19+N20</code>	4,400	4,400	4,400	4,400
1,050	1,050	1,050	1,050	1,050	1,050	1,050
1,750	750					

UNDERSTANDING CELL REFERENCES

An **absolute reference** remains fixed when the cell formula is copied to a new location, and has \$ in front of the column letter and the row number. \$D\$5 is the absolute reference to cell D5.

A **relative reference** is interpreted in relation to the location of the cell containing the formula. L19 is the relative reference to cell L19.

11		Monthly Minimum	4,400				
12		Monthly Maximum	4,700				
13		Total Expenses	45,150				
14		Monthly Average	3,763				
15		Monthly Minimum	2,795				
16		Monthly Maximum	6,985				
17							
18	Income & Expenses	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun
19	Income Diane	3,100	3,100	3,100	3,100	=D\$5	
20	Income Glenn	1,300	1,300	1,300	1,300	=D\$6	
21	Income Total	4,400	4,400	4,400	4,400	=L19+L20	
22	Rent	1,050	1,050	1,050	1,050	1,050	1,050

Documentation

Budget

Home Savings Plan

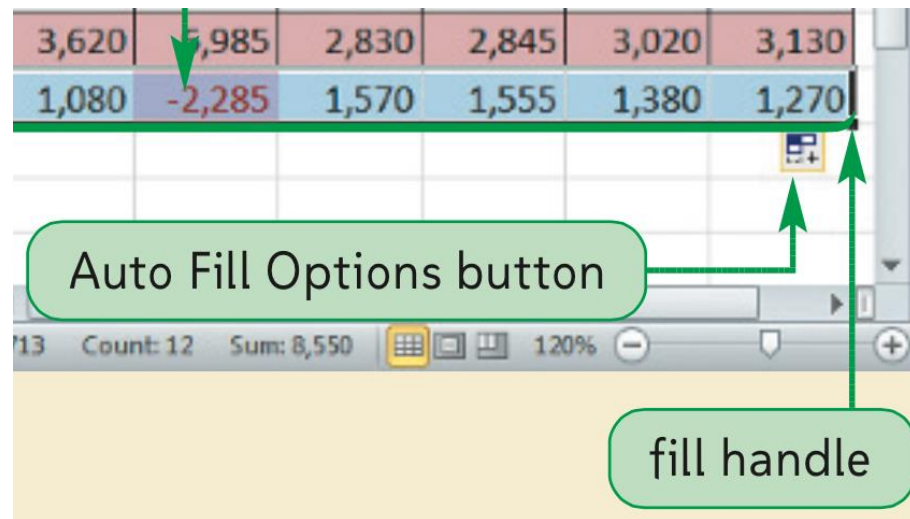
Loan Analysis

COPYING FORMULAS AND FORMATS WITH AUTOFILL

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



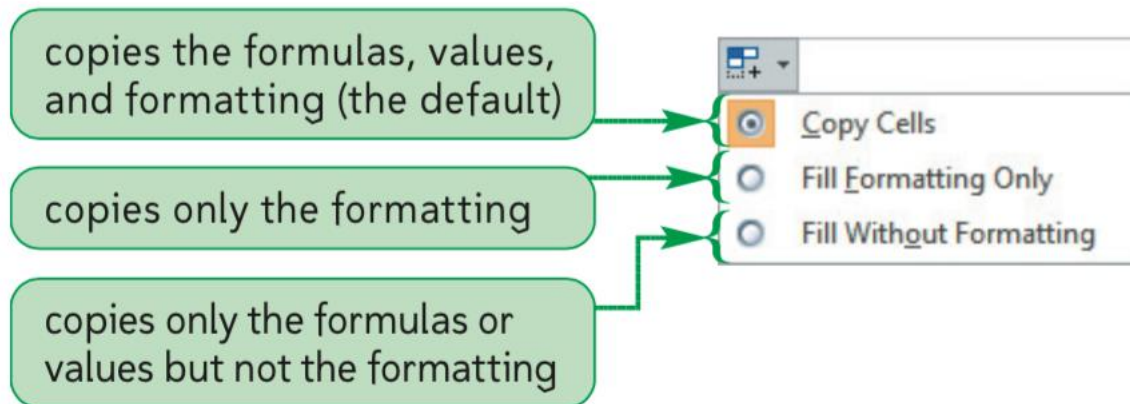
- After you select a range, the **fill handle** appears in the lower-right corner of the selection. When you drag the fill handle over an adjacent range, Excel uses **AutoFill** to copy the content and formats from the original cell into the adjacent range. This process is often more efficient than the two-step process of copying and pasting.
 - Select the cell or range that contains the formula or formulas you want to copy.
 - Drag the fill handle in the direction you want to copy the formula(s) and then release the mouse button.
 - To copy only the formats or only the formulas, click the Auto Fill Options button and select the appropriate option.



USING THE AUTO FILL OPTIONS BUTTON

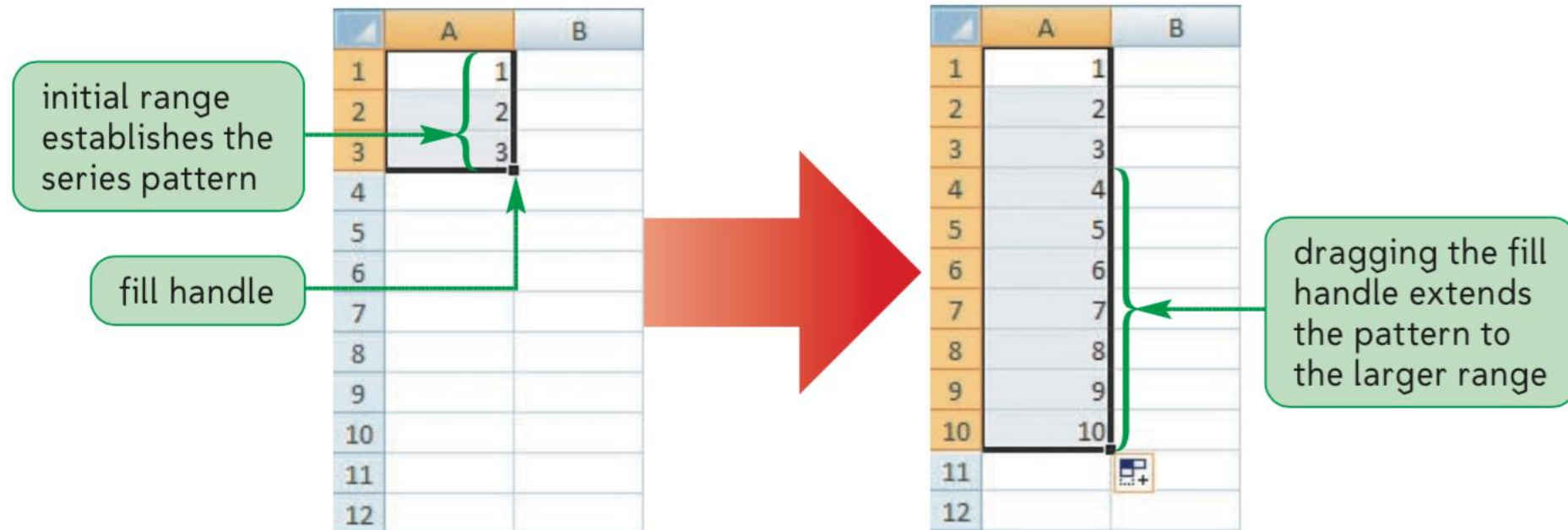


- By default, **AutoFill** copies both the content and the formatting of the original range to the selected range. However, sometimes you might want to copy only the content or only the formatting. The Auto Fill Options button that appears after you release the mouse button lets you specify what is copied. Clicking this button provides a list of Auto-Fill options.
 - The **Copy Cells** option, which is the default, copies both the content and the formatting.
 - The **Fill Formatting Only** option copies the formatting into the selected cells but not any content.
 - The **Fill Without Formatting** option copies the content but not the formatting.



FILLING A SERIES

- AutoFill can also be used to create a series of numbers, dates, or text based on a pattern.
- To create a series of numbers, you enter the initial values in the series in a selected range and then use AutoFill to complete the series.



FILLING A SERIES

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



Type	Initial Pattern	Extended Series
Values	1, 2, 3	4, 5, 6, ...
	2, 4, 6	8, 10, 12, ...
Dates and Times	Jan	Feb, Mar, Apr, ...
	January	February, March, April, ...
	15-Jan, 15-Feb	15-Mar, 15-Apr, 15-May, ...
	12/30/2013	12/31/2013, 1/1/2014, 1/2/2014, ...
	12/31/2013, 1/31/2014	2/28/2014, 3/31/2014, 4/30/2014, ...
	Mon	Tue, Wed, Thu, ...
	Monday	Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, ...
	11:00AM	12:00PM, 1:00PM, 2:00PM, ...
Patterned Text	1st period	2nd period, 3rd period, 4th period, ...
	Region 1	Region 2, Region 3, Region 4, ...
	Quarter 3	Quarter 4, Quarter 1, Quarter 2, ...
	Qtr3	Qtr4, Qtr1, Qtr2, ...

FILLING A SERIES



- For more complex patterns, you can use **the Series dialog box**.
- To do so, enter the first value of the series in a worksheet cell, select the entire range that will contain the series, click the Fill button in the Editing group on the Home tab, and then click Series.
- The Series dialog box opens. From the Series dialog box you can specify a linear or growth series for numeric values; a Date series for dates that increase by day, weekday, month, or year; or an AutoFill series for patterned text.
- With numeric values, you can also specify the step value (indicating how much each numeric value increases over the previous entry) and a stop value (to specify the endpoint for the entire series).

INTRODUCING FUNCTIONS

Microsoft Office
*Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills*



- A **function** is a named operation that returns a value. Functions are used to simplify formulas, reducing what might be a long formula into a compact statement.
- For example, to add the values in the range A1:A10, you could enter the following long formula:
- =A1+A2+A3+A4+A5+A6+A7+A8+A9+A10. Or, you could use the SUM function to calculate the sum of cell values found within a specified range. In this case, the formula would appear as: =SUM(A1:A10)
- In both instances, Excel adds the values in cells A1 through A10, but the SUM function is faster and simpler to enter and less prone to a typing error. You should always use a function, if one is available, in place of a long, complex formula.
- Excel supports **more than 300 different functions** from the fields of finance, business, science, and engineering. Excel provides functions that work with numbers, text, and dates.

ENTERING A FUNCTION



- **To enter the SUM function:**
 - Click the cell in which you want to enter the function to make it active.
 - Type ‘=SUM(F6:F9)’.
 - As you begin to type the function, a ScreenTip lists the names of all functions that start with the letter “S.”
 - When you type the cell references, Excel highlights all the cells in the specified range to provide a visual reminder of exactly which cells the SUM function is using.

a colored border indicates the range used in the function

ScreenTip shows the function being entered into the cell

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
1	RipCity Digital								
2	Customer Orders								
3	3/31/2013								
4									
5	Last	First	Address	Phone	Date	DVDs	Price per DVD	Charge	
6	Ferris	Andrew	135 College Ave. Bar Harbor, ME 04609	(207) 555-0101	3/5/2013	2	\$17.29	\$34.58	
7	Garcia	Susan	1025 Drake Ave. Exeter, NH 03833	(603) 555-1091	3/14/2013	25	\$15.79	\$394.75	
8	Torbet	Dr. Lilla	5 North Ln. Oswego, NY 13126	(315) 555-7823	3/17/2013	32	\$12.99	\$415.68	
9	Rhoden	Tony	24 Mountain Dr. Auburn, ME 04210	(207) 555-9915	3/24/2013	20	\$15.79	\$315.80	
10					TOTAL	=SUM(F6:F9)			
11									
12									

ENTERING FUNCTIONS WITH THE AUTOSUM FEATURE

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- A fast and convenient way to enter commonly used functions is with the AutoSum feature. **The AutoSum feature** includes buttons to quickly insert the SUM, AVERAGE, COUNT, MIN, and MAX functions to generate the following:
 - Sum of the values in the column or row
 - Average value in the column or row
 - Total count of numeric values in the column or row
 - Minimum value in the column or row
 - Maximum value in the column or row
- Excel determines the range reference needed for the function being inserted by the AutoSum feature by examining the layout of the data and choosing what seems to be the most likely range. When you use the Sum button, Excel highlights the range it thinks you want to use. For example, if you use the Sum button in a cell that is below a column of numbers, Excel assumes that you want to summarize the values in the column. You can change that range by typing a different range reference or selecting a different range.
- Make sure to always verify the range AutoSum selected, especially when a worksheet's column or row titles contain numbers. AutoSum cannot differentiate between numbers used as titles (such as years) and numbers used as data for the calculation.

ENTERING FUNCTIONS WITH THE AUTOSUM FEATURE

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



Excel selects the range over which the AutoSum is applied

click to enter an AutoSum function into the selected cell

Excel inserts the SUM function and the most likely cell reference

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	RipCity Digital							
2	Customer Orders							
3	3/31/2013							
4								
5	Last	First	Address	Phone	Date	DVDs	Price per DVD	Charge
6	Ferris	Andrew	135 College Ave. Bar Harbor, ME 04609	(207) 555-0101	3/5/2013	2	\$17.29	\$34.58
7	Garcia	Susan	1025 Drake Ave. Exeter, NH 03833	(603) 555-1091	3/14/2013	25	\$15.79	\$394.75
8	Torbet	Dr. Lilla	5 North Ln. Oswego, NY 13126	(315) 555-7823	3/17/2013	32	\$12.99	\$415.68
9	Rhoden	Tony	24 Mountain Dr. Auburn, ME 04210	(207) 555-9915	3/24/2013	20	\$15.79	\$315.80
10					TOTAL	79		=SUM(H6:H9)
11								
12								

WORKING WITH LOGICAL FUNCTIONS

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- A logical function is a function that works with statements that are **either true or false**. Consider a statement such as “cell A5 = 3”. If cell A5 is equal to 3, this statement has a value of true; if cell A5 is not equal to 3, this statement has a value of false. Excel supports many different logical functions, one of which is **the IF function**.
- **Using the IF Function:**
- The IF function is a logical function that returns one value if a statement is true and returns a different value if that statement is false.
- The syntax of the IF function is **IF(logical_test, [value_if_true,] [value_if_false])**, where logical_test is a statement that is either true or false, value_if_true is the value returned by the IF function if the statement is true, and value_if_false is the value returned by the function if the statement is false.
- For example, the following formula tests whether the value in cell A1 is equal to the value in cell B1. If it is, the formula returns a value of 100; otherwise it returns a value of 50.
=IF(A1=B1, 100, 50)
- In many cases, however, you will not use values directly in the IF function. The following formula uses cell references, returning the value of cell C1 if A1 equals B1; otherwise, it returns the value of cell C2: **=IF(A1=B1,C1,C2)**

COMPARISON OPERATORS

Operator	Statement	Description
=	A1 = B1	Tests whether the value in cell A1 <i>is equal to</i> the value in cell B1
>	A1 > B1	Tests whether the value in cell A1 <i>is greater than</i> the value in cell B1
<	A1 < B1	Tests whether the value in cell A1 <i>is less than</i> the value in cell B1
>=	A1 >= B1	Tests whether the value in cell A1 <i>is greater than or equal to</i> the value in cell B1
<=	A1 <= B1	Tests whether the value in cell A1 <i>is less than or equal to</i> the value in cell B1
<>	A1 <> B1	Tests whether the value in cell A1 <i>is not equal to</i> the value in cell B1

WORKING WITH LOGICAL FUNCTIONS

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- The IF function also works **with text**.
- For example, the following formula tests whether the value of cell A1 is equal to YES. If the value of cell A1 is equal to YES, the formula returns the text DONE; otherwise, it returns the text RESTART : **=IF(A1="YES", "DONE", "RESTART")**
- In addition, you can **nest other functions inside an IF statement**. The following formula first tests whether cell A5 is equal to the maximum of values within the range A1:A100. If it is, the formula returns the text "Maximum"; otherwise, it returns no text:
=IF(A5=MAX(A1:A100), "Maximum", "")

test condition that is either true or false

value returned if the condition is true

value returned if the condition is false

amount to transfer to the home account if the value is true

no money is transferred if the value is false

Function Arguments

IF

Logical_test C33>=\$L\$11 = FALSE

Value_if_true \$L\$10 = 800

Value_if_false 0 = 0

Checks whether a condition is met, and returns one value if TRUE, and another value if FALSE.

Value_if_false is the value that is returned if Logical_test is FALSE. If omitted, FALSE is returned.

Formula result = 0

[Help on this function](#)

OK Cancel

USING THE IF FUNCTION TO EXPLORE FINANCIAL OPTIONS

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- With **financial decisions**, you will often explore the impact of **alternative scenarios** on a projected outcome. Budget planning should not be limited to a single budget projection, but instead include several possible budgets. Your decision is then based on the evaluation of these different budgets. The budget you choose should prepare you to deal with shortages in future revenue or ways to take advantage of better-than-expected revenue.
- Using Excel to manage your finances allows you to quickly explore these multiple scenarios. You can quickly examine how changing one or more values will affect such outcomes as income, expenses, and cash flow. You can use logical functions such as the IF function to help you explore these **what-if scenarios** because you can set the outcome of one value only if certain conditions are met. Different scenarios can be coded with names such as Option1, Option2, and Option 3. By using these scenario names as input values to an IF function, you can set up the worksheet to display the results specific to each scenario. In a well-designed workbook, you can quickly switch between scenarios simply by changing a few values in the worksheet.
- By applying Excel's logical functions, you can more easily plan for different outcomes, and avoid the problems associated with unexpected occurrences.

CREATING NESTED IFs



- The IF function can choose between only two outcomes; it cannot choose from among three or more outcomes. However, **you can nest IF functions to allow for three or more outcomes**. A nested IF function is when one IF function is placed inside another IF function to test an additional condition. You can nest more than one IF function.
- **Example:**
 - Purpose: To determine the fee for a driver's license
 - Logic Scenario: Driver's license fee varies by age:

Below 16	"Too Young"
16–45	\$30
46–60	\$25
61 and older	\$20

- Data: cell B1 stores the driver's age
- Formula: Nested IF functions
=IF(B1<16,"Too Young", IF(B1<=45,30,IF(B1<=60,25,20)))

FINDING AND FIXING ERRORS IN FORMULAS

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- If formulas in a worksheet are returning errors or not working as expected, you need to find and fix the problems. Two common categories of formula errors in Excel are syntax errors and logic errors.
 - A **syntax error** is an error in a statement that violates the rules of Excel. A syntax error might occur due to unmatched parentheses or a required argument that is omitted in a function.
 - **Logic errors** occur in formulas that work but return an incorrect result. A logic error could occur because the formula uses the wrong calculation, the formula references the wrong cell, or the formula uses faulty reasoning, leading to incorrect results.
- Some **problem-solving approaches** can help resolve these types of errors.
 - First, examine the formulas in worksheet cells instead of the results by pressing the **Ctrl+ ~** keys to show the formulas in each cell.
 - Next, troubleshoot problem areas in the worksheet by pressing the **F9 key** to highlight part of a formula and temporarily display the actual value in the cell so you can check intermediate results.
 - Press the **Esc key** to return the cell references.
 - Finally, you can use the **Formula Auditing tools** on the Formulas tab to visually identify and trace cells used in a formula. This can help you locate and fix inaccurate cell references and faulty logic.

USING THE AND FUNCTION



- The IF function evaluates a single condition. However, you often need to test two or more conditions and **determine whether *all* conditions are true**. You can do this with the AND function.
- The AND function is a logical function that returns the value TRUE if all the logical conditions are true and the value FALSE if any or all of the logical conditions are false.
- The syntax of the AND function is **AND(logical1 [,logical2,...])**, where logical1 and logical2 are conditions that can be either true or false.
- If all of the logical conditions are true, the AND function returns the logical value TRUE; otherwise, the function returns the logical value FALSE.
- You can include **up to 255 logical conditions** in an AND function. However, keep in mind that all the logical conditions listed in the AND function must be true for the AND function to return a TRUE value.

USING THE AND FUNCTION

Microsoft Office
*Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills*



Purpose: To determine dean's list requirements

Logic Scenario: 12 or more semester credits and GPA above 3.25

Formula: AND function with two conditions
=AND (B1>=12 , B2>3 . 25)

Data: cell B1 stores number of credits
cell B2 stores student's GPA

Example:

Data		Condition1	Condition2	Results
<u>Cell B1</u>	<u>Cell B2</u>	<u>B1>=12</u>	<u>B2>3.25</u>	<u>(Dean's List?)</u>
15	3.5	True	True	True
12	3.25	True	False	False
6	3.4	False	True	False
10	3.0	False	False	False

USING THE OR FUNCTION

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- The OR function is a logical function that returns a TRUE value if any of the logical conditions are true and a FALSE value if all of the logical conditions are false.
- The syntax of the OR function is **OR(logical1 [,logical2,...])**, where logical1 and logical2 are conditions that can be either true or false.
- **If any of the logical conditions are true, the OR function returns the logical value TRUE**; otherwise, the function returns the logical value FALSE.
- You can include **up to 255 logical conditions** in the OR function. However, keep in mind that if any logical condition listed in the OR function is true, the OR function returns a TRUE value.

USING THE OR FUNCTION



Purpose: To determine who is eligible for a discount

Logic Scenario: Discount is 10 percent for seniors (65 or older) or college students (Status = STU)

Formula: OR function with two conditions
=OR (B1>=65 , B2="STU")

Data: cell B1 stores Age
cell B2 stores Status (STU, FAC, STF)

Example:

Data		Condition1	Condition2	Results
<u>Cell B1</u>	<u>Cell B2</u>	<u>B1>=65</u>	<u>B2="STU"</u>	<u>(Discount?)</u>
22	STU	False	True	True
65	FAC	True	False	True
67	STU	True	True	True
45	STF	False	False	False

USING STRUCTURED REFERENCES TO CREATE FORMULAS IN EXCEL TABLES

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- When you create a formula that references all or parts of an Excel table, you can **replace the specific cell or range address with a structured reference**, the actual table name or column header. This makes the formula easier to create and understand.
- The default **Excel table name** is Table1, Table2, and so forth unless you entered a more descriptive table name, for example 'Employee' table.
- **Column headers** provide a description of the data entered in each column. Structured references make it easier to create formulas that use portions or all of an Excel table because the names or headers are usually simpler to identify than cell addresses.
- For example, in the Employee table, the table name 'Employee' refers to the range A2:N101, which is the range of data in the table excluding the header row and the Total row.
- When you want to reference an entire column of data in a table, you create a column qualifier, which has the syntax **Tablename[qualifier]**, where Tablename is the name entered in the Table Name box in the Properties group on the Table Tools Design tab, and qualifier is the column header enclosed in square brackets.
- For example, the structured reference Employee[Annual Salary] references the annual salary data in the range K2:K101 of the Employee table.

USING STRUCTURED REFERENCES TO CREATE FORMULAS IN EXCEL TABLES

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- You use structured references in formulas. The following formula adds the annual salary data in the range K2:K101 of the Employee table; in this case, [Annual Salary] is the column qualifier: **=SUM(Employee[Annual Salary])**
- When you create a calculated column, you can use structured references to create the formula. A formula that includes a structured reference can be fully qualified or unqualified.
- In a **fully qualified structured reference**, the table name precedes the column qualifier.
- In an **unqualified structured reference**, only the column qualifier appears in the reference.
- For example, you could have used either of the following formulas with structured references to calculate Life Ins Premium in the calculated column of the Employee table:
- Fully qualified: **=IF(Employee[Add Life Ins]="Y",Employee[Annual Salary]*.001,0)**
- Unqualified: **=IF([Add Life Ins]="Y",[Annual Salary]*.001,0)**
- If you are creating a calculated column or formula within an Excel table, you can use either the fully qualified structured reference or the unqualified structured reference in the formula.
- If you use a structured reference outside the table or in another worksheet to reference an Excel table or portion of the table, you must use a fully qualified reference.

USING STRUCTURED REFERENCES TO CREATE FORMULAS IN EXCEL TABLES

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



formula uses
structured references
to calculate the
salary increases

Excel screenshot showing a table with employee data and a formula bar. The formula bar displays: `=IF(OR([Location]="Home",[Job Status]="FT"),[Annual Salary]*0.04,[Annual Salary]*0.025)`. The table has columns: Birth Date, Sex, Location, Job Status, Life Ins, Pay Grade, Pay Type, Annual Salary, Health Plan, Years Service, Life Ins Premium, 401(k), and Salary Increase. The formula is applied to the Salary Increase column.

	Birth Date	Sex	Location	Job Status	Life Ins	Pay Grade	Pay Type	Annual Salary	Health Plan	Years Service	Life Ins Premium	401(k)	Salary Increase
1													
2	9/6/1966	M	Austin	FT	Y	3	S	\$ 85,000	HMOF	1	\$ 85.00	\$2,550.00	\$3,400.00
3	2/15/1986	F	Home	FT	N	2	S	\$ 40,000	HMOF	6	\$ -	\$1,200.00	\$1,600.00
4	9/24/1968	M	New Orleans	FT	Y	2	S	\$ 37,244	HMOF	1	\$ 37.24	\$1,117.32	\$1,489.76
5	8/9/1959	F	Austin	FT	N	3	S	\$ 80,000	None	1	\$ -	\$2,400.00	\$3,200.00
6	7/15/1950	M	Austin	FT	Y	3	S	\$ 65,000	None	0	\$ 65.00	\$ -	\$2,600.00
7	5/2/1958	M	New Orleans	FT	Y	3	S	\$125,000	PPOI	1	\$125.00	\$3,750.00	\$5,000.00
8	12/7/1977	M	New Orleans	FT	N	3	S	\$ 95,000	HMOI	3	\$ -	\$2,850.00	\$3,800.00

salary increases
for employees

USING LOOKUP TABLES AND FUNCTIONS

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- Lookup functions allow you to **use tables of data to “look up” values and insert them in another worksheet location**. For example, you might enter a product table in a worksheet that includes the product ID, product name, and price of all products a company sells. You could then use this product table to build an invoice in another worksheet by entering a product ID and having Excel look up the product name and price, and insert these values in the invoice.
- The table that stores the data you want to retrieve is called **a lookup table**, and it organizes the data you want to retrieve into different categories, such as by product ID. The categories for the lookup table, called **compare values**, are located in the table’s first column or row. To retrieve a particular value from the table, a lookup value (the value you are trying to find) needs to match one of the compare values. When a match is found, the corresponding value in the lookup table is displayed in the cell where the lookup formula is entered. Lookup values can also be used as part of a formula.
- Lookup tables can be constructed as either exact match or approximate match lookups.
- **An exact match lookup** occurs when the value entered must match **one** of the values in the first column of the lookup table.
- **An approximate match** lookup occurs when the value entered falls within a **range** of values in the first column of the lookup table.

THE VLOOKUP FUNCTION SYNTAX



- The VLOOKUP function has the syntax **VLOOKUP(lookup_value, table_array, col_index_num, [range_lookup])**, where
 - **lookup_value** is the value you want to use to search the first column of the lookup table
 - **table_array** is the range reference of the lookup table or its table name
 - **col_index_num** is the number of the column in the lookup table that contains the value you want to return
 - **range_lookup** indicates whether the compare values are a range of values (for an approximate match) or an exact match.
- When you use a range of values, you set the range_lookup value to TRUE.
- When you want the lookup_value to exactly match a value in the first column of the table_array, you set the range_lookup value to FALSE.
- The range_lookup argument is optional; if you don't include a range_lookup value, the value is considered TRUE (an approximate match).

USING THE VLOOKUP FUNCTION TO FIND AN EXACT MATCH

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- You'll use the VLOOKUP function to calculate the annual health plan cost for an employee. Suppose you want to derive from the first column of the HealthPlanRates table (range B4:C8), the monthly Health Plan Rate for the employee whose code is stored in row 2 of the Health Plan column (column L) of the Employee table. You want the function to return the annual Health Plan cost for this employee in the second column of the HealthPlanRates lookup table.
- You can use **range references or structured references**, as follows:
- Range references =VLOOKUP(L2, 'Lookup Tables'! \$B\$4:\$C\$8, 2, FALSE)*12
- Structured references =VLOOKUP([HealthPlan], HealthPlanRates, 2, FALSE)*12
- Both of these formulas use the VLOOKUP function to search for the code in the Health Plan column (column L) of the Employee table, in the first column of the lookup table (the HealthPlanRates table in the range B4:C8 in the Lookup Tables worksheet), and then return the value in the second column of the HealthPlanRates lookup table, which shows the monthly cost. The formulas use FALSE as the range_lookup argument because you want the lookup value to **exactly match a value** in the first column of the HealthPlanRates table.

USING THE VLOOKUP FUNCTION TO FIND AN EXACT MATCH

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



health plan code for the employee in row 2

table that contains the data you want to look up

the column in the HealthPlanRates table that stores the monthly cost

FALSE makes the function an exact match lookup (this argument is optional)

cost of the health plan for the employee in row 2 of the Employee table

Function Arguments

VLOOKUP

Lookup_value: L2 = "HMOF"

Table_array: HealthPlanRates = {"HMOF",1500;"HMOI",875;"PPOF",165}

Col_index_num: 2 = 2

Range_lookup: FALSE = FALSE

Looks for a value in the leftmost column of a table, and then returns a value in the same row from a column you specify. By default, the table must be sorted in an ascending order.

Range_lookup is a logical value: to find the closest match in the first column (sorted in ascending order) = TRUE or omitted; find an exact match = FALSE.

Formula result = \$ 1,500.00

Help on this function

OK Cancel

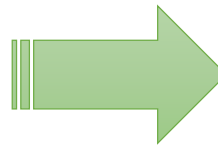
USING THE VLOOKUP FUNCTION TO FIND AN APPROXIMATE MATCH

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- You can also use a VLOOKUP function to return a value from a table that is based on **an approximate match lookup**. The previous table lookup used the HealthPlanRates table to return a value only if Excel found an exact match in the first column of the lookup table. The categories in the first column or row of a lookup table can also represent a range of values. Quantity discounts, shipping charges, and income tax rates are a few examples of approximate match lookups.
- Suppose that the management of a company plans to give employee-recognition awards based on the number of years individuals have worked for the company. The criteria developed are as follows:

Years of Service	Award
≥ 0 years and < 1 year	0
≥ 1 year and < 3 years	100
≥ 3 years and < 5 years	200
≥ 5 years and < 7 years	300
7 years or more	500



	F	G	H
1			
2			
3		Years of Service	Recognition Award
4		0	\$ -
5		1	\$ 100
6		3	\$ 200
7		5	\$ 300
8		7	\$ 500

USING THE VLOOKUP FUNCTION TO FIND AN APPROXIMATE MATCH

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- You need to use an approximate match lookup, which determines whether the lookup value falls within **a range of values**.
- When a lookup table is used with a range of values, **the compare values must be sorted in alphabetical order if they are text and in low-to-high order if they are numbers**.
- When the compare values are arranged in a different order, Excel may not retrieve the correct value, leading to incorrect results. The setup of the lookup table in an approximate match is critical for a VLOOKUP formula to work.
- To determine whether a lookup value falls within a range of values in the lookup table, Excel searches the first column of the table until it locates the largest value that is less than the lookup value. Then Excel moves across the row in the table to retrieve the corresponding value.
- For an employee working at the company for six years, Excel would search the lookup table until the compare value is 5 (the largest value less than the lookup value) and retrieve 300 from column 2 of the corresponding row.

USING THE VLOOKUP FUNCTION TO FIND AN APPROXIMATE MATCH

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



omitting the range_lookup entry makes VLOOKUP an approximate match lookup

The screenshot shows the 'Function Arguments' dialog box for the VLOOKUP function. The arguments are as follows:

Argument	Value	Default/Result
Lookup_value	[Years Service]	= 1
Table_array	Recognition	= {0,0;1,100;3,200;5,300;7,500}
Col_index_num	2	= 2
Range_lookup		= logical

Below the arguments, a description states: "Looks for a value in the leftmost column of a table, and then returns a value in the same row from a column you specify. By default, the table must be sorted in an ascending order." A green arrow points from the text box on the left to the empty 'Range_lookup' field.

Below the description, a note explains: "Col_index_num is the column number in table_array from which the matching value should be returned. The first column of values in the table is column 1."

At the bottom, the 'Formula result' is displayed as "\$ 100.00". There are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom right, and a 'Help on this function' link at the bottom left.

LOOKING UP VALUES USING THE HLOOKUP FUNCTION

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



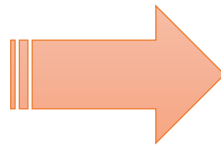
- The HLOOKUP function is very similar to the VLOOKUP function. The HLOOKUP function (**horizontal lookup function**) searches horizontally across the **top row** of the lookup table and retrieves the value in the column you specify.
- You use the HLOOKUP function when **the comparison values are located in the first row of the lookup table** and you want to look down a specified number of rows to find the data to enter in another cell.
- The HLOOKUP function has the syntax **HLOOKUP(lookup_value, table_array, row_index_num, [range_lookup])**, where
 - **lookup_value** is the value you want to use to search the first row of the lookup table
 - **table_array** is the range reference of the lookup table or its table name
 - **row_index_num** is the number of the row in the lookup table that contains the value you want to return
 - **range_lookup** indicates whether the compare values are a range of values or an exact match.



LOOKING UP VALUES USING THE HLOOKUP FUNCTION

- When you use a range of values (such as in a tax rate table), you set the range_lookup value to TRUE.
- When you want the lookup_value to exactly match a value in the first row of the table_array, you set the range_lookup value to FALSE.
- The range_lookup argument is optional; if you don't include a range_lookup value, the value is considered TRUE (an approximate match).
- The major difference between HLOOKUP and VLOOKUP functions is the way the lookup tables are organized:

	F	G	H
1			
2			
3		Years of Service	Recognition Award
4		0	\$ -
5		1	\$ 100
6		3	\$ 200
7		5	\$ 300
8		7	\$ 500



6							
7		Recognition Award					
8							
9		Years of Service	0	1	3	5	7
10		Recognition Award	\$ -	\$ 100	\$ 200	\$ 300	\$ 500
11							

- With the lookup tables of the previous example,
 - the exact match formula to calculate the annual health plan cost is **=HLOOKUP([HealthPlan], HealthPlanRates, 2, FALSE)*12**
 - the approximate match formula to calculate the recognition award is **=HLOOKUP([Years Service], Recognition, 2)**

THE INDEX FUNCTION'S SYNTAX AND USAGE

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- The Excel INDEX function returns a value in an array based on the row and column numbers you specify.
- The syntax of the INDEX function is straightforward: **INDEX(array, row_num, [column_num])** where
 - **array** is a range of cells that you want to return a value from
 - **row_num** is the row number in array from which you want to return a value. If omitted, the column_num is required.
 - **column_num** is the column number in array from which you want to return a value. If omitted, row_num is required.
- If both row_num and column_num parameters are used, the INDEX function returns the value in the cell at the intersection of the specified row and column.
- Here is the simplest example of the INDEX formula: =INDEX(A1:C10,2,3)
 - The formula searches in cells A1 through C10 and returns a value of the cell in the 2nd row and the 3rd column, i.e. cell C2.



THE MATCH FUNCTION'S SYNTAX AND USAGE

- The Excel MATCH function searches for a lookup value in a range of cells, and returns the relative position of that value in the range.
- For example, if the range B1:B3 contains the values "New-York", "Paris", "London", then the formula =MATCH("London",B1:B3,0) returns the number 3, because "London" is the third entry in the range.
- The syntax of the MATCH function is **MATCH(lookup_value, lookup_array, [match_type])** where
 - **lookup_value** is the number or text you are looking for. This can be a value, a cell reference or logical value.
 - **lookup_array** is a range of cells being searched
 - **match_type** tells the MATCH function whether you want to return an exact match or the nearest match:
 - 1 or omitted - finds the largest value that is less than or equal to the lookup value. The values in the lookup array must be sorted in ascending order, i.e. from smallest to largest.
 - 0 - finds the first value that is exactly equal to the lookup value. In the INDEX / MATCH combination, you almost always need the exact match, so the third argument of your MATCH function is "0".
 - -1 - finds the smallest value that is greater than or equal to lookup_value. The values in the lookup array must be sorted in descending order, i.e. from largest to smallest.⁸⁶

HOW TO USE INDEX MATCH FUNCTION IN EXCEL

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- At first sight, the usefulness of the **MATCH function** may seem questionable. Who cares about the position of a value in a range? What we do want to know is the value itself.
- The relative position of the lookup value (i.e. a row or/and column number) is exactly what you need to supply to the row_num or/and column_num argument of the INDEX function. The **INDEX function** can return the value at the juncture of a given row and column, but it cannot determine which exactly row and column you want.
- Let's find the population of some capital, say the capital of Japan, using the following Index Match formula: =INDEX(\$D\$2:\$D\$10,MATCH("Japan",\$B\$2:\$B\$10,0))
 - The MATCH function searches for the lookup value "Japan" in column B, more precisely cells B2:B10, and returns the number 3, because "Japan" is the third in the list.
 - The INDEX functions takes "3" in the second parameter (row_num), which indicates which row you want to return a value from, and turns into a simple =INDEX(\$D\$2:\$D\$10,3). Translated into plain English, the formula reads: search in cells D2 through D10 and return a value of the cell in the 3rd row, i.e. cell D4, because we start counting from the second row.
- **Important!** The number of rows and columns in the INDEX array should match those in the row_num or/and column_num parameters of the MATCH functions, respectively. Otherwise, the formula will return incorrect result.

HOW TO USE INDEX MATCH FUNCTION IN EXCEL

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



G2		:				=INDEX(\$D\$2:\$D\$10,MATCH("Japan",\$B\$2:\$B\$10,0))	
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	Rank	Country	Capital	Population			
2	1	China	Beijing	20,693,000		Population of Japan's capital:	
3	2	India	New Delhi	17,838,842			13,189,000
4	3	Japan	Tokyo	13,189,000			
5	4	Russia	Moscow	11,541,000			
6	5	South Korea	Seoul	10,528,774			
7	6	Indonesia	Jakarta	10,187,595			
8	7	Iran	Tehran	9,110,347			
9	8	Mexico	Mexico City	8,851,080			
10	9	Peru	Lima	8,481,415			

BENEFITS OF USING MATCH INDEX IN EXCEL

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- **Right to left lookup:** Excel VLOOKUP cannot look to its left, meaning that your lookup value should always reside in the left-most column of the lookup range. With INDEX MATCH, your lookup column can be on the right side of your table as well.
- **Insert or delete columns safely:** VLOOKUP formulas get broken or return incorrect results when a new column is deleted from or added to a lookup table. With VLOOKUP, any inserted or deleted column changes the results returned by your formulas because the VLOOKUP function's syntax requires specifying the entire table array and a certain number indicating which column you want to pull the data from.
 - For example, if you have a table A1:C10 and want to return a value from column B, you will put "2" in the third parameter (col_index_num) of a VLOOKUP formula, say =VLOOKUP("lookup value", A1:C10, 2). If at a later point, you insert a new column between A and B, you will have to change "2" to "3" in your formula, otherwise it would return a value from the newly inserted column. With INDEX MATCH, you can delete or insert new columns in your lookup table without distorting the results since you specify directly the column containing the value you want to get. This is a really great benefit, especially when working with large datasets, since you are able to insert and remove columns without worrying about updating every associated vlookup formula.

BENEFITS OF USING MATCH INDEX IN EXCEL

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- **No limit for a lookup value's size:** When using the VLOOKUP function, the total length of your lookup criteria should not exceed 255 characters, otherwise you will end up having the #VALUE! error. So, if your dataset contains long strings, INDEX MATCH is the only working solution.
 - Suppose, you are using the following VLOOKUP formula that searches through cells B5 to D10 for the value in cell A2: `=VLOOKUP(A2,B5:D10,3,FALSE)`. The formula won't work if the lookup value in cell A2 exceeds 255 symbols. Instead, you shall use the analogous INDEX / MATCH function: `=INDEX(D5:D10, MATCH(TRUE, INDEX(B5:B10=A2, 0), 0), 0)`
- **Higher processing speed:** If you are working with relatively small tables, the difference in Excel's performance will most likely be unnoticeable, especially in recent versions. But if you use large worksheets with thousands of rows and thousands of lookup formulas, Excel will work much faster if you use MATCH INDEX rather than VLOOKUP. Generally, the use of Index / Match formulas increases Excel's performance by 13% compared to equivalent Vlookup formulas.

USING THE IFERROR FUNCTION



- **Error values** indicate that some element in a formula or a cell referenced in a formula is preventing Excel from returning a calculated value.
- An error value begins with a number sign (#) followed by an error name that indicates the type of error.

Error Value	Description of Error
#DIV/0!	The formula or function contains a number divided by 0.
#NAME?	Excel doesn't recognize text in the formula or function, such as when the function name is misspelled.
#N/A	A value is not available to a function or formula, which can occur when an invalid value is specified in the LOOKUP function.
#NULL!	A formula or function requires two cell ranges to intersect, but they don't.
#NUM!	Invalid numbers are used in a formula or function, such as text entered in a function that requires a number.
#REF!	A cell reference used in a formula or function is no longer valid, which can occur when the cell used by the function was deleted from the worksheet.
#VALUE!	The wrong type of argument is used in a function or formula. This can occur when you supply a range of values to a function that requires a single value.

USING THE IFERROR FUNCTION



- These error value messages are not particularly descriptive or helpful. **To display a more descriptive message** that helps users fix the problem, you can use the IFERROR function.
- The IFERROR function can determine if a cell contains an error value and then display the message you choose rather than the default error value.
- The IFERROR function has the syntax **IFERROR(expression, valueIfError)**, where
 - expression is the formula you want to check for an error
 - valueIfError is the message you want displayed if Excel detects an error in the formula you are checking.
- If Excel does not detect an error, the result of the expression is displayed.
- For example, referring to the previous example, you can enter the following formula to determine whether an invalid code was entered in the Health Plan column of the Employee table and then display a more descriptive message if Excel detects an error:
=IFERROR(VLOOKUP(L2,HealthPlanRates,2,False)*12,"Invalid code")

SUMMARIZING DATA CONDITIONALLY

- The COUNT function allies the number of data values in a range, the SUM function adds the values in a range, and the AVERAGE function calculates the average of the values in a range. However, sometimes you need to calculate a conditional count, sum, or average using only those cells that meet a particular condition. In those cases, you need to use the COUNTIF, SUMIF, and AVERAGEIF functions.
- **Using the COUNTIF Function:**
- You can calculate the number of cells in a range that match criteria you specify using the COUNTIF function, which is sometimes referred to as a conditional count.
- The COUNTIF function has the syntax **COUNTIF(range, criteria)** where
 - range is the range of cells you want to count
 - criteria is an expression that defines which cells to count.

beginning values in the Location column

number of cells in the range that contain the criterion "Austin"

criterion to determine which employee records to count

Function Arguments

COUNTIF

Range: Employee Data!F2:F101 = {"Austin";"Home";"New Orleans";"Austin"

Criteria: B4 = "Austin"

Counts the number of cells within a range that meet the given condition.

Criteria is the condition in the form of a number, expression, or text that defines which cells will be counted.

Formula result = 57

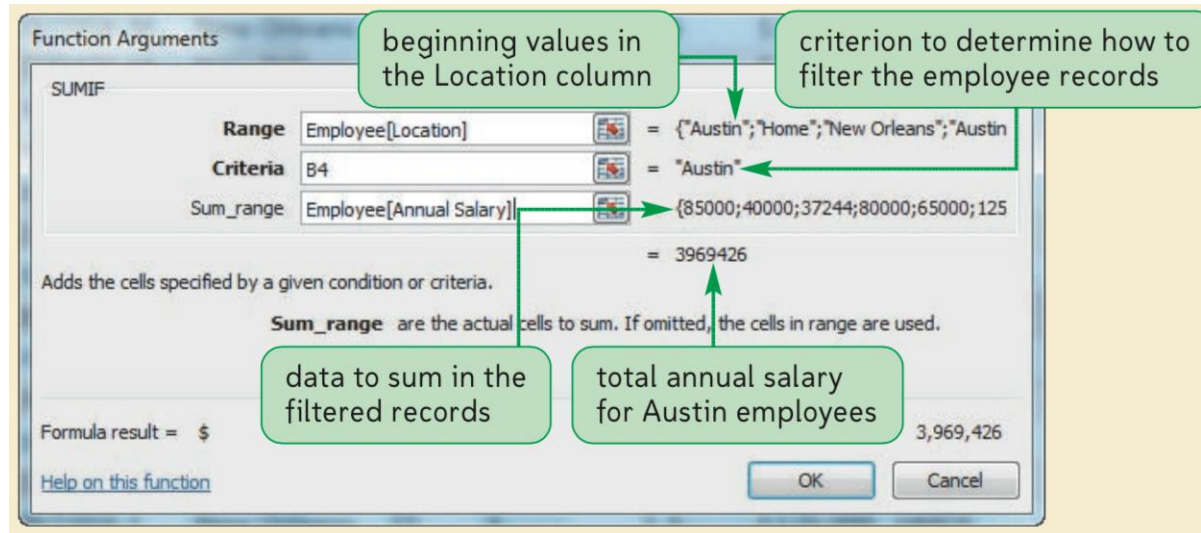
Help on this function

OK Cancel



SUMMARIZING DATA CONDITIONALLY

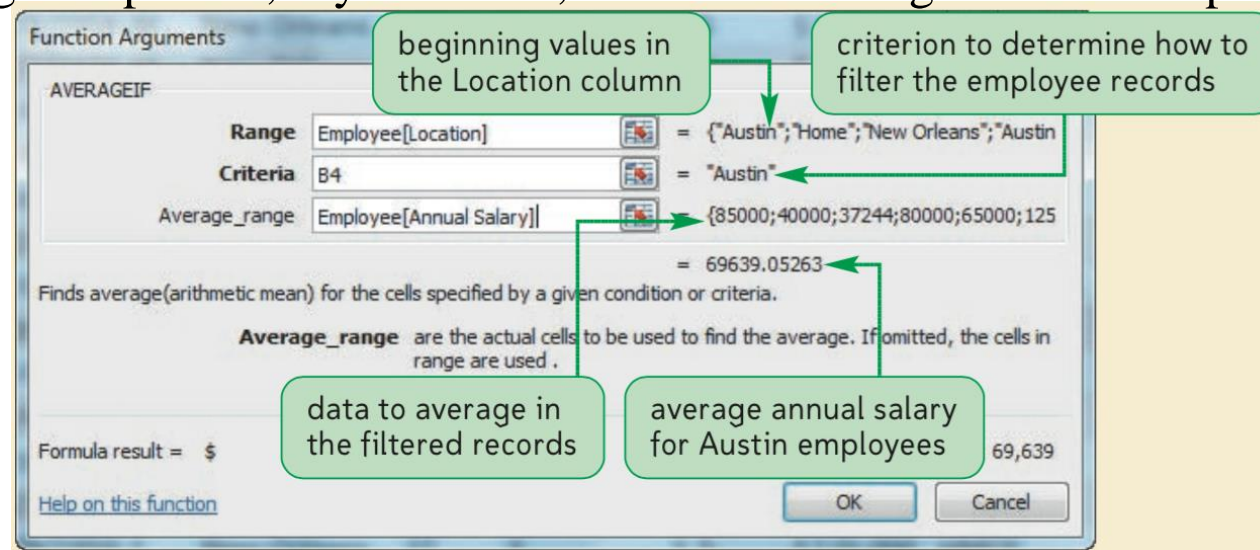
- **Using the SUMIF Function:**
- The SUMIF function adds the values in a range that meet criteria you specify. The SUMIF function is also called a **conditional sum**.
- The syntax of the SUMIF function is **SUMIF(range, criteria [, sum_range])** where
 - **range** is the range of cells you want to filter before calculating a sum
 - **criteria** is the condition used to filter the range
 - **sum_range** is the range of cells to total.
- The **sum_range** is optional; if you omit it, Excel will total the values specified in the **range** argument. For example, if you want to total the salaries for all employees with salaries greater than \$50,000, you do not use the optional third argument.





SUMMARIZING DATA CONDITIONALLY

- **Using the AVERAGEIF Function:**
- You use the AVERAGEIF function to calculate the average of values in a range that meet criteria you specify.
- The syntax of the AVERAGEIF function is **AVERAGEIF(range, criteria [average_range])** where
 - **range** is the range of cells you want to filter before calculating the average
 - **criteria** is the condition used to filter the range
 - **average_range** is the range of cells to average.
- The average_range is optional; if you omit it, Excel will average the values specified in the range argument.



SUMMARIZING DATA CONDITIONALLY

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- **Using the COUNTIFS, SUMIFS, and AVERAGEIFS Functions:**
 - The COUNTIFS, SUMIFS, and AVERAGEIFS functions are similar to the COUNTIF, SUMIF, and AVERAGEIF functions except the latter functions enable you to specify only one condition to summarize the data, whereas the former functions enable you to summarize the data using several conditions.
- The **COUNTIFS function** counts the number of cells within a range that meet multiple criteria.
- Its syntax is **COUNTIFS(criteria_range1,criteria1[,criteria_range2,criteria2,...])** where
- criteria_range1, criteria_range2, and up represent up to 127 ranges (columns of data) in which to evaluate the associated criteria
- criteria1, criteria2, and up represent 127 criteria in the form of a number, an expression, a cell reference, or text that define which cells will be counted. Each cell in a range is counted only if all of the corresponding criteria specified in the COUNTIFS function are true.

SUMMARIZING DATA CONDITIONALLY

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- The **SUMIFS** and **AVERAGEIFS** functions have a slightly different syntax.
- The SUMIFS function adds values in a range that meet multiple criteria using the syntax **SUMIFS(sum_range, criteria_range1, criteria1 [,criteria_range2, criteria2,...])** where
 - **sum_range** is the range you want to add;
 - **criteria_range1, criteria_range2, and so on** represent up to 127 ranges (columns of data) in which to evaluate the associated criteria;
 - **criteria1, criteria2, and so on** up to 127 criteria in the form of a number, expression, cell reference, or text define which cells will be added.
- To calculate the total salary paid to full-time (FT) employees hired after 2012 who are living in Austin, you can use the following SUMIFS function to add the salaries
 - (Employee[Annual Salary])
 - of employees located in Austin (Employee[Location], "Austin")
 - who have a hire date on or later than 1/1/2012 (Employee[Hire Date], ">=1/1/2012") and
 - are full-time employees (Employee[Job Status], "FT"):
=SUMIFS(Employee[Annual Salary], Employee [Location], "Austin", Employee[Hire Date], ">=1/1/2012", Employee[Job Status], "FT")

SUMMARIZING DATA CONDITIONALLY

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- The **AVERAGEIFS function** calculates the average of values within a range of cells that meet multiple conditions.
- Its syntax is **AVERAGEIFS(average_range, criteria_range1, criteria1[,criteria_range2, criteria2,...])** where
 - **average_range** is the range to average
 - **criteria_range1, criteria_range2, and so on** represent up to 127 ranges in which to evaluate the associated criteria
 - **criteria1, criteria2, and so on** up to 127 criteria in the form of a number, an expression, a cell reference, or text define which cells will be averaged.
- To calculate the average salary paid to males (M) who have worked at Talent Tracs for more than five years, you can use the following AVERAGEIFS function to average the
 - salaries (Employee[Annual Salary])
 - of male employees (Employee[Sex],“M”)
 - having more than five years of service (Employee[Years Service],“>5”):
=AVERAGEIFS(Employee[Annual Salary],Employee[Sex],“M”, Employee[Years Service],“>5”)

SUMMARIZING DATA CONDITIONALLY

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



AVERAGEIFS function used to calculate the average salary for employees with 10 to 14 years of service not working from home

employees not working from home

14 years or less of service

10 years or more of service

average salary of employees with 10 to 14 years of service not working from home

The screenshot shows the Excel interface with the following data and formula:

Years' Service	Nbr Employees	Total Salary	Average Salary
0-4	57	\$ 3,868,395	\$ 67,867
5-9	26	\$ 1,517,799	\$ 58,377
10-14	10	\$ 742,059	\$ 74,206

The formula in cell E18 is: `=AVERAGEIFS(Employee[Annual Salary],Employee[Location],"<>Home",Employee[Years Service],">=10",Employee[Years Service],"<=14")`



EXCEL'S MATH FUNCTIONS

Function	Description
<code>ABS(<i>number</i>)</code>	Returns the absolute value of <i>number</i>
<code>CEILING(<i>number</i>,<i>significance</i>)</code>	Rounds <i>number</i> up to the nearest integer
<code>COMBIN(<i>number</i>,<i>number_chosen</i>)</code>	Returns the number of possible ways that <i>number</i> objects can be combined in groups of <i>number_chosen</i>
<code>EVEN(<i>number</i>)</code>	Rounds <i>number</i> up to the nearest even integer
<code>EXP(<i>number</i>)</code>	Returns <i>e</i> raised to the power of <i>number</i>
<code>FACT(<i>number</i>)</code>	Returns the factorial of <i>number</i>
<code>FLOOR(<i>number</i>,<i>significance</i>)</code>	Rounds <i>number</i> down to the nearest integer
<code>GCD(<i>number1</i>[,<i>number2</i>,...])</code>	Returns the greatest common divisor of the specified numbers
<code>INT(<i>number</i>)</code>	Rounds <i>number</i> down to the nearest integer
<code>LCM(<i>number1</i>[,<i>number2</i>,...])</code>	Returns the least common multiple of the specified numbers
<code>LN(<i>number</i>)</code>	Returns the natural logarithm of <i>number</i>
<code>LOG(<i>number</i>[,<i>base</i>])</code>	Returns the logarithm of <i>number</i> in the specified <i>base</i>
<code>LOG10(<i>number</i>)</code>	Returns the base-10 logarithm of <i>number</i>
<code>MDETERM(<i>array</i>)</code>	Returns the matrix determinant of <i>array</i>
<code>MINVERSE(<i>array</i>)</code>	Returns the matrix inverse of <i>array</i>



EXCEL'S MATH FUNCTIONS

MMULT(<i>array1</i> , <i>array2</i>)	Returns the matrix product of <i>array1</i> and <i>array2</i>
MOD(<i>number</i> , <i>divisor</i>)	Returns the remainder of <i>number</i> after dividing by <i>divisor</i>
MROUND(<i>number</i> , <i>multiple</i>)	Rounds <i>number</i> to the desired <i>multiple</i>
MULTINOMIAL(<i>number1</i> [, <i>number2</i>])	Returns the multinomial of the specified numbers
ODD(<i>number</i>)	Rounds <i>number</i> up to the nearest odd integer
PI()	Returns the value pi
POWER(<i>number</i> , <i>power</i>)	Raises <i>number</i> to the specified power
PRODUCT(<i>number1</i> [, <i>number2</i> ,...])	Multiplies the specified numbers
QUOTIENT(<i>numerator</i> , <i>denominator</i>)	Returns the integer portion of the result obtained by dividing <i>numerator</i> by <i>denominator</i> . In other words, the remainder is discarded from the result.
RAND()	Returns a random number between 0 and 1
RANDBETWEEN(<i>bottom</i> , <i>top</i>)	Returns a random number between <i>bottom</i> and <i>top</i>
ROMAN(<i>number</i> [, <i>form</i>])	Converts the Arabic <i>number</i> to its Roman numeral equivalent (as text)
ROUND(<i>number</i> , <i>num_digits</i>)	Rounds <i>number</i> to a specified number of digits
ROUNDDOWN(<i>number</i> , <i>num_digits</i>)	Rounds <i>number</i> down, toward 0
ROUNDUP(<i>number</i> , <i>num_digits</i>)	Rounds <i>number</i> up, away from 0



EXCEL'S MATH FUNCTIONS

Function	Description
<code>SERIESSUM(<i>x</i>,<i>n</i>,<i>m</i>,<i>coefficients</i>)</code>	Returns the sum of a power series
<code>SIGN(<i>number</i>)</code>	Returns the sign of <i>number</i> (1 = positive, 0 = zero, -1 = negative)
<code>SQRT(<i>number</i>)</code>	Returns the positive square root of <i>number</i>
<code>SQRTPI(<i>number</i>)</code>	Returns the positive square root of the result of the expression <i>number</i> * Pi
<code>SUBTOTAL(<i>function_num</i>,<i>ref1</i>[,<i>ref2</i>,...])</code>	Returns a subtotal from a list
<code>SUM(<i>number1</i>[,<i>number2</i>,...])</code>	Adds the arguments
<code>SUMIF(<i>range</i>,<i>criteria</i>[,<i>sum_range</i>])</code>	Adds only those cells in <i>range</i> that meet the <i>criteria</i>
<code>SUMPRODUCT(<i>array1</i>,<i>array2</i>[,<i>array3</i>,...])</code>	Multiplies the corresponding elements in the specified arrays and then sums the resulting products
<code>SUMSQ(<i>number1</i>[,<i>number2</i>,...])</code>	Returns the sum of the squares of the arguments
<code>SUMX2MY2(<i>array_x</i>,<i>array_y</i>)</code>	Squares the elements in the specified arrays and then sums the differences between the corresponding squares
<code>SUMX2PY2(<i>array_x</i>,<i>array_y</i>)</code>	Squares the elements in the specified arrays and then sums the corresponding squares
<code>SUMXMY2(<i>array_x</i>,<i>array_y</i>)</code>	Squares the differences between the corresponding elements in the specified arrays and then sums the squares
<code>TRUNC(<i>number</i>[,<i>num_digits</i>])</code>	Truncates <i>number</i> to an integer

EXCEL'S STATISTICAL FUNCTIONS

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



Function	Description
<code>AVERAGE (number1[, number2, ...])</code>	Returns the average
<code>AVERAGEIF (range[, criteria])</code>	Returns the average for those cells in range that satisfy the criteria
<code>AVERAGEIFS (range[, criteria1, ...])</code>	Returns the average for those cells in range that satisfy multiple criteria
<code>CORREL (array1, array2)</code>	Returns the correlation coefficient
<code>COUNT (value1[, value2, ...])</code>	Counts the numbers in the argument list
<code>COUNTA (value1[, value2, ...])</code>	Counts the values in the argument list
<code>COVARIANCE.P (array1, array2)</code>	Returns the population covariance, which is the average of the products of deviations for each data point pair
<code>COVARIANCE.S (array1, array2)</code>	Returns the sample covariance
<code>COVAR (array1, array2)</code>	The legacy version of the covariance calculation; use this function if you need to maintain compatibility with Excel 2007 and earlier
<code>FORECAST (x, known_y's, known_x's)</code>	Returns a forecast value for x based on a linear regression of the arrays <i>known_y's</i> and <i>known_x's</i>



EXCEL'S STATISTICAL FUNCTIONS

<code>FREQUENCY(<i>data_array</i>,<i>bins_array</i>)</code>	Returns a frequency distribution
<code>FTEST(<i>array1</i>, <i>array2</i>)</code>	Returns an F-test result, the one-tailed probability that the variances in the two sets aren't significantly different
<code>GROWTH(<i>known_y's</i>[,<i>known_x's</i>] <i>new_x's</i>,<i>const</i>)</code>	Returns values along an exponential trend
<code>INTERCEPT(<i>known_y's</i>,<i>known_x's</i>)</code>	Returns the y-intercept of the linear regression trendline generated by the <i>known_y's</i> and <i>known_x's</i>
<code>KURT(<i>number1</i>[,<i>number2</i>,...])</code>	Returns the kurtosis of a frequency distribution
<code>LARGE(<i>array</i>,<i>k</i>)</code>	Returns the <i>k</i> th largest value in <i>array</i>
<code>LINEST(<i>known_y's</i>[,<i>known_x's</i>, <i>const</i>,<i>stats</i>])</code>	Uses the least squares method to calculate a straight-line regression fit through the <i>known_y's</i> and <i>known_x's</i>
<code>LOGEST(<i>known_y's</i>[,<i>known_x's</i>, <i>const</i>,<i>stats</i>])</code>	Uses the least squares method to calculate an exponential regression fit through the <i>known_y's</i> and <i>known_x's</i>
<code>MAX(<i>number1</i>[,<i>number2</i>,...])</code>	Returns the maximum value
<code>MEDIAN(<i>number1</i>[,<i>number2</i>,...])</code>	Returns the median value
<code>MIN(<i>number1</i>[,<i>number2</i>,...])</code>	Returns the minimum value
<code>MODE.MULT(<i>number1</i>[,<i>number2</i>,...])</code>	Returns an array of the most common values
<code>MODE.SNGL(<i>number1</i>[,<i>number2</i>,...])</code>	Returns the most common value
<code>MODE(<i>number1</i>[,<i>number2</i>,...])</code>	The legacy version of the mode calculation; use this function if you need to maintain compatibility with Excel 2007 and earlier



EXCEL'S STATISTICAL FUNCTIONS

Function	Description
<code>PERCENTILE.EXC(array, k)</code>	Returns the <i>k</i> th percentile of the values in <i>array</i> , where <i>k</i> is between 0 and 1, exclusive
<code>PERCENTILE.INC(array, k)</code>	Returns the <i>k</i> th percentile of the values in <i>array</i> , where <i>k</i> is between 0 and 1, inclusive
<code>PERCENTILE(array, k)</code>	The legacy version of the percentile calculation; use this function if you need to maintain compatibility with Excel 2007 and earlier
<code>RANK.AVG(number, ref[, order])</code>	Returns the rank of a number in a list, or the average rank if more than one value has the same rank
<code>RANK.EQ(number, ref[, order])</code>	Returns the rank of a number in a list, or the first rank if more than one value has the same rank
<code>RANK(number, ref[, order])</code>	The legacy version of the rank calculation; use this function if you need to maintain compatibility with Excel 2007 and earlier
<code>RSQ(known_y's, known_x's)</code>	Returns the coefficient of determination that indicates how much of the variance in the <i>known_y's</i> is due to the <i>known_x's</i>
<code>SKEW(number1[, number2, ...])</code>	Returns the skewness of a frequency distribution
<code>SLOPE(known_y's, known_x's)</code>	Returns the slope of the linear regression trend generated by the <i>known_y's</i> and <i>known_x's</i>
<code>SMALL(array, k)</code>	Returns the <i>k</i> th smallest value in <i>array</i>

EXCEL'S STATISTICAL FUNCTIONS

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



<code>STDEV.P(number1[,number2,...])</code>	Returns the standard deviation based on an entire population
<code>STDEV.S(number1[,number2,...])</code>	Returns the standard deviation based on a sample
<code>STDEV(number1[,number2,...])</code>	The legacy version of the standard deviation calculation; use this function if you need to maintain compatibility with Excel 2007 and earlier
<code>TREND(known_y's[,known_x's,new_x's,const])</code>	Returns values along a linear trend
<code>TTEST(array1,array2,tails,type)</code>	Returns the probability associated with a student's t-Test
<code>VAR.P(number1[,number2,...])</code>	Returns the variance based on an entire population
<code>VAR.S(number1[,number2,...])</code>	Returns the variance based on a sample
<code>VAR(number1[,number2,...])</code>	The legacy version of the variance calculation; use this function if you need to maintain compatibility with Excel 2007 and earlier
<code>ZTEST(array,x[,sigma])</code>	Returns the P-value of a two-sample z-test for means with known variances

CALCULATING MEASURES OF CENTRAL TENDENCY

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- **AVERAGE Function:**

- The mean is what you probably think of when someone uses the term average. This occurs because the average is the arithmetic mean of a set of numbers.
- In Excel, you calculate the mean using the AVERAGE() function:
AVERAGE(number1[,number2,...])

- **MEDIAN Function:**

- The median is the value in a data set that falls in the middle when all the values are sorted in numeric order. In other words, 50 percent of the values fall below the median and 50 per- cent fall above it. The median is useful in data sets that have one or two extreme values that can throw off the mean result because the median isn't affected by extremes.
- You calculate the median using the MEDIAN() function:
MEDIAN(number1[,number2,...])

CALCULATING MEASURES OF CENTRAL TENDENCY

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- **MODE Function:**

- The mode is the value in a data set that occurs most frequently. The mode is most useful when you're dealing with data that doesn't lend itself to being either added (necessary for calculating the mean) or sorted (necessary for calculating the median). For example, you might be tabulating the result of a poll that included a question about the respondent's favorite color. The mean and median don't make sense with such a question, but the mode will tell you which color was chosen the most.
- You calculate the mode using one of the following functions:
 - `MODE.MULT(number1[,number2,...])`
 - `MODE.SNGL(number1[,number2,...])`
 - `MODE(number1[,number2,...])`
- The `MODE.SNGL()` function returns the most common value in the list, so it's the function you'll use most often in Excel 2010.
- If your list has multiple common values, use `MODE. MULT()` to return those values as an array.
- If you need to maintain compatibility with earlier versions of Excel, use the `MODE()` function.

CALCULATING MEASURES OF CENTRAL TENDENCY

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- **MAX and MIN Functions:**

- If you want to know the largest value in a data set, use the MAX() function:
MAX(number1[,number2,...])
- To get the smallest value in a data set, use the MIN() function:
MIN(number1[,number2,...])
- If you need to determine the maximum or minimum over a range or array that includes text values or logical values, use the MAXA or MINA functions instead. These functions ignore text values and treat logical values as either 1 (for TRUE) or 0 (for FALSE).

- **LARGE and SMALL Functions:**

- Instead of knowing just the largest value, you might need to know the kth largest value, where k is some integer. You can calculate this using Excel's LARGE() function: **LARGE(array, k)**
- Similarly, instead of knowing just the smallest value, you might need to know the kth smallest value, where k is some integer. You can determine this value using the SMALL() function: **SMALL(array, k)**

CALCULATING MEASURES OF CENTRAL TENDENCY

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- **Performing Calculations on the Top k Values :**
 - Sometimes you might need to sum only the top 3 values in a data set or take the average of the top 10 values. You can do these calculations by combining the LARGE() function and the appropriate arithmetic function such as SUM() in an array formula. Here's the general formula: **`{=FUNCTION(LARGE(range, {1,2,3,...,k}))}`**
- **Performing Calculations on the Bottom k Values**
 - You can probably figure out that performing calculations on the smallest k values is similar. In fact, the only difference is that you substitute the SMALL() function for LARGE(): **`{=FUNCTION(SMALL(range, {1,2,3,...,k}))}`**
 - For example, the following array formula sums the smallest three values in the database: **`{=SUM(SMALL(D3:D22,{ 1,2,3}))}`**

CALCULATING MEASURES OF VARIATION

- Descriptive statistics such as the mean, median, and mode fall under what statisticians call measures of central tendency, which are sometimes referred to as measures of location. These numbers are designed to give you some idea of what constitutes a “typical” value in the data set.
- This is in contrast to the so-called measures of variation, which are sometimes referred to as measures of dispersion. These variations are designed to give you some idea of how the values in the data set vary with respect to one another. For example, a data set in which all the values are the same will have no variability. In contrast, a data set with wildly different values will have high variability.
- **Calculating the Range:**
 - The simplest measure of variability is the range, also sometimes called the spread, which is defined as the difference between a data set’s maximum and minimum values. Excel doesn’t have a function that calculates the range directly. Instead, you first apply the MAX() and MIN() functions to the data set. Then, when you have these extreme values, you calculate the range by subtracting the minimum from the maximum. For example, =MAX(D3:D22) - MIN(D3:D22).



CALCULATING MEASURES OF VARIATION

- **Calculating the Variance:**
 - When computing the variability of a set of values, one straightforward approach is to calculate how much each value deviates from the mean. You could then add those differences and divide by the number of values in the sample to get what might be called the average difference. However, the problem is that, by definition of the arithmetic mean, adding the differences, some of which are positive and some are negative, gives the result 0. To get around this, statisticians use the square of each deviation from the mean, which always results in a positive number. They sum these squares and divide by the number of values, and the result is the called the variance.
 - **Excel calculates the variance using the VAR.P(), VAR.S(), and VAR() functions:**
 - VAR.P(number1[,number2,...])
 - VAR.S(number1[,number2,...])
 - VAR(number1[,number2,...])
 - You use the VAR.P() function if your data set represents the entire population such as in the product defects case, and you use the VAR.S() function if your data set represents only a sample from the entire population. If you need to maintain compatibility with earlier versions of Excel, use the VAR() function (which assumes your data represents a sample from the entire population).



CALCULATING MEASURES OF VARIATION

- **Calculating the Standard Deviation:**
 - The standard deviation is defined as the square root of the variance. You can calculate the standard deviation by taking the square root of the VAR() result, but Excel offers a more direct route:
 - **STDEV.P(number1[,number2,...])**
 - **STDEV.S(number1[,number2,...])**
 - **STDEV(number1[,number2,...])**
 - You use the STDEV.P() function if your data set represents the entire population
 - You use the STDEV.S() function if your data set represents only a sample from the entire population.
 - If you want to maintain compatibility with versions of Excel prior to 2010, use the STDEV() function (which assumes your data represents a sample from the entire population).
- If you need to determine the standard deviation over a range or array that includes text values or logical values, use the STDEVPA() or STDEVA() functions instead. These functions ignore text values and treat logical values as either 1 (for TRUE) or 0 (for FALSE).

USING THE ANALYSIS TOOLPAK STATISTICAL TOOLS

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- When you load the Analysis ToolPak, the add-in inserts a new Data Analysis button in the Data tab on the Ribbon. Click this button to display the Data Analysis dialog box. This dialog box gives you access to 19 statistical tools. Here's a summary of what each statistical tool can do for your data:
- **Anova: Single Factor**—A simple analysis of variance, also known as a single factor analysis of variance. An analysis of variance (anova) tests the hypothesis that the means from several samples are equal.
- **Anova: Two-Factor with Replication**—An extension of the single-factor anova to include more than one sample for each group of data.
- **Anova: Two-Factor Without Replication**—A two-factor anova that doesn't include more than one sampling per group.
- **Correlation**—Returns the correlation coefficient: a measure of the relationship between two sets of data. This is also available via the following worksheet function: CORREL(array1, array2).
- **Covariance**—Returns the average of the products of deviations for each data point pair. Covariance is a measure of the relationship between two sets of data. This is also available via the following worksheet functions: COVARIANCE.P(array1, array2), COVARIANCE.S(array1, array2), COVAR(array1, array2).

USING THE ANALYSIS TOOLPAK STATISTICAL TOOLS

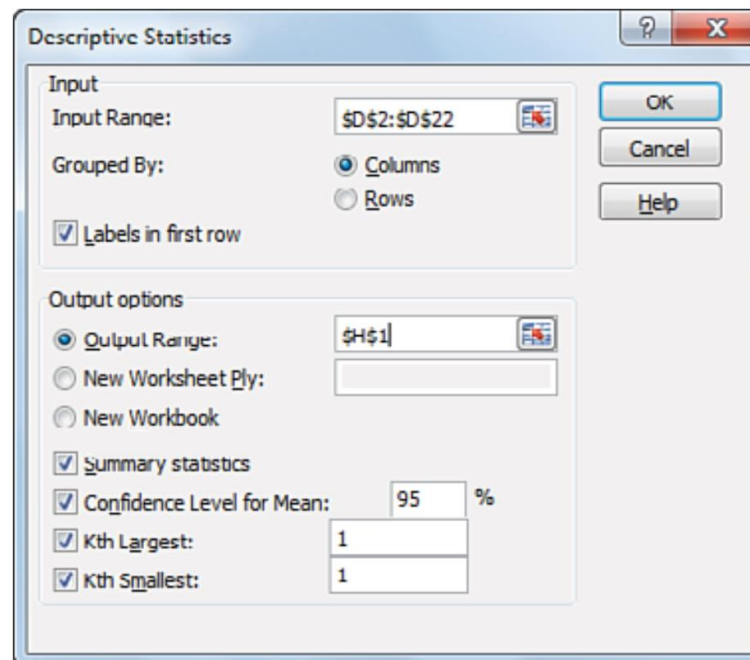
- **Descriptive Statistics**—Generates a report showing various statistics such as median, mode, and standard deviation for a set of data.
- **Exponential Smoothing**—Returns a predicted value based on the forecast for the previous period, adjusted for the error in that period.
- **F-Test Two-Sample for Variances**—Performs a two-sample F-test to compare two population variances. This tool returns the one-tailed probability that the variances in the two sets aren't significantly different. This is also available via the following work- sheet functions: F.TEST(array1, array2), FTEST(array1, array2).
- **Fourier Analysis**—Performs a Fast Fourier Transform. You use Fourier Analysis to solve problems in linear systems and to analyze periodic data.
- **Histogram**—Calculates individual and cumulative frequencies for a range of data and a set of data bins. The FREQUENCY() function is a simplified version of the Histogram tool.
- **Moving Average**—Smooths a data series by averaging the series values over a specified number of preceding periods.
- **Random Number Generation**—Fills a range with independent random numbers.
- **Rank and Percentile**—Creates a table containing the ordinal and percentage rank of each value in a set. These are also available via the following worksheet functions: RANK.AVG(number, ref, [order]), RANK.EQ(number, ref, [order]), RANK(number, ref, [order]), PERCENTILE.EXC(array, k), PERCENTILE.INC(array, k), PERCENTILE(array, k).

USING THE ANALYSIS TOOLPAK STATISTICAL TOOLS

- **Regression**—Performs a linear regression analysis that fits a line through a set of values using the least squares method.
- **Sampling**—Creates a sample from a population by treating the input range as a population.
- **t-Test: Paired Two-Sample for Means**—Performs a paired two-sample student's t-Test to determine whether a sample's means are distinct. This is also available via the following worksheet function (set type equal to 1): T.TEST(array1, array2, tails, type) TTEST(array1, array2, tails, type).
- **t-Test: Two-Sample Assuming Equal Variances**—Performs a paired two-sample student's t-Test, assuming that the variances of both data sets are equal. You can also use the TTEST() worksheet function with the type argument set to 2.
- **t-Test: Two-Sample Assuming Unequal Variances**—Performs a paired two-sample student's t-Test, assuming that the variances of both data sets are unequal. You can also use the TTEST() worksheet function with the type argument set to 3.
- **z-Test: Two-Sample for Means**—Performs a two-sample z-Test for means with known variances. This is also available via the following worksheet function: Z.TEST(array, x, [sigma]) ZTEST(array, x, [sigma]).

USING THE DESCRIPTIVE STATISTICS TOOL

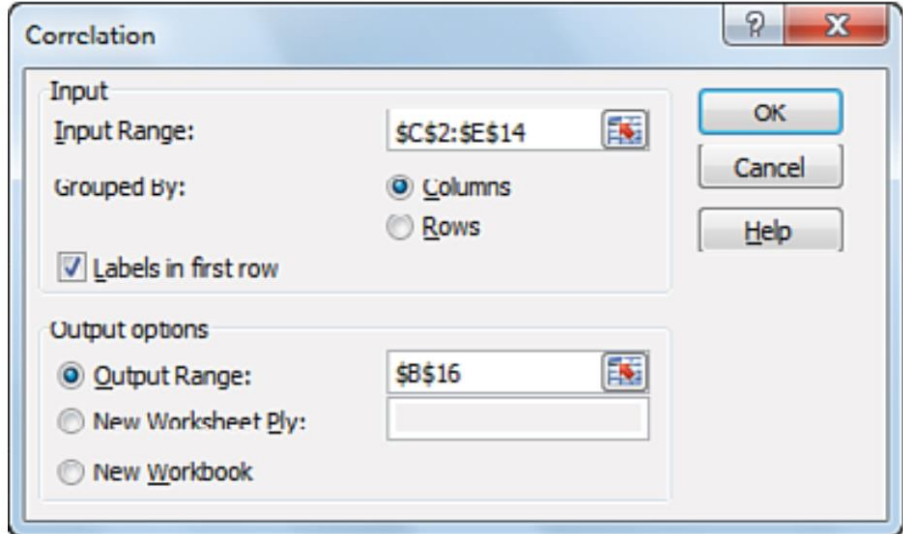
- This tool automatically calculates **16 of the most common statistical functions** and lays them all out in a table. Follow these steps to use this tool:
 - Select the range that includes the data you want to analyze including the row and column headings, if any.
 - Select Data, Data Analysis to display the Data Analysis dialog box.
 - Click the Descriptive Statistics option and click OK. Excel displays the Descriptive Statistics dialog box.



USING THE DESCRIPTIVE STATISTICS TOOL

- Use the Output Options group to select a location for the output. For each set of data included in the input range, Excel creates a table that is two columns wide and up to 18 rows high.
- Choose the statistics you want to include in the output:
 - **Summary Statistics**—Activate this option to include statistics such as the mean, median, mode, and standard deviation.
 - **Confidence Level for Mean**—Activate this option if your data set is a sample of a larger population and you want Excel to calculate the confidence interval for the population mean. A confidence level of 95 percent means that you can be 95 percent confident that the population mean will fall within the confidence interval. For example, if the sample mean is 10 and Excel calculates a confidence interval of 1.5, you can be 95 percent sure that the population mean will fall between 8.5 and 12.5.
 - **Kth Largest**—Activate this option to add a row to the output that specifies the kth largest value in the sample. The default value for k is 1, which is the largest value. However, if you want to see any other number, enter a value for k in the text box.
 - **Kth Smallest**—Activate this option to include the sample's kth smallest value in the output. Again, if you want k to be something other than 1, which is the smallest value, enter a number in the text box.
- Click OK. Excel calculates the various statistics and displays the output table.

DETERMINING THE CORRELATION BETWEEN DATA

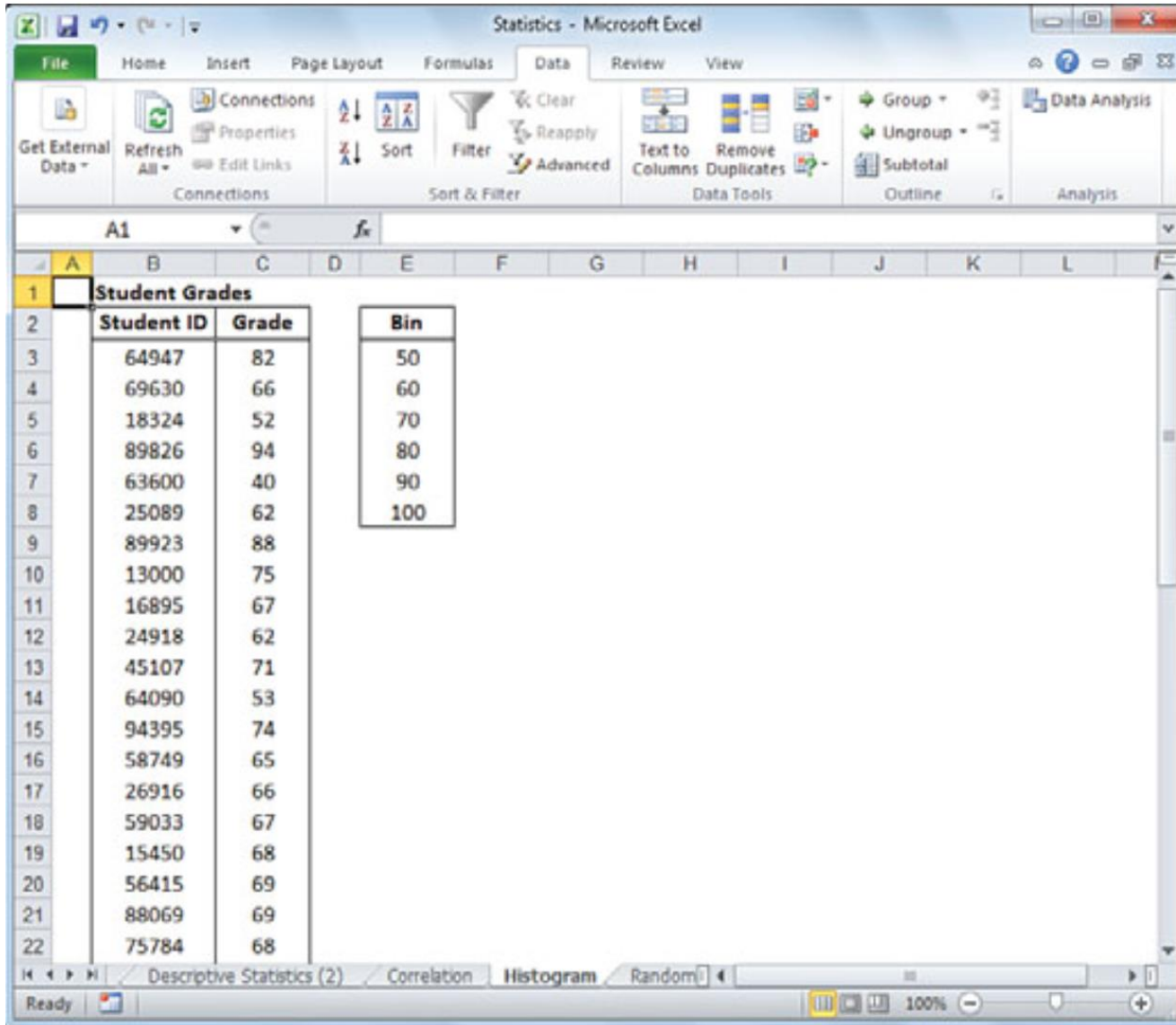
- **To calculate the correlation between data sets, follow these steps:**
 - Select Data, Data Analysis to display the Data Analysis dialog box.
 - Click the Correlation tool and then click OK. The Correlation dialog box appears.
 - Use the Input Range box to select the data range you want to analyze, including the row or column headings.
 - If you included labels in your range, select the Labels in First Row check box. If your data is arranged in rows, this check box reads Labels in First Column.
- 
- Excel displays the correlation coefficients in a table, so use the Output Range box to enter a reference to the upper-left corner of the table. If you're comparing two sets of data, the output range is three columns wide by three rows high. You also can select a different sheet or workbook.
 - Click OK. Excel calculates the correlation and displays the table.

WORKING WITH HISTOGRAMS

- The **Analysis ToolPak's Histogram tool** calculates the frequency distribution of a range of data. It also calculates cumulative frequencies for your data and produces a bar chart that shows the distribution graphically.
- Before you use the Histogram tool, you need to **decide which groupings, also known as bins, you want Excel to use for the output**. These bins are numeric ranges, and the Histogram tool works by counting the number of observations that fall into each bin. You enter the bins as a range of numbers, where each number defines a boundary of the bin.
- For example, the following Figure shows a worksheet with two ranges. One is a list of student grades. The second range is the bin range. For each number in the bin range, Histogram counts the number of observations that are greater than or equal to the bin value, and less than (but not equal to) the next higher bin value. Therefore, the six bin values in the Figure correspond to the following ranges:

0	<=	Grade	<	50
50	<=	Grade	<	60
60	<=	Grade	<	70
70	<=	Grade	<	80
80	<=	Grade	<	90
90	<=	Grade	<	100

WORKING WITH HISTOGRAMS



Student Grades		
Student ID	Grade	
64947	82	
69630	66	
18324	52	
89826	94	
63600	40	
25089	62	
89923	88	
13000	75	
16895	67	
24918	62	
45107	71	
64090	53	
94395	74	
58749	65	
26916	66	
59033	67	
15450	68	
56415	69	
88069	69	
75784	68	

Bin
50
60
70
80
90
100

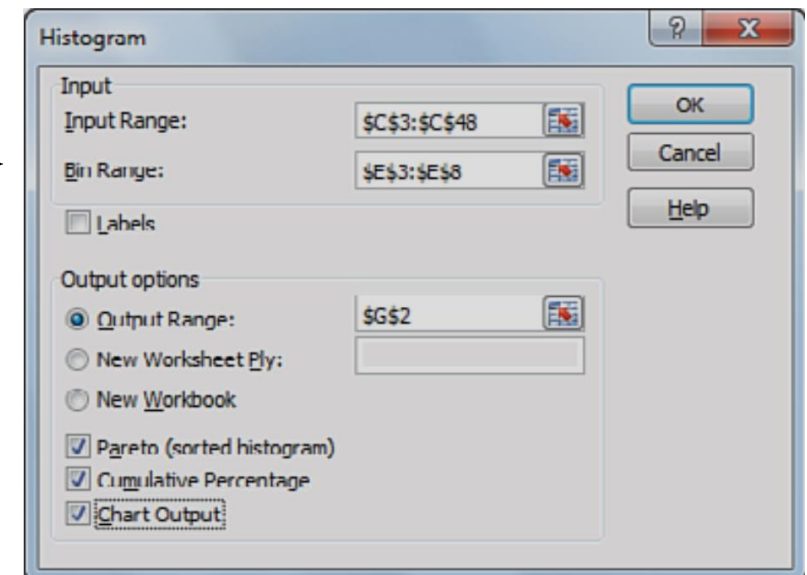
$0 \leq \text{Grade} < 50$
 $50 \leq \text{Grade} < 60$
 $60 \leq \text{Grade} < 70$
 $70 \leq \text{Grade} < 80$
 $80 \leq \text{Grade} < 90$
 $90 \leq \text{Grade} < 100$

Make sure that you enter your bin values in ascending order.

WORKING WITH HISTOGRAMS

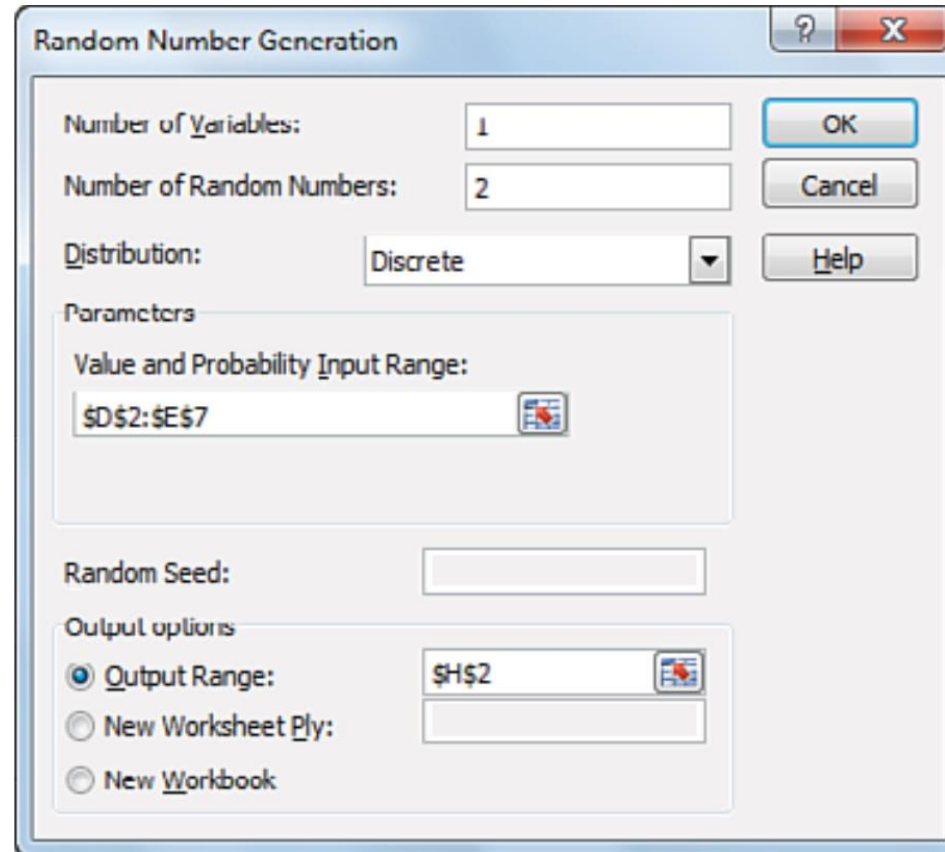


- **Follow these steps to use the Histogram tool:**
 - Select Data, Data Analysis to display the Data Analysis dialog box.
 - Click the Histogram option and then click OK. Excel displays the Histogram dialog box.
 - Use the Input Range and Bin Range text boxes to enter the ranges holding your data and bin values, respectively.
 - Use the Output Options group to select a location for the output. The output range will be one row taller than the bin range, and it could be up to six columns wide, depending on which of the following options you choose.
 - Select the other options you want to use for the frequency distribution:
 - **Pareto**—If you select this check box, Excel displays a second output range with the bins sorted in order of descending frequency. This is called a Pareto distribution.
 - **Cumulative Percentage**—If you activate this option, Excel adds a new column to the output that tracks the cumulative percentage for each bin.
 - **Chart Output**—If you activate this option, Excel automatically generates a chart for the frequency distribution.
 - Click OK. Excel displays the histogram data



USING THE RANDOM NUMBER GENERATION TOOL

- Unlike the RAND() function that generates real numbers only between 0 and 1, the Analysis ToolPak's Random Number Generation tool can produce numbers in any range and can generate different distributions, depending on the application.



The screenshot shows the 'Random Number Generation' dialog box. The 'Number of Variables' is set to 1, and the 'Number of Random Numbers' is set to 2. The 'Distribution' is set to 'Discrete'. The 'Parameters' section shows the 'Value and Probability Input Range' as '\$D\$2:\$E\$7'. The 'Random Seed' field is empty. The 'Output options' section has three radio buttons: 'Output Range' (selected), 'New Worksheet Ply', and 'New Workbook'. The 'Output Range' is set to '\$H\$2'.

Random Number Generation

Number of Variables: 1

Number of Random Numbers: 2

Distribution: Discrete

Parameters

Value and Probability Input Range: \$D\$2:\$E\$7

Random Seed:

Output options

☒ Output Range: \$H\$2

☐ New Worksheet Ply:

☐ New Workbook:

OK Cancel Help

USING THE RANDOM NUMBER GENERATION TOOL

- Unlike the RAND() function that generates real numbers only between 0 and 1, the Analysis ToolPak's Random Number Generation tool can produce numbers in any range and can generate different distributions, depending on the application.

Table 12.2 The Distributions Available with the Random Number Generation Tool

Distribution	Description
Uniform	Generates numbers with equal probability from the range of values you provide. Using the range 0 to 1 produces the same distribution as the RAND () function.
Normal	Produces numbers in a bell curve (normal) distribution based on the mean and standard deviation you enter. This is good for generating samples of things such as test scores and population heights.
Bernoulli	Generates a random series of 1s and 0s based on the probability of success on a single trial. A common example of a Bernoulli distribution is a coin toss in which the probability of success is 50 percent. In this case, as in all Bernoulli distributions, you need to assign either heads or tails to be 1 or 0.
Binomial	Generates random numbers characterized by the probability of success over a number of trials. For example, you could use this type of distribution to model the number of responses received for a direct-mail campaign. The probability of success will be the average or projected response rate, and the number of trials will be the number of mailings in the campaign.

USING THE RANDOM NUMBER GENERATION TOOL



Poisson	Generates random numbers based on the probability of a designated number of events occurring in a time frame. The distribution is governed by a value, <u>L</u> ambda, that represents the mean number of events known to occur over the time frame.
Patterned	Generates random numbers according to a pattern that is characterized by a lower and upper bound, a step value, and a repetition rate for each number and the entire sequence.
Discrete	Generates random numbers from a series of values and probabilities for these values in which the sum of the probabilities equals 1. You can use this distribution to simulate the rolling of dice where the values are 1 through 6, each with a probability of 1/6. This concept is demonstrated in the following example.

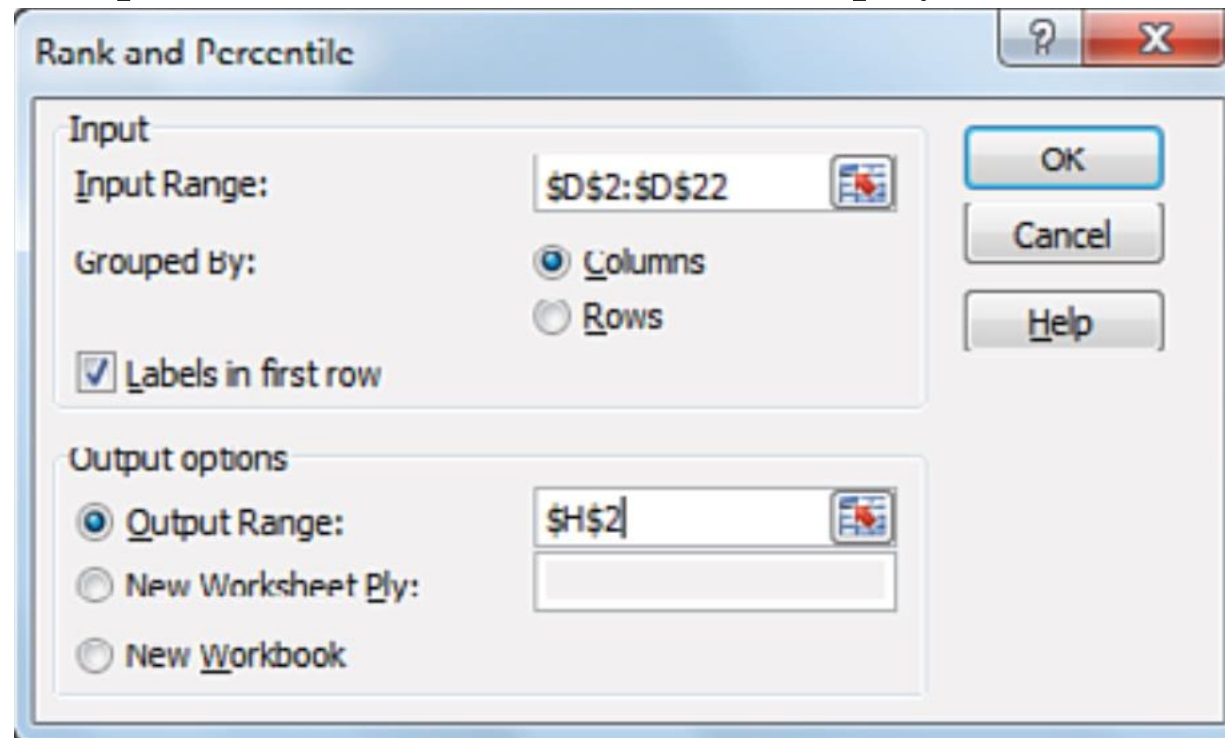
If you'll be using a Discrete distribution, be sure to enter the appropriate values and probabilities before starting the Random Number Generation tool.

USING THE RANDOM NUMBER GENERATION TOOL

- Complete the steps outlined in the following procedure **to use the Random Number Generation tool**.
 - Select Data, Data Analysis to display the Data Analysis dialog box.
 - Click the Random Number Generation option and then click OK. The Random Number Generation dialog box appears.
 - If you want to generate more than one set of random numbers, enter the number of sets (or variables) you need in the Number of Variables box. Excel enters each set in a separate column. If you leave this box blank, Excel uses the number of columns in the Output Range.
 - Use the Number of Random Numbers text box to enter how many random numbers you need. Excel enters each number in a separate row. If you leave this box blank, Excel fills the Output Range.
 - Use the Distribution drop-down list to click the distribution you want to use.
 - In the Parameters group, enter the parameters for the distribution you selected.
 - The Random Seed number is the value Excel uses to generate the random numbers. If you leave this box blank, Excel generates a different set each time. If you enter a value (which must be an integer between 1 and 32,767), you can reuse the value later to reproduce the same set of numbers.
 - Use the Output Options group to select a location for the output.
 - Click OK. Excel calculates the random numbers and displays them in the worksheet.

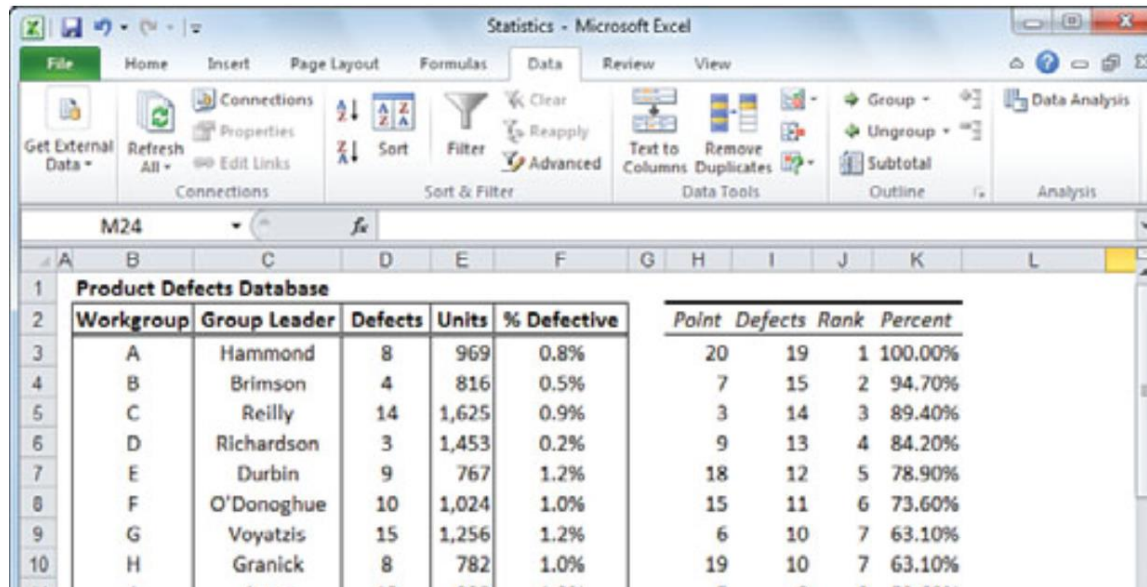
WORKING WITH RANK AND PERCENTILE

- If you need to **rank data**, use the Analysis ToolPak's Rank and Percentile tool. This command not only ranks your data from first to last, but it also calculates the **percentile**—the percentage of items in the sample that are at the same level or a lower level than a given value. Follow the steps in the following procedure to use the Rank and Percentile tool:
 - Select Data, Data Analysis to display the Data Analysis dialog box.
 - Click the Rank and Percentile option and then click OK. Excel displays the Rank and Percentile dialog box.



WORKING WITH RANK AND PERCENTILE

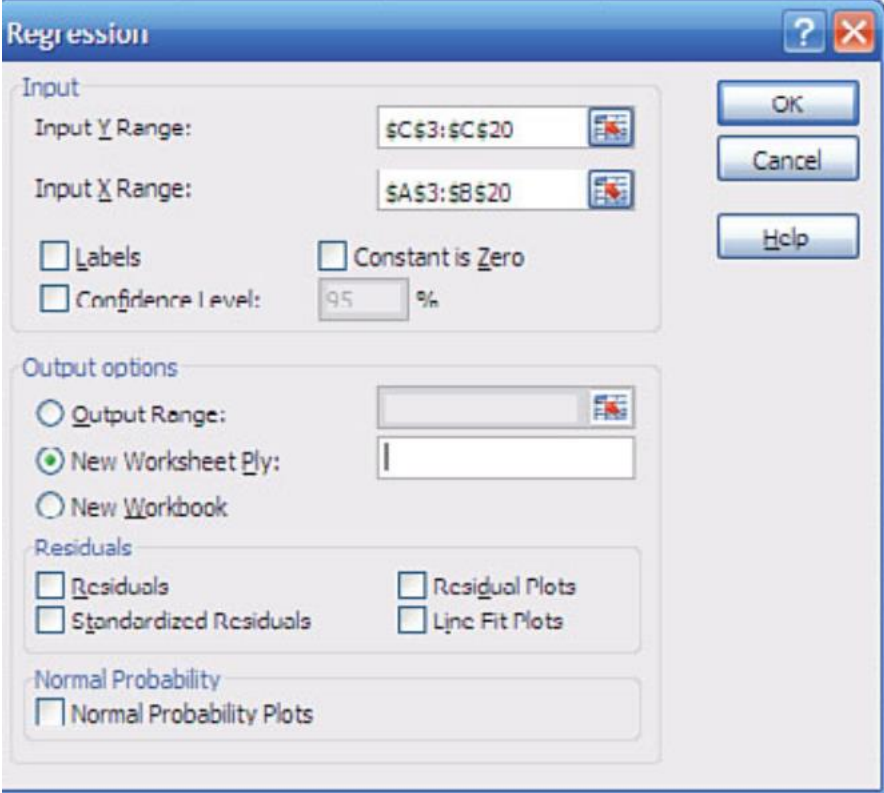
- Use the Input Range text box to enter a reference for the data you want to rank.
- Click the appropriate Grouped By option (Columns or Rows).
- If you included row or column labels in your selection, select the Labels in First Row check box. If your data is in rows, the check box will read Labels in First Column.
- Use the Output options group to select a location for the output. For each sample, Excel displays a table that is four columns wide and the same height as the number of values in the sample.
- Click OK. Excel calculates the results and displays them in a table.



Product Defects Database						Point Defects Rank Percent			
Workgroup	Group Leader	Defects	Units	% Defective		Point	Defects	Rank	Percent
A	Hammond	8	969	0.8%		20	19	1	100.00%
B	Brimson	4	816	0.5%		7	15	2	94.70%
C	Reilly	14	1,625	0.9%		3	14	3	89.40%
D	Richardson	3	1,453	0.2%		9	13	4	84.20%
E	Durbin	9	767	1.2%		18	12	5	78.90%
F	O'Donoghue	10	1,024	1.0%		15	11	6	73.60%
G	Voyatzis	15	1,256	1.2%		6	10	7	63.10%
H	Granick	8	782	1.0%		19	10	7	63.10%

USING EXCEL'S REGRESSION ADD-IN

- Click the Data tab on the Ribbon and then click Data Analysis in the Analysis group. In versions prior to Excel 2007, choose Tools, Data Analysis.
- Select Regression from the Analysis Tools list box.
- Click OK. The dialog box appears.
- With the flashing cursor in the Input Y Range edit box, select cells C3:C20 or type the address directly in the edit box.
- Click in the Input X Range edit box, and select cells A3:B20 or type the address.
- Make sure that the Confidence Level edit box contains 95 and that the New Worksheet Ply option button is selected.



The image shows the 'Regression' dialog box in Microsoft Excel. The 'Input' section has 'Input Y Range' set to '\$C\$3:\$C\$20' and 'Input X Range' set to '\$A\$3:\$B\$20'. The 'Confidence Level' is set to '95 %'. The 'Output options' section has 'New Worksheet Ply' selected. The 'Residuals' section has 'Residuals', 'Standardized Residuals', 'Residual Plots', and 'Line Fit Plots' all unchecked. The 'Normal Probability' section has 'Normal Probability Plots' unchecked. The 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons are on the right.

USING EXCEL'S REGRESSION ADD-IN

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



B5	f_x	0.806788499331942					
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	SUMMARY OUTPUT						
2							
3	<i>Regression Statistics</i>						
4	Multiple R	0.898214061					
5	R Square	0.806788499					
6	Adjusted R Square	0.781026966					
7	Standard Error	14339.43625					
8	Observations	18					
9							
10	<i>ANOVA</i>						
11		<i>df</i>	<i>SS</i>	<i>MS</i>	<i>F</i>	<i>Significance F</i>	
12	Regression	2	12878999876	6439499938	31.31756507	4.41822E-06	
13	Residual	15	3084291478	205619431.9			
14	Total	17	15963291354				
15							
16		<i>Coefficients</i>	<i>Standard Error</i>	<i>t Stat</i>	<i>P-value</i>	<i>Lower 95%</i>	<i>Upper 95%</i>
17	Intercept	36842.97148	13164.57703	2.798644529	0.013496585	8783.32251	64902.62046
18	Advertising budget	0.381775021	0.093574171	4.079918822	0.00098559	0.182326274	0.581223767
19	Sales price	-358.4634449	129.5278485	-2.767462358	0.014372093	-634.5456884	-82.38120147

ANALYSIS OF VARIANCE: ONE-WAY ANOVA

- When you're trying to determine whether the means in several sets of data that depend on one factor are significantly different, **one-way analysis of variance**, or ANOVA, is the correct tool to use. In analyzing the data, you can choose between two hypotheses:
 - **Null hypothesis**, which indicates that the means of all groups are identical.
 - **Alternative hypothesis**, which indicates that there is a statistically significant difference between the groups' means.
- To test these hypotheses in Microsoft Excel, you can use the **Anova: Single Factor option in the Data Analysis dialog box**.
 - If the **p-value** computed by Excel is small (usually less than or equal to 0.15), you can conclude that the alternative hypothesis is true (the means are significantly different).
 - If the **p-value** is greater than 0.15, the null hypothesis is true (the populations have identical means).

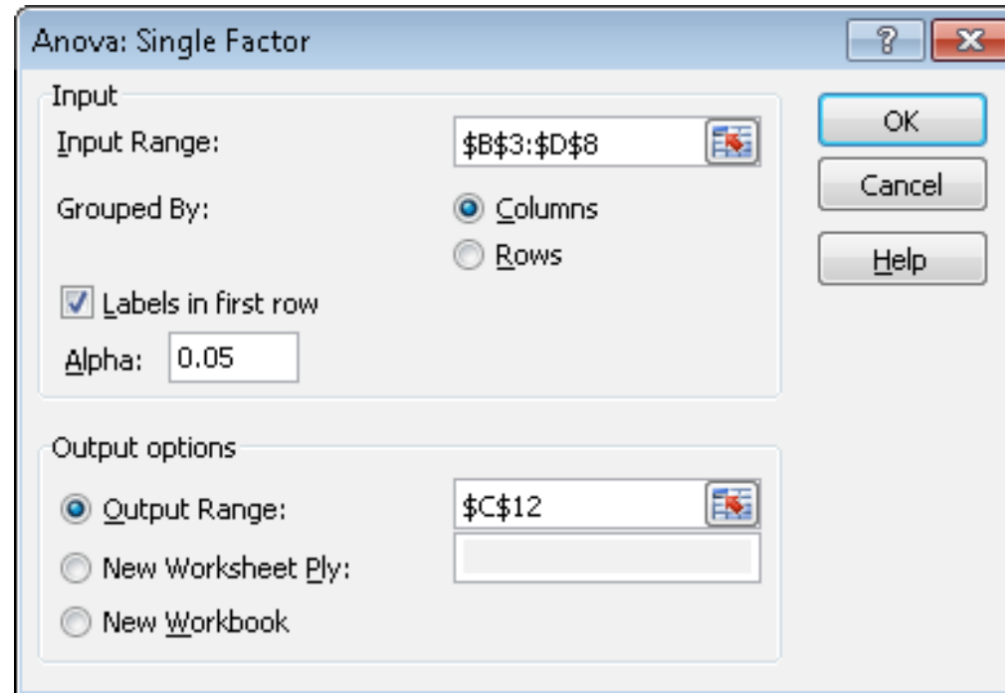
ANALYSIS OF VARIANCE: ONE-WAY ANOVA

- **Example:**
 - The owner of a company, which publishes computer books, wants to know whether the position of our books in the computer book section of bookstores influences sales. More specifically, does it really matter whether the books are placed in the front, back, or middle of the computer book section? Weekly sales (in hundreds) were monitored at 12 different stores. At five stores, the books were placed in the front; at four stores, in the back; and at three stores, in the middle. Resulting sales are contained in the following worksheet:

	A	B	C	D
1	One-Way ANOVA			
2				
3		Front	Back	Middle
4		7	12	10
5		10	13	11
6		8	15	12
7		9	16	
8		11		

ANALYSIS OF VARIANCE: ONE-WAY ANOVA

- You can assume that the 12 stores have similar sales patterns and are approximately the same size. This assumption allows you to use one-way ANOVA because you believe that at most one factor (the position of the display in the computer book section) is affecting sales. (If the stores were different sizes, you would need to analyze the data with two-way ANOVA).
- To analyze the data, on the Data tab, click Data Analysis, and then select Anova: Single Factor.
- The data for the input range, including labels, is in cells B3:D8.
- Select the Labels In First Row option because the first row of the input range contains labels.
- Select the Columns option because the data is organized in columns.
- Select C12 as the upper-left cell of the output range.
- The selected alpha value is not important. You can use the default value.
- After clicking OK, you obtain the results



ANALYSIS OF VARIANCE: ONE-WAY ANOVA

- In cells F16:F18, you see average sales depending on the location of the display.
- When the display is at the front of the computer book section, average sales are 900.
- When the display is at the back of the section, sales average 1,400.
- When the display is in the middle, sales average 1,100.
- Because the p-value of 0.003 (in cell H23) is less than 0.15, you can conclude that these means are significantly different.

	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
13							
14	SUMMARY						
15	Groups	Count	Sum	Average	Variance		
16	Front	5	45	9	2.5		
17	Back	4	56	14	3.333333		
18	Middle	3	33	11	1		
19							
20							
21	ANOVA						
22	Source of Variation	SS	df	MS	F	P-value	F crit
23	Between Groups	55.6666667	2	27.83333	11.38636	0.00343	4.25649
24	Within Groups	22	9	2.444444			
25							
26	Total	77.6666667	11				
27							
28	est std error	1.56347192					

ANALYSIS OF VARIANCE: ONE-WAY ANOVA

- **Question:**
 - If I am determining whether populations have significantly different means, why is the technique called analysis of variance?

- Suppose that the data in our book sales study is the data shown in the following worksheet:

	B	C	D
3	Front	Back	Middle
4	7	2	3
5	20	16	19
6	8	25	11
7	8	13	
8	2		

- If you run a one-way ANOVA on this data, you obtain the following results:

	E	F	G	H	I	J	K
12	Anova: Single Factor		Overall mean				
13			11.1666667				
14	SUMMARY						
15	Groups	Count	Sum	Average	Variance		
16	Front	5	45	9	44		
17	Back	4	56	14	90		
18	Middle	3	33	11	64		
19							
20							
21	ANOVA						
22	Source of Variation	SS	df	MS	F	P-value	F crit
23	Between Groups	55.66667	2	27.83333	0.436411	0.659334	4.25649
24	Within Groups	574	9	63.77778			
25							
26	Total	629.6667	11				

ANALYSIS OF VARIANCE: ONE-WAY ANOVA

- Note that the mean sales for each part of the store are exactly as before, yet the p-value of .66 indicates that you should accept the null hypothesis and conclude that the position of the display in the computer book section doesn't affect sales.
- The reason for this strange result is that in the second data set, you have much more **variation** in sales when the display is at each position in the computer book section. In the first data set, for example, the variation in sales when the display is at the front is between 700 and 1,100, whereas in the second data set, the variation in sales is between 200 and 2,000.
- The variation of sales within each store position is measured by the sum of the squares of data within a group. This measure is shown in cell D24 in the first data set and in cell F24 in the second. In the first data set, the sum of squares of data within groups is only 22, whereas in the second data set, the sum of squares within groups is 574! This large **variation** within the data points at each store position masks the variation between the groups (store positions) themselves and makes it impossible to conclude for the second data set that the difference between sales in different store positions is significant.

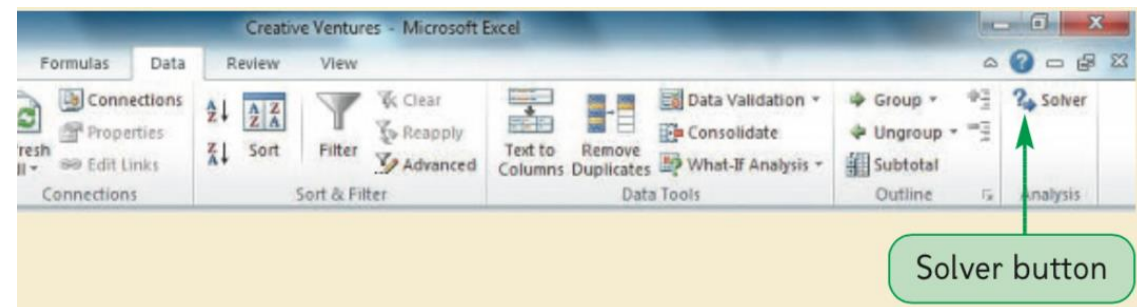
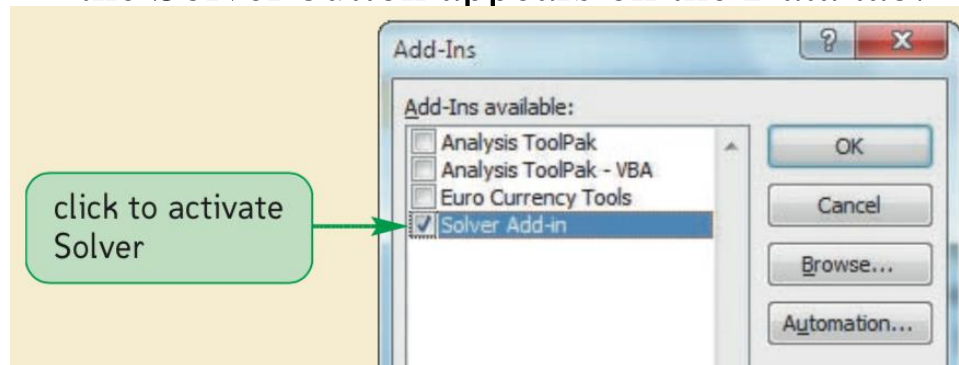


WHEN DO YOU USE SOLVER?

- Problems such as “What product mix will e profit?” or “What transportation routes will minimize shipping costs while maximizing demand?” traditionally have been solved by numerical methods such as linear programming and nonlinear programming. An entire mathematical field known as operations research has been developed to handle such problems, which are found in all kinds of disciplines. The drawback to linear and nonlinear programming is that solving even the simplest problem by hand is a complicated, arcane, and time-consuming business. In other words, it’s a perfect job to slough off on a computer.
- This is where Solver comes in. Solver incorporates many of the algorithms from operations research, but it keeps the sordid details in the background. All you do is fill out a dialog box or two, and Solver does the rest.

ACTIVATING SOLVER

- Solver is an **add-in**, a program that adds customized commands and features to Microsoft Office programs such as Excel. Because Solver is an added feature of Excel, it might not be activated in your version of Excel. Before running Solver, you might have **to activate it**:
 - Check whether Solver appears in the Analysis group on the Data tab. If it does, Solver is already active. If not, continue with the rest of these steps.
 - Click the **File** tab, and then click the **Options** button in the navigation bar.
 - Click Add-Ins in the left pane, click the arrow next to the Manage box, and then click **Excel Add-ins**.
 - Click the Go button to open the Add-Ins dialog box.
 - Click the Solver Add-in check box, and then click the OK button.
 - Follow the remaining prompts to install Solver, if it is not already installed.
- You'll check whether Solver is already active on your version of Excel by checking whether the Solver button appears on the Data tab.



SETTING UP SOLVER TO FIND A SOLUTION

- To use Solver, you must specify three items, or Solver parameters: **the objective cell, the variable (or changing) cells, and the constraints on the problem.**
 - The objective cell is a cell that you want to maximize, minimize, or change to a specific value. For example, the company's net income is your objective cell, whose value you want to maximize.
 - A variable cell is a cell that Excel changes to produce the desired result in the objective cell. For example, the adjustable cell is the sales price of each product item.
 - Finally, a constraint is a limit that is placed on the problem's solution. For example, it may be a physical limit on the number of items the company can produce in a given year (no matter how profitable it would be to produce extra items), so this would be a constraint that Solver would have to include when finding the maximum net income.
- **To set the Solver parameters:**
 - In the Analysis group on the Data tab, click the Solver button.
 - In the Set Objective box, specify the cell whose value you want to set to match a specific objective.
 - Click the Max, Min, or Value Of option buttons to maximize, minimize, or set the objective cell to a specified value, respectively.
 - In the By Changing Variable Cells input box, specify the changing cells.



SETTING UP SOLVER TO FIND A SOLUTION

- Next, you'll add constraints, or limits, for the solution. **Constraints** are important because they confine the solution within a reasonable set of limits that you define.
- Solver supports **six possible constraints**:
 - The \leq , \geq , and $=$ constraints are used when you want to set a cell's value to always be less than or equal to, greater than or equal to, or equal to a specified value.
 - You can also use an integer or int constraint, which forces a cell value to always be a whole number, and you can apply a binary or bin constraint that forces a cell value to always be either 0 or 1.
 - Finally, you can apply the dif or AllDifferent constraint, which forces all values within the selected cell range to have different integer values.
- **To Set Constraints on the Solver Solution:**
 - In the Solver Parameters dialog box, click the Add button.
 - Enter the cell reference of the cell or cells containing the constraint.
 - Specify the nature of the constraint (\leq , $=$, \geq , int, bin, or dif).
 - Enter the constraint value in the Constraint box.
 - Click the OK button to add the constraint and return to the Solver Parameters dialog box.
 - Repeat for each constraint you want to add.

SETTING UP SOLVER TO FIND A SOLUTION

Solver Parameters

Set Objective:

To: ☒ Max ☐ Min ☐ Value Of:

By Changing Variable Cells:

Subject to the Constraints:

Add

find the maximum value for cell C29 (net income)

cell whose value Solver will change to reach the objective

click to add constraints to the solution

Add Constraint

Cell Reference:

Constraint:

>=

OK Add Cancel

units produced must be 15,000 or greater

click to add another constraint

SETTING UP SOLVER TO FIND A SOLUTION

The screenshot shows the 'Solver Parameters' dialog box in Microsoft Excel. The 'Set Objective' field is set to '\$C\$29'. The 'To' options are 'Max' (selected), 'Min', and 'Value Of: 0'. The 'By Changing Variable Cells' field is set to '\$C\$8'. The 'Subject to the Constraints' list contains two constraints: '\$C\$12 <= 35000' and '\$C\$12 >= 15000'. The 'Add' button is highlighted. The 'Make Unconstrained Variables Non-Negative' checkbox is unchecked. The 'Select a Solving Method' dropdown is set to 'GRG Nonlinear'. The 'Solving Method' section provides instructions on selecting the appropriate engine. The 'Solve' button is highlighted.

units produced must be between 15,000 and 35,000 inclusive

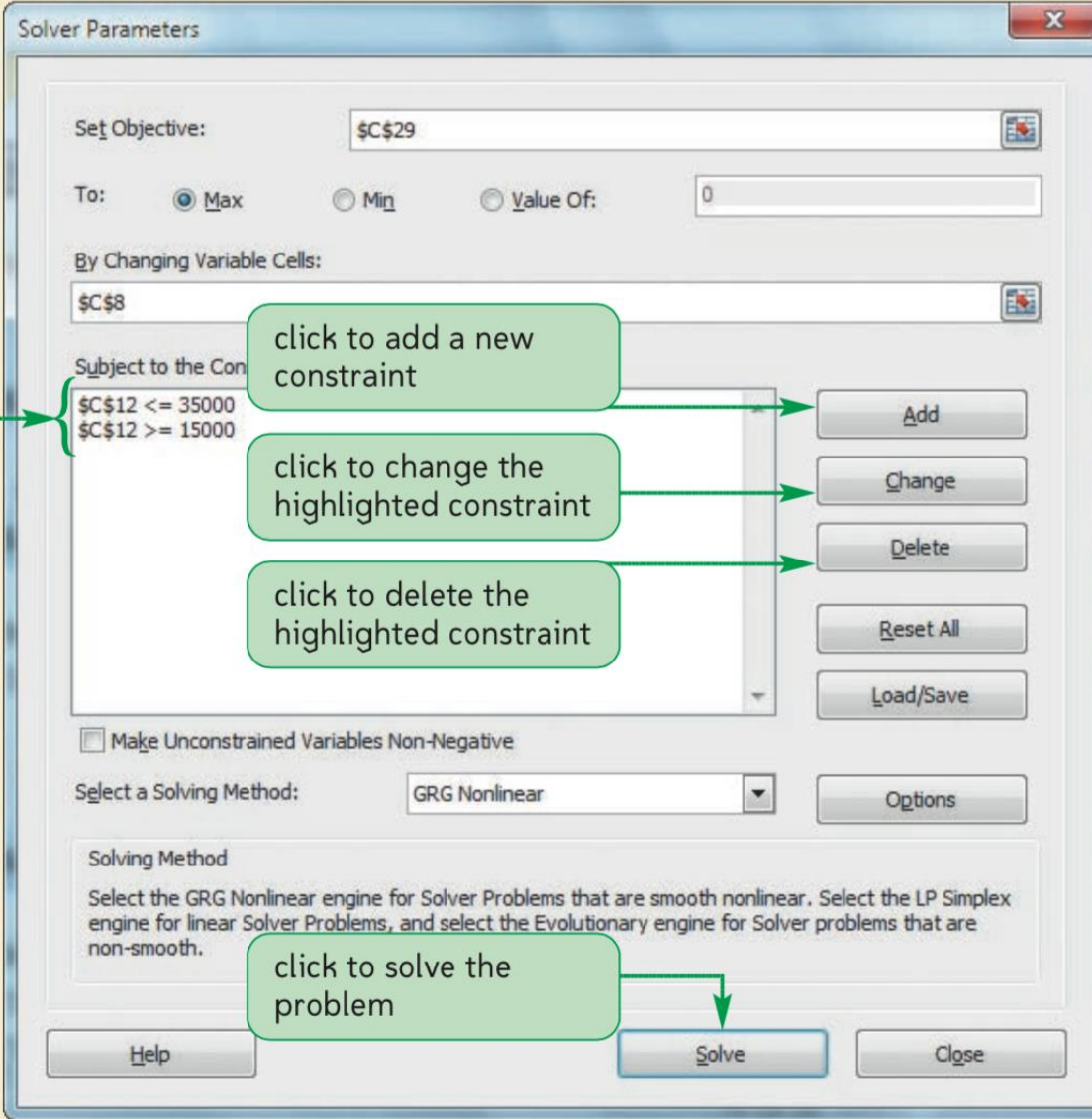
click to add a new constraint

click to change the highlighted constraint

click to delete the highlighted constraint

click to solve the problem

SETTING UP SOLVER TO FIND A SOLUTION



The screenshot shows the Solver Parameters dialog box with the following settings:

- Set Objective:** \$C\$29
- To:** ☒ Max ☐ Min ☐ Value Of: 0
- By Changing Variable Cells:** \$C\$8
- Subject to the Constraints:**
 - \$C\$12 <= 35000
 - \$C\$12 >= 15000
- ☐ Make Unconstrained Variables Non-Negative
- Select a Solving Method:** GRG Nonlinear
- Solving Method:** Select the GRG Nonlinear engine for Solver Problems that are smooth nonlinear. Select the LP Simplex engine for linear Solver Problems, and select the Evolutionary engine for Solver problems that are non-smooth.

Annotations with arrows pointing to specific elements:

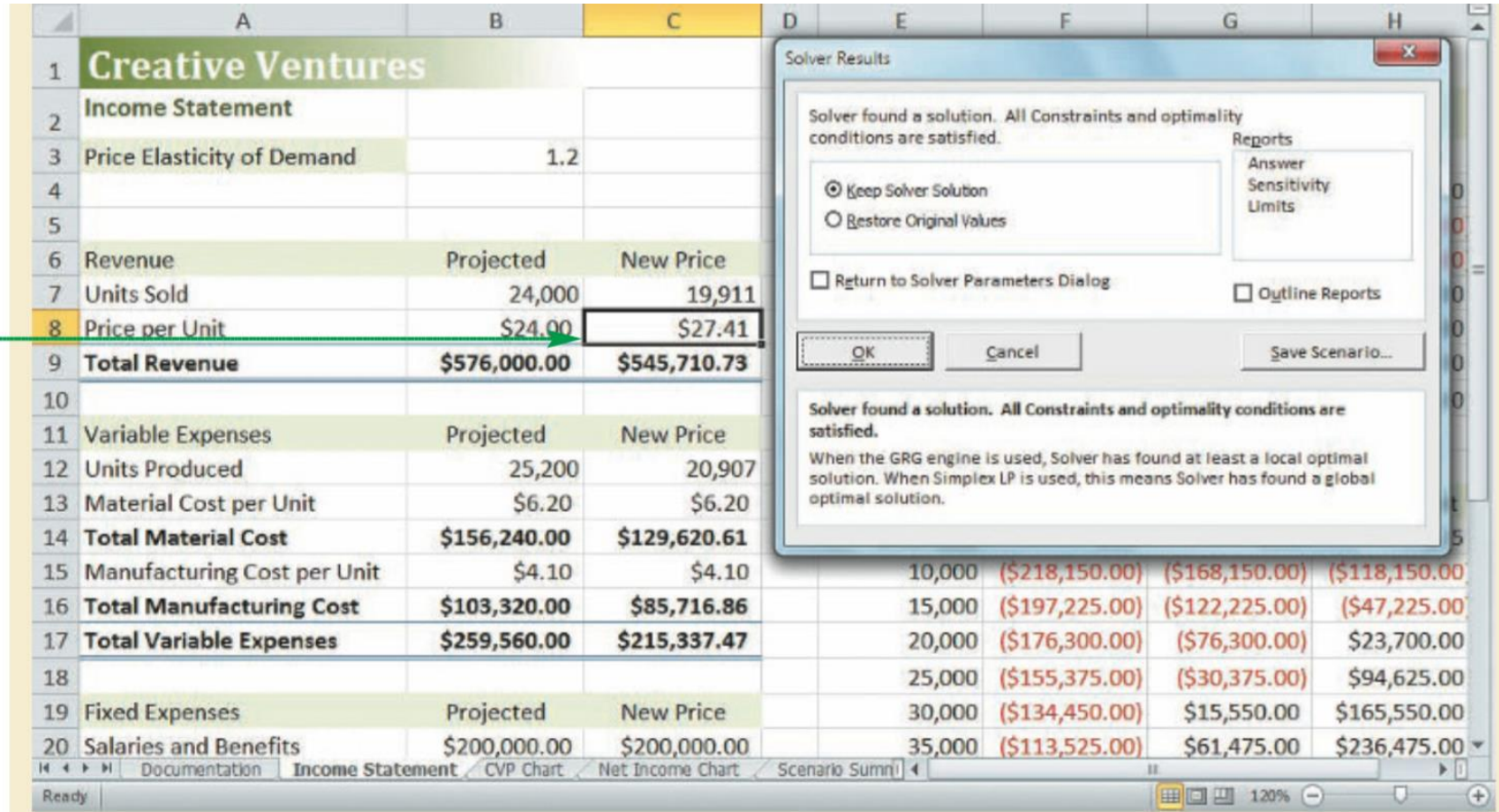
- A green box on the left contains the text: "units produced must be between 15,000 and 35,000 inclusive". An arrow points from this box to the constraint list.
- A green box contains the text: "click to add a new constraint". An arrow points from this box to the "Add" button.
- A green box contains the text: "click to change the highlighted constraint". An arrow points from this box to the "Change" button.
- A green box contains the text: "click to delete the highlighted constraint". An arrow points from this box to the "Delete" button.
- A green box contains the text: "click to solve the problem". An arrow points from this box to the "Solve" button.

SETTING UP SOLVER TO FIND A SOLUTION

maximum net income occurs when the sales price is \$27.41

TIP

You can click the Save Scenario button in the Solver Results dialog box to save the Solver solution as a scenario, which you review using the Scenario Manager.



The screenshot shows the 'Creative Ventures' spreadsheet with the Solver Results dialog box open. The dialog box indicates that a solution has been found and all constraints and optimality conditions are satisfied. It offers options to 'Keep Solver Solution' (selected) or 'Restore Original Values', and a checkbox for 'Return to Solver Parameters Dialog'. There are also buttons for 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Save Scenario...'. The 'Reports' section shows 'Answer', 'Sensitivity', and 'Limits' are selected, with 'Outline Reports' unchecked.

The spreadsheet data is as follows:

	Projected	New Price
Revenue		
Units Sold	24,000	19,911
Price per Unit	\$24.00	\$27.41
Total Revenue	\$576,000.00	\$545,710.73
Variable Expenses		
Units Produced	25,200	20,907
Material Cost per Unit	\$6.20	\$6.20
Total Material Cost	\$156,240.00	\$129,620.61
Manufacturing Cost per Unit	\$4.10	\$4.10
Total Manufacturing Cost	\$103,320.00	\$85,716.86
Total Variable Expenses	\$259,560.00	\$215,337.47
Fixed Expenses		
Salaries and Benefits	\$200,000.00	\$200,000.00

Below the main table, there is a section showing the impact of different production volumes on net income:

Units Produced	Net Income	Net Income	Net Income
10,000	(\$218,150.00)	(\$168,150.00)	(\$118,150.00)
15,000	(\$197,225.00)	(\$122,225.00)	(\$47,225.00)
20,000	(\$176,300.00)	(\$76,300.00)	\$23,700.00
25,000	(\$155,375.00)	(\$30,375.00)	\$94,625.00
30,000	(\$134,450.00)	\$15,550.00	\$165,550.00
35,000	(\$113,525.00)	\$61,475.00	\$236,475.00

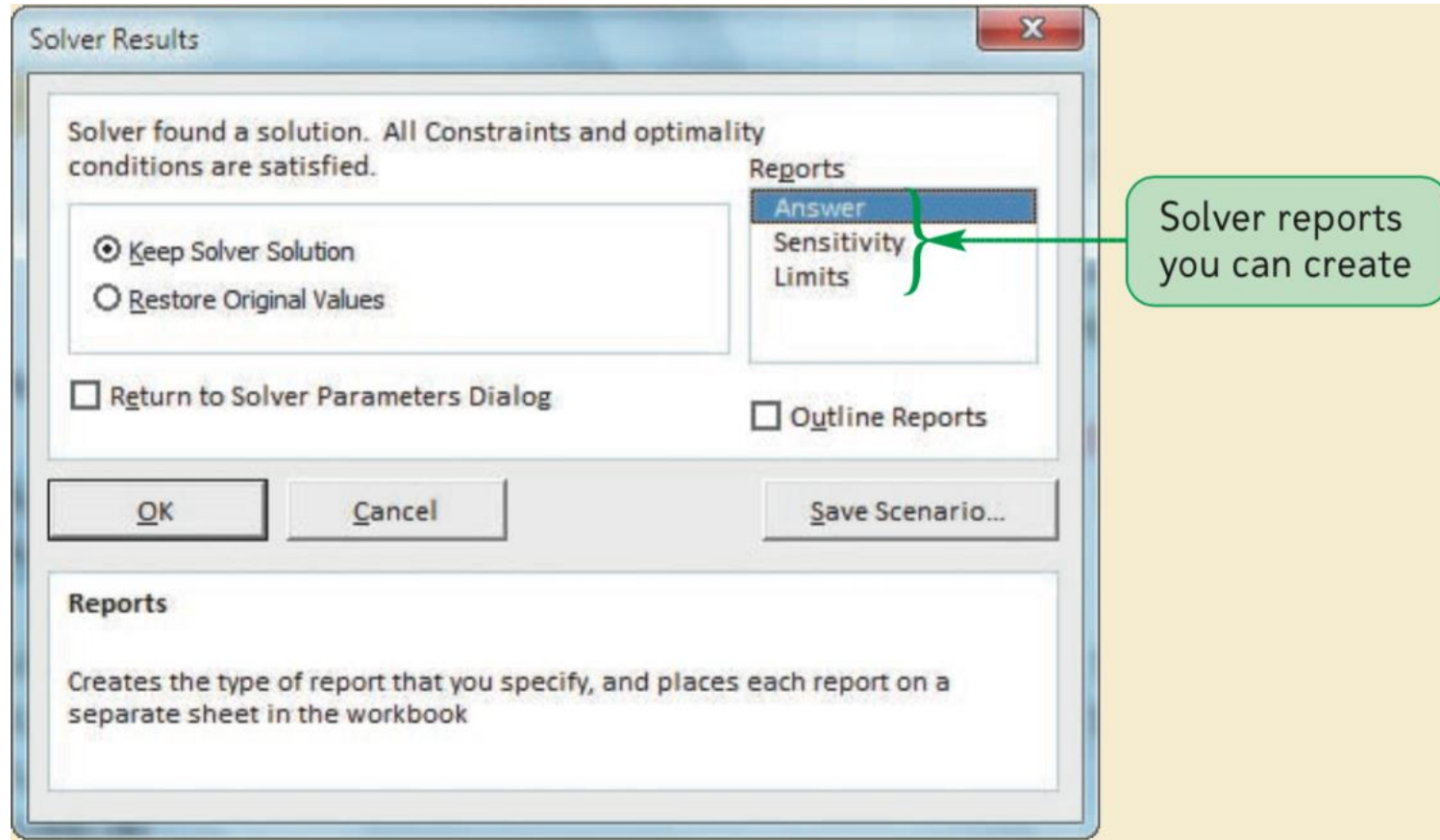
UNDERSTANDING THE ITERATIVE PROCESS

- Solver arrives at optimal solutions through an **iterative procedure**, in which Solver starts with an initial solution (usually the current values from the worksheet) and uses that as a basis to calculate a new set of values. If those values improve the value of the objective cell, the new values are used as a basis to generate the next set of values. If they don't improve the solution, Solver tries a different set of values. Each step, or iteration, in this process improves the solution until Solver reaches the point where the new solutions are not significantly better than the solution from the previous step. At that point, Solver will stop and indicate that it has found an answer.
- What does “significantly better” mean? The default convergence value is 0.001, which means that if the change in the value of the objective cell between the new solution and the previous solution is less than or equal to 0.001, Solver will consider that it has converged to the solution and stop the iterative process. Solver will also stop if it is not making progress toward a solution.
- The default length of time that Solver will spend on the iterative process is 100 seconds or 100 total iterations (whichever comes first). If 100 seconds or 100 iterations have passed and Solver has not found a solution, it will report this fact. At that point, you can have Solver continue the iterative process or stop the process without finding a solution. If Solver is taking too long to find a solution, you can **halt the program** at any time by pressing the Esc key.
- If you want to see the iterative process in action, click the **Show Iteration Results** check box in the Options dialog box, and Excel will pause after each iteration and show the intermediate solution.

CREATING A SOLVER ANSWER REPORT

- How do you evaluate the solution that Solver produced?
- Solver can create three different reports—an answer report, a sensitivity report, and a limits report.
 - The **answer report** may be the most useful of the three because it summarizes the results of a successful solution by displaying information about the objective cell, changing cells, and constraints. This report includes the original and final values for the objective and changing cells, as well as the constraint formulas.
 - The **sensitivity report** and limits report are often used in science and engineering environments when the user wants to investigate the mathematical aspects of the Solver solution.
- These reports allow you to quantify the reliability of the solution.
- You cannot use these reports when the problem contains integer constraints.
- **To create an answer report:**
 - In the Solver Results dialog box, click Answer in the Reports box, and then verify that the Keep Solver Solution option button is selected.
 - Click the OK button to accept the solution and generate the answer report in a separate sheet.

CREATING A SOLVER ANSWER REPORT



CREATING A SOLVER ANSWER REPORT

1	Microsoft Excel 14.0 Answer Report					
2	Worksheet: [Creative Ventures.xlsx]Income Statement					
3	Report Created: 3/1/2013 11:35:31 AM					
4	Result: Solver found a solution. All Constraints and optimality conditions are satisfied.					
5	Solver Engine					
6	Engine: GRG Nonlinear					
7	Solution Time: 0.047 Seconds.					
8	Iterations: 4 Subproblems: 0					
9	Solver Options					
10	Max Time 100 sec, Iterations 100, Precision 0.000001					
11	Convergence 0.0001, Population Size 100, Random Seed 0, Derivatives Forward, Require Bounds					
12	Max Subproblems Unlimited, Max Integer Sols Unlimited, Integer Tolerance 5%, Solve Without Integer Constraints					
13						
14	Objective Cell ()					
15	Cell	Name	Original Value	Final Value		
16	\$C\$29	Net Income New Price	\$56,440.00	\$70,373.27		
17						
18						
19	Variable Cells					
20	Cell	Name	Original Value	Final Value	Integer	
21	\$C\$8	Price per Unit New Price	\$24.00	\$27.41	Contin	
22						
23						
24	Constraints					
25	Cell	Name	Cell Value	Formula	Status	Slack
26	\$C\$12	Units Produced New Price	20,907	\$C\$12<=35000	Not Binding	14093.44998
27	\$C\$12	Units Produced New Price	20,907	\$C\$12>=15000	Not Binding	5,907
28						
29						

answer report titles

information about
the objective cell

information about
the variable cells

information about
the constraints on
the Solver solution

CREATING A SOLVER ANSWER REPORT

- The answer report is divided into **four sections**.
 - The **first section** includes titles that indicate that this is an Excel answer report created from the specific worksheet in the specific workbook on the day and at the time specified.
 - The **second section** displays information about the objective cell, its location, the cell label, and the cell's original value and final values.
 - The **third section** displays information about the changing cells, which the report calls variable cells. This section of the report shows the location, column and row label, original value, and final value of each cell.
 - The **fourth section** of the report displays information about the constraints. In addition to the location, name, and value of each constraint, this section shows the constraint formulas. The second column from the right shows the status of each constraint. The status of both of the constraints is listed as “Not Binding.” A not binding constraint is a constraint that was not a limiting factor in arriving at the solution. The other possibility is a binding constraint, which Solver was forced to include as part of the final solution. For example, if the maximum net income occurred when the number of units produced was equal to 15,000 (one of the constraints in your Solver model), this would be a binding constraint.

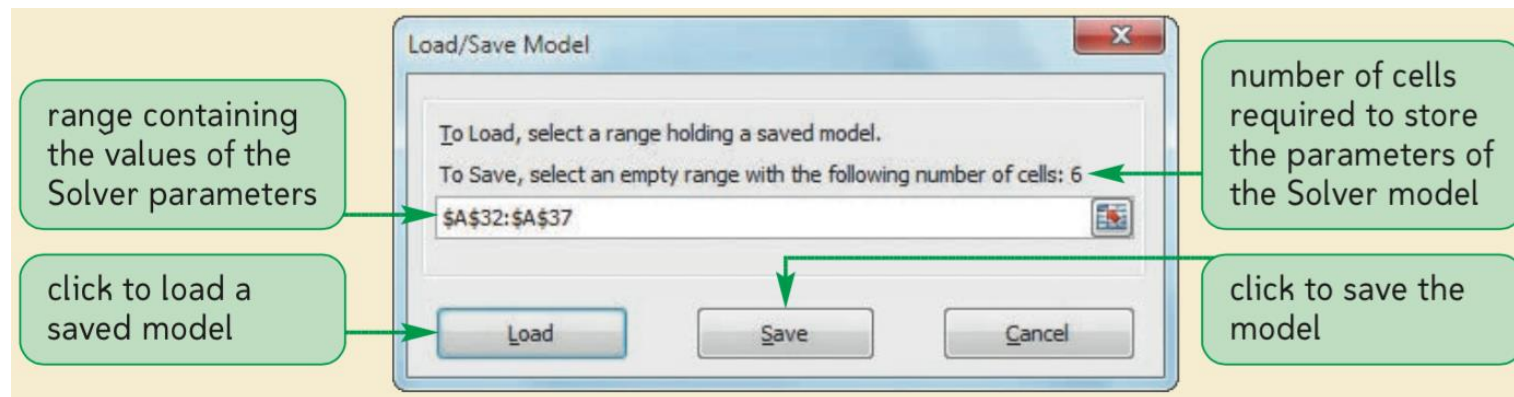
CREATING A SOLVER ANSWER REPORT



- The last column on the right shows **the slack for each constraint**. The slack is the difference between the value in the cell and the value at the limit of the constraint. The slack for the first constraint is 14,093.44998 because that is the difference between the final cell value, 20,907, and the first constraining value, 35,000. The slack is useful because it indicates how close the optimal price value is to a constraining point. In this case, the slack for both constraints is large, so the constraints do not have any impact on the solution. Binding constraints always show a slack of 0.

SAVING AND LOADING SOLVER MODELS

- Rather than reentering the Solver parameters for each model, you can save the parameters in cells in the worksheet. Then, if you want to rerun a particular problem, you can reload the parameters from the worksheet cells without having to reformulate the problem.
- **To save a Solver model:**
 - Open the Solver dialog box.
 - Click the Load/Save button, and then select an empty range containing the number of cells specified in the dialog box.
 - Click the Save button.
- **To load a Solver model:**
 - Open the Solver dialog box.
 - Click the Load/Save button, and then select the cell range containing the saved model.
 - Click the Load button.



SAVING AND LOADING SOLVER MODELS

The screenshot shows the Microsoft Excel 2010 interface with the 'Maximum Net Income Model' selected. The Solver Parameters dialog box is open, and the following values are visible:

Cell Reference	Value
Maximum Net Income Model	\$70,373.27
Number of Changing Variable Cells	1
Logical Values	TRUE, TRUE
Time (in seconds)	100, 100

Annotations and arrows point to the following cells:

- current value of the objective cell (points to cell A31)
- number of changing variable cells in the model (points to cell B31)
- logical values that indicate whether the two constraints are currently met in the model (points to cells C34 and C35)
- time (in seconds) that Excel will wait for Solver to reach a solution (points to cells D36 and D37)

CALCULATING THE LOAN PAYMENT

- When negotiating a loan, the first concern that comes up is almost always the size of the payment you'll need to make each period. This is just basic cash-flow management because the monthly (or whatever) payment must fit within your budget.
- **To return the periodic payment for a loan, use the PMT() function:**
 - **PMT(rate, nper, pv[, fv][, type])** where
 - **rate** is the fixed rate of interest over the term of the loan
 - **nper** is the number of payments over the term of the loan
 - **pv** is the loan principal
 - **fv** is the future value of the loan.
 - **type** is the type of payment - Use 0 (the default) for end-of-period payments; use 1 for beginning-of-period payments.
- For example, the following formula returns the monthly payment of a \$10,000 loan with an annual interest rate of 6% (0.5% per month) over 5 years (60 months): `=PMT(0.005, 60, 10000)`

WORKING WITH A BALLOON LOAN

- Many loans are set up so that the payments take care of only a portion of the principal, with the remainder due as an end-of-loan balloon payment. This balloon payment is the future value of the loan, so you need to factor it into the PMT() function as the fv argument.
- You might think that the pv argument should be the partial principal—that is, the original loan principal minus the balloon amount. This seems right because the loan term is designed to pay off the partial principal. That's not the case, however. **In a balloon loan, you also pay interest on the balloon part of the principal.** That is, each payment in a balloon loan has three components:
 - A paydown of the partial principal
 - Interest on the partial principal
 - Interest on the balloon portion of the principal
- Therefore, the PMT() function's pv argument must be the entire principal, with the balloon portion as the (negative) fv argument.
- For example, suppose that the loan from the previous section has a \$3,000 balloon payment. The monthly payment is calculated as follows: $\text{=PMT}(0.06 / 12, 5 * 12, 10000, -3000)$

CALCULATING THE PRINCIPAL AND INTEREST

- To calculate the principal and interest components of a loan payment, use the PPMT() and IPMT() functions, respectively:
 - **PPMT(rate, per, nper, pv[, fv][, type])**
 - **IPMT(rate, per, nper, pv[, fv][, type])** where
 - **Rate** is the fixed rate of interest over the term of the loan.
 - **Per** is the number of the payment period (where the first payment is 1 and the last payment is the same as nper).
 - **nper** is the number of payments over the term of the loan.
 - **pv** is the loan principal.
 - **fv** is the future value of the loan (the default is 0).
 - **type** is the type of payment - Use 0 (the default) for end-of-period payments; use 1 for beginning-of-period payments.
- The following Figure shows a worksheet that applies these functions to the loan. The data table shows the principal (column E) and interest (column F) components of the loan for the first 10 periods and for the final period. Note that with each period, the principal portion increases and the interest portion decreases. However, the total remains the same (as confirmed by the Total column), which is as it should be because the payment remains constant through the life of the loan.

CALCULATING THE PRINCIPAL AND INTEREST

E3 $=PPMT(\$B\$2 / 12, D3, \$B\$3 * 12, \$B\$4)$

Loans

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	Loan Payment Analysis						
2	Interest Rate (Annual)	6.00%		Period	Principal	Interest	Total
3	Periods (Years)	5		1	(\$143.33)	(\$50.00)	(\$193.33)
4	Principal	\$10,000		2	(\$144.04)	(\$49.28)	(\$193.33)
5	Monthly Payment	(\$193.33)		3	(\$144.76)	(\$48.56)	(\$193.33)
6				4	(\$145.49)	(\$47.84)	(\$193.33)
7	Total Loan Costs (Array)	(\$1,599.68)		5	(\$146.22)	(\$47.11)	(\$193.33)
8				6	(\$146.95)	(\$46.38)	(\$193.33)
9				7	(\$147.68)	(\$45.65)	(\$193.33)
10				8	(\$148.42)	(\$44.91)	(\$193.33)
11				9	(\$149.16)	(\$44.17)	(\$193.33)
12				10	(\$149.91)	(\$43.42)	(\$193.33)
13				60	(\$192.37)	(\$0.96)	(\$193.33)
14							

Principal and Interest

CALCULATING CUMULATIVE PRINCIPAL AND INTEREST



- Knowing how much principal and interest you pay each period is useful, but it's usually more often handy to know how much principal or interest you've paid in total up to a given period. For example, if you sign up for a mortgage with a five-year term, how much principal will you have paid off by the end of the term? Similarly, a business might need to know the total interest payments a loan requires in the first year so that it can factor the result into its expense budgeting.
- To calculate the cumulative principal and interest of a loan payment, use the following functions:
 - **CUMPRINC(rate, nper, pv, start_period, end_period, type)**
 - **CUMIPMT(rate, nper, pv, start_period, end_period, type)** where
 - **rate** is the fixed rate of interest over the term of the loan.
 - **nper** is the number of payments over the term of the loan.
 - **Pv** is the loan principal.
 - **start_period** is the first period to include in the calculation.
 - **end_period** is the last period to include in the calculation.
 - **type** is the type of payment - Use 0 for end-of-period payments; use 1 for beginning- of-period payments.

CALCULATING CUMULATIVE PRINCIPAL AND INTEREST

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- In both CUMPRINC() and CUMIPMT(), **all of the arguments are required**. If you omit the type argument (which is optional in most other financial functions), Excel returns the #N/A error.
- The **main difference** between CUMPRINC() and CUMIPMT() and PPMT() and IPMT() is the start_period and end_period arguments. For example, to find the cumulative principal or interest in the first year of a loan, you set start_period to 1 and end_period to 12; for the second year, you set start_period to 13 and end_period to 24.
- The CUMIPMT() function gives you an easier way **to calculate the total interest costs** for a loan. Just set the start_period to 1 and the end_period to the number of periods (the value of nper).
- Although the CUMPRINC() function works as advertised if the loan includes a **balloon payment**, the CUMIPMT() function does not.

CALCULATING CUMULATIVE PRINCIPAL AND INTEREST

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



E3 =CUMPRINC(\$B\$2 / 12, \$B\$3 * 12, \$B\$4, (D3 - 1) * 12 + 1, D3 * 12, 0)

Loan Payment Analysis						
	A	B	C	D	E	F
1						
2	Interest Rate (Annual)	6.00%		Year	Cumulative Principal	Cumulative Interest
3	Periods (Years)	5		1	(\$1,768.03)	(\$551.90)
4	Principal	\$10,000		2	(\$1,877.08)	(\$442.86)
5	Monthly Payment	(\$193.33)		3	(\$1,992.85)	(\$327.08)
6				4	(\$2,115.77)	(\$204.17)
7				5	(\$2,246.27)	(\$73.67)
8				1 - 5	(\$10,000.00)	(\$1,599.68)
9						
10						
11						
12						
13						
14						

Cumulative Principal & Interest Amortizat

CALCULATING THE TERM OF THE LOAN

- In some loan scenarios, you need to borrow a certain amount at the current interest rates, but you can spend only so much on each payment. If the other loan factors are fixed, the only way to adjust the payment is to adjust the term of the loan: A longer term means smaller payments; a shorter term means larger payments.
- Excel offers a direct solution in the form of the NPER() function, which returns the **number of periods of a loan**:
 - **NPER(rate, pmt, pv[, fv][, type])** where
 - **rate** is the fixed rate of interest over the term of the loan.
 - **pmt** is the periodic payment.
 - **pv** is the loan principal.
 - **fv** is the future value of the loan (the default is 0).
 - **type** is the type of payment - Use 0 (the default) for end-of-period payments; use 1 for beginning-of-period payments.
- For example, suppose that you want to borrow \$10,000 at 6 percent interest with no balloon payment, and the most you can spend is \$750 per month. What term should you get? Use NPER() to calculate the answer: 13.8 months.

CALCULATING THE TERM OF THE LOAN

- Here are some things to note about this model:
 - The interest rate is an annual value, so the NPER() function's rate argument divides the rate by 12.
 - The payment is negative because it's money that you pay to the lender.
 - The cumulative principal values are calculated using the SUM() function. You can't use the CUMPRINC() function in this case because CUMPRINC() truncates the nper argument to an integer value.

Loans - Microsoft Excel

File Home Insert Page Layout Formulas Data Review View

B7 fx =NPER(B2 / 12, B3, B4, B5, B6)

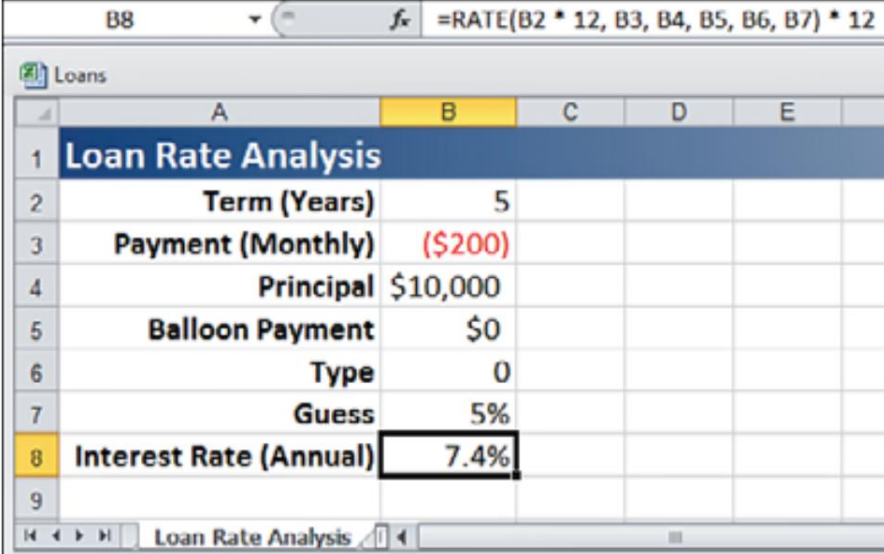
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	Loan Term Analysis						
2	Interest Rate (Annual)	6.00%					
3	Payment (Monthly)	(\$750)					
4	Principal	\$10,000					
5	Balloon Payment	\$0					
6	Type	0					
7	Term (Months)	13.8					
9	Ending the Loan After 13 Months				Ending the Loan After 14 Months		
10	Period	Principal	Cumulative Principal		Period	Principal	Cumulative Principal
11	1	(\$700.00)	(\$700.00)		1	(\$700.00)	(\$700.00)
12	2	(\$703.50)	(\$1,403.50)		2	(\$703.50)	(\$1,403.50)
13	3	(\$707.02)	(\$2,110.52)		3	(\$707.02)	(\$2,110.52)
14	4	(\$710.55)	(\$2,821.07)		4	(\$710.55)	(\$2,821.07)

CALCULATING THE INTEREST RATE REQUIRED FOR A LOAN

- A slightly less common loan scenario arises when you know the loan term, payment, and principal, and you need to know what **interest rate** will satisfy these parameters. This is useful in a number of circumstances:
 - You might decide to wait until interest rates fall to the value you want.
 - You might regard the calculated interest rate as a maximum rate that you can pay, knowing that anything less will enable you to reduce either the payment or the term.
 - You could use the calculated interest rate as a negotiating tool with your lender by asking for that rate and walking away from the deal if you don't get it.
 - To determine the interest rate given the other loan factors, use the RATE() functions:
RATE(nper, pmt, pv[, fv][, type][, guess]) where
 - **nper** is the number of payments over the term of the loan.
 - **Pmt** is the periodic payment.
 - **Pv** is the loan principal.
 - **Fv** is the future value of the loan (the default is 0).
 - **Type** is the type of payment - use 0 (the default) for end-of-period payments; use 1 for beginning-of-period payments.
 - **Guess** is a percentage value that Excel uses as a starting point for calculating the interest rate (the default is 10 percent).

CALCULATING THE INTEREST RATE REQUIRED FOR A LOAN

- For **example**, suppose that you want to borrow \$10,000 over 5 years with no balloon payment and a monthly payout of \$200. What rate will satisfy these criteria?
- The worksheet in the following Figure uses RATE() to derive the result of 7.4 percent.
- Here are some notes about this model:
 - The term is in years, so the RATE() function's nper argument multiplies the term by 12.
 - The payment is already a monthly number, so no adjustment is necessary for the pmt attribute.
 - The payment is negative because it's money that you pay to the lender.
 - The result of the RATE() function is multiplied by 12 to get the annual interest rate.



	A	B	C	D	E
1	Loan Rate Analysis				
2	Term (Years)	5			
3	Payment (Monthly)	(\$200)			
4	Principal	\$10,000			
5	Balloon Payment	\$0			
6	Type	0			
7	Guess	5%			
8	Interest Rate (Annual)	7.4%			
9					

CALCULATING HOW MUCH YOU CAN BORROW

- If you know the current interest rate that your bank is offering for loans, when you want to have the loan paid off, and how much you can afford each month for the payments, you might then wonder **what is the maximum amount you can borrow** under those terms? To figure this out, you need to solve for the principal—that is, present value. You do that in Excel by using the PV() function:
PV(rate, nper, pmt[, fv][, type]) where
 - **rate** is the fixed rate of interest over the term of the loan.
 - **nper** is the number of payments over the term of the loan.
 - **pmt** is the periodic payment.
 - **fv** is the future value of the loan (the default is 0).
 - **type** is the type of payment - Use 0 (the default) for end-of-period payments; use 1 for beginning-of-period payments.
- For example, suppose that the current loan rate is 6 percent, you want the loan paid off in 5 years, and you can afford payments of \$500 per month. The following Figure shows a worksheet that calculates the maximum amount that you can borrow—\$25,862.78—using the following formula:

=PV(B2 / 12, B3 * 12, B4, B5, B6)

CALCULATING HOW MUCH YOU CAN BORROW

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



B7		fx		=PV(B2 / 12, B3 * 12, B4, B5, B6)				
Loans								
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	Loan Principal Analysis							
2	Interest Rate (Annual)	6.00%						
3	Term (Years)	5						
4	Payment (Monthly)	(\$500)						
5	Balloon Payment	\$0						
6	Type	0						
7	Maximum Principal	\$25,862.78						
8								
9								
10								
Loan Principal Analysis								

CONVERTING BETWEEN THE NOMINAL RATE AND THE EFFECTIVE RATE



- The two ways that most interest rates are most often quoted:
 - **The nominal rate**—This is the annual rate before compounding (the 10 percent rate, in the example). The nominal rate is always quoted along with the compounding frequency—for example, 10 percent compounded semiannually.
 - **The effective rate**—This is the annual rate that an investment actually earns in the year after the compounding is applied (the 10.25 percent, in the example).
- To convert a nominal annual interest rate to the effective annual rate, use the EFFECT() function:
 - **EFFECT(nominal_rate, npery)** where
 - **nominal_rate** is the nominal annual interest rate
 - **npery** is the number of compounding periods in the year.
- For example, the following formula returns the effective annual interest rate for an investment with a nominal annual rate of 10 percent that compounds semiannually:
`=EFFECT(0.1, 2)`

CALCULATING THE FUTURE VALUE

- Just as the payment is usually the most important value for a loan calculation, the future value is usually the most important value for an investment calculation. After all, the purpose of an investment is to place a sum of money (the present value) in some instrument for a time, after which you end up with some new (and hopefully greater) amount: the future value.
- To calculate the future value of an investment, Excel offers the FV() function:
FV(rate, nper[, pmt][, pv][, type])
 - **rate** is the fixed rate of interest over the term of the investment.
 - **nper** is the number of periods in the term of the investment.
 - **pmt** is the amount deposited in the investment each period (The default is 0.)
 - **pv** is the initial deposit (The default is 0.).
 - **type** is the type of deposit - Use 0 (the default) for end-of-period deposits; use 1 for beginning- of-period deposits.
 - Because both the amount deposited per period (the pmt argument) and the initial deposit (the pv argument) are sums that you pay out, these must be entered as negative values in the FV() function.



CALCULATING THE FUTURE VALUE

- Excel's FV() function doesn't work with continuous compounding. Instead, you need to use a worksheet formula that takes the following general form (where e is the mathematical constant e):

$$=pv * e ^ (rate * nper)$$

- For example, the follow formula calculates the future value of \$10,000 invested at 5 percent over 10 years compounded continuously (and returns a value of \$16,487.21):
$$=10000 * EXP(0.05 * 10)$$

CALCULATING THE FUTURE VALUE WITH VARYING INTEREST RATES



- For investments that offer a variable rate over the term, or when the rate fluctuates over the term, Excel offers the **FVSCHEDULE()** function, which returns the future value of some initial amount, given a schedule of interest rates:
FVSCHEDULE(principal, schedule) where
 - principal** is the initial investment
 - schedule** is a range or array containing the interest rates.
- For example, the following formula returns the future value of an initial \$10,000 deposit that makes 5 percent, 6 percent, and 7 percent over 3 years:
=FVSCHEDULE(10000, {0.5, 0.6, 0.7})

B9		fx		=FVSCHEDULE(B2, B4:B8)			
Investments							
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	Calculating the Future Value with Varying Interest Rates						
2	Principal	\$100,000					
3	Rates:						
4	2005	5.0%					
5	2006	5.5%					
6	2007	6.0%					
7	2008	7.0%					
8	2009	6.0%					
9	Future Value	\$133,179.47					
10	Average Rate	5.9%					
FVSCHEDULE()		Investmen					

SAVING TIME WITH EXCEL TABLE FEATURES

- Excel tables provide **many advantages** to structured ranges of data. When you create an Excel table, you can perform the same operations as you can for a structured range of data. In addition, you can use Excel tables to do the following to be more productive and reduce the chance of error:
 - Format the Excel table quickly using a table style.
 - Add new rows and columns to the Excel table that automatically expand the range.
 - Add a Total row to calculate the summary function you select, such as SUM, AVERAGE, COUNT, MIN, and MAX.
 - Enter a formula in one table cell that is automatically copied to all other cells in that table column.
 - Create formulas that reference cells in a table by using table and column names instead of cell addresses.
 - These Excel table features let you focus on analyzing and understanding the data, leaving the more time-consuming tasks for the program to perform.

VISUAL OVERVIEW



Every Excel table has a table name, which you can change to a descriptive name.

Each column represents a **field**, which describes some characteristic of a person, place, or thing such as a last name, address, city, or state.

The first row of the range contains field names called the **header row**. Although the header row often is row 1, it can begin in any row.

LaFouch Museum - Microsoft Excel

Table Name: ArtObjects						
Properties		Tools		External Table Data		Table
Summarize with PivotTable Remove Duplicates Resize Table Convert to Range		Export Refresh Unlink		Properties Open in Browser Header Row Total Row Banded Rows		
	A	B	C	D	E	
1	ArtID	Artist	Title	Acquired	Date	
2	21	Aserty	Bead Wall	9/10/2007	Insta	
3	83	Roman	Untitled	9/17/2008	Insta	
4	13	Aserty	Superstitions	3/10/2012	Paint	
5	53	Bindner	Blue Eyed Indian	1/10/2012	Paint	
6	66	Waid	Untitled (still life)	4/13/2011	Paint	
7	4	Roman	Seeking Shelter	8/8/2008	Sculp	
8	104	Acconci	Trail End	9/10/2006	Paint	

VISUAL OVERVIEW



9	55	Budd	Starlit Evening	1/10/2007	Paint
10	97	Cardenas	Ceremonial Sticks	7/23/2007	Paint
11	103	Cox	Crying Hats	7/11/2007	Paint
12	59	Dawson	Dwelling	3/16/2007	Paint
13	5	DiGrigoro	The Hang	7/16/2007	Paint
14	110	Fratt	Friends	10/18/2007	Paint
15	72	Garin	Funnel	5/18/2007	Paint
16	113	Gonzales	Dark Canyon	3/16/2007	Paint
17	41	Hamend	Night Version	1/16/2007	Paint
18	29	Hofmann	Horseshoe Falls	8/16/2007	Paint
19	31	Ingraham	Inside/Out	12/16/2007	Paint

Each row represents a **record**, which is a collection of related fields that are grouped together.

You can rearrange, or **sort**, the records in a table or range based on one or more fields.

VISUAL OVERVIEW

The screenshot shows the Microsoft Excel 2010 interface with the 'Table Tools' ribbon active, specifically the 'Design' tab. The 'Table Tools' ribbon includes 'View' and 'Add-Ins' sub-tabs. The 'Design' tab contains checkboxes for 'Header Row', 'Total Row', 'Banded Rows', 'First Column', 'Last Column', and 'Banded Columns'. To the right of these checkboxes are four table style thumbnails. A green callout box points to these thumbnails, stating: 'Table styles provide a way to quickly format an entire table using a preset style definition.'

Below the ribbon, a data table is displayed. The table has five columns: 'Date', 'Category', 'Condition', 'Location', and 'Appraised Value'. Each column header has a small downward arrow (filter arrow) to its right. A green callout box points to the 'Category' header, stating: 'A **field name**, or **column header**, is a unique label that describes the contents of the data in a column.'

Another green callout box points to the 'Location' header, stating: 'The filter arrow changes to a sort icon as a reminder that the data is sorted by that field.'

A third green callout box points to the 'Appraised Value' header, stating: 'You can click a filter arrow to sort the table by data in that column.'

Date	Category	Condition	Location	Appraised Value
/10/2007	Installation	Excellent	Courtyard	\$ 14,000
/17/2008	Installation	Good	Courtyard	\$ 2,500
/10/2012	Painting	Excellent	Courtyard	\$ 78,000
/10/2012	Painting	Excellent	Courtyard	\$ 40,000
/13/2011	Painting	Excellent	Courtyard	\$ 19,500
8/8/2008	Sculpture	Excellent	Courtyard	\$ 52,000
/10/2006	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 8,000

VISUAL OVERVIEW



10/2006	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$	8,000
10/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$	9,500
23/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$	15,000
11/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$	10,000
16/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$	16,000
16/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$	8,000
18/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$	16,000
18/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$	4,500
16/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$	8,000
16/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$	3,800
16/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$	15,000
16/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$	3,500

An Excel table is a range of related data that is managed independently from data in other rows and columns in the worksheet.

The fields that you use to order data are called **sort fields**. This data is sorted by Location, the sort field.

You can create a custom list to sort data in the order you specify, such as art objects by their condition rankings: Excellent, Good, Fair, and Poor.

CREATING AN EXCEL TABLE

- Verify that the active cell is a cell in the range of the data you want to insert in the table.
- Click the **Insert tab** on the Ribbon. The Ribbon displays the Insert options.
- In the Tables group, click the **Table button**. The **Create Table** dialog box opens. The range of data for the table is entered in the dialog box.
- Click the OK button. The dialog box closes, and the range of data is converted to an Excel table. Filter arrows appear in the header row, the table is formatted with a predefined table style, and the Table Tools Design contextual tab appears on the Ribbon.
- Scroll the table down. The text of the header row replaces the standard lettered column headings (A, B, C, and so on) as you scroll so that you don't need to freeze panes to keep the header row visible.

TIP

If the first row of data does not contain column headers, uncheck the My table has headers check box. Excel adds headers with the default names Column1 and so on.

CREATING AN EXCEL TABLE

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



contextual tab
appears on
the Ribbon

The screenshot shows the Microsoft Excel interface with the 'Table Tools' contextual tab active on the ribbon. The table has 8 columns: ArtID, Artist, Title, Date Acquired, Category, Condition, Location, and Appraised Value. The table is styled with a blue header row and alternating blue and white data rows. Filter arrows are visible in the header row. A green callout box points to the 'Table Tools' tab, and another points to the 'Table Style' section of the ribbon. A third callout box points to the filter arrows in the header row.

	A	B	C	D	E	F		
1	ArtID	Artist	Title	Date Acquired	Category	Condition	Location	Appraised Value
2	1	Mogan	Red Rock Mountain	3/19/2008	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 18,000
3	2	Novarre	Offerings	10/16/2008	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 10,000
4	3	Chico	Spring Flowers	7/20/2007	Sculpture	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 2,400
5	4	Roman	Seeking Shelter	8/8/2008	Sculpture	Excellent		000
6	5	DiGrigoro	The Hang	7/16/2007	Painting	Excellent		000
7	6	Ibe	House Remembered	8/16/2007	Sculpture	Good		700
8	7	Zischke	Homage to the Ancestors	12/17/2007	Textile	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 1,200

table style applied

filter arrows appear
in the header row

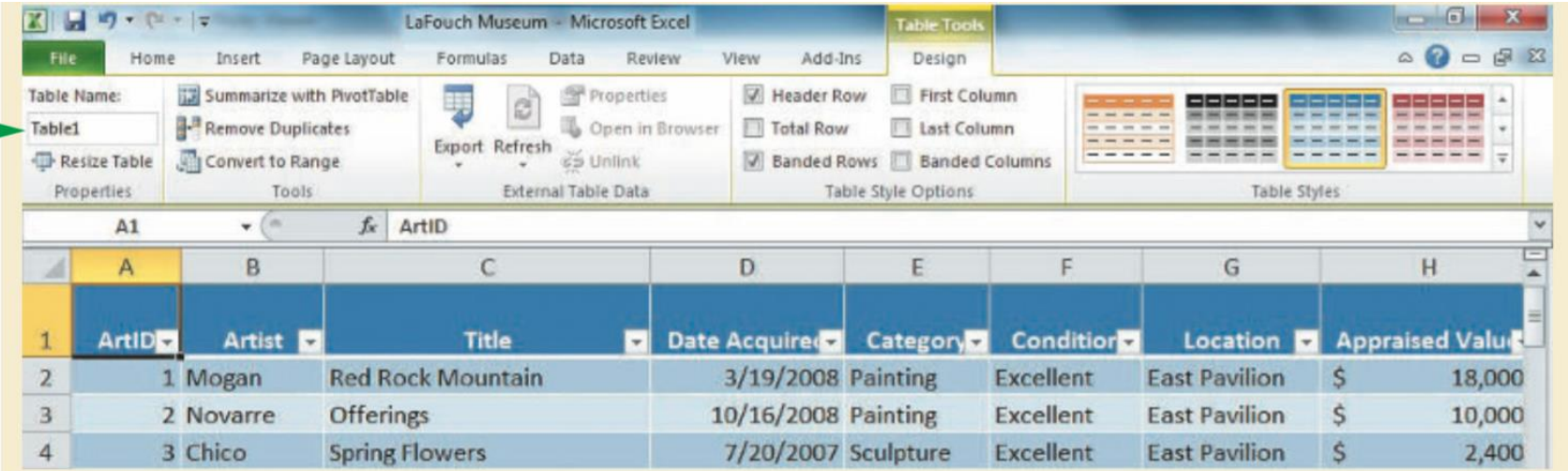
CREATING AN EXCEL TABLE

header row replaces
the letters in the
column headers

ArtID	Artist	Title	Date Acquired	Category	Condition	Location	Appraised Value
73	72 Garin	Funnel	5/18/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 4,500
74	73 Cridler	Dancing in the Light	1/15/2007	Sculpture	Fair	East Pavilion	\$ 1,000
75	74 Parker	Storm on the Rise	8/23/2008	Painting	Good	East Pavilion	\$ 8,000
76	75 Bindner	Western Boots and Spurs	1/10/2007	Painting	Fair	East Pavilion	\$ 6,000
77	76 Wright	Ride the Bronco	10/15/2012	Sculpture	Poor	East Pavilion	\$ 1,500
78	77 Bindner	Bull Riding	9/10/2007	Painting	Poor	East Pavilion	\$ 5,200
79	78 Guys	Chuckwagon	7/11/2006	Sculpture	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 32,000

RENAMING AN EXCEL TABLE

- In the Properties group on the **Design** tab, select the default table name in the **Table Name** box.
- Type the new name, and then press the Enter key. The Excel table is renamed.



enter a descriptive table name

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	ArtID	Artist	Title	Date Acquired	Category	Condition	Location	Appraised Value
2	1	Mogan	Red Rock Mountain	3/19/2008	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 18,000
3	2	Novarre	Offerings	10/16/2008	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 10,000
4	3	Chico	Spring Flowers	7/20/2007	Sculpture	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 2,400

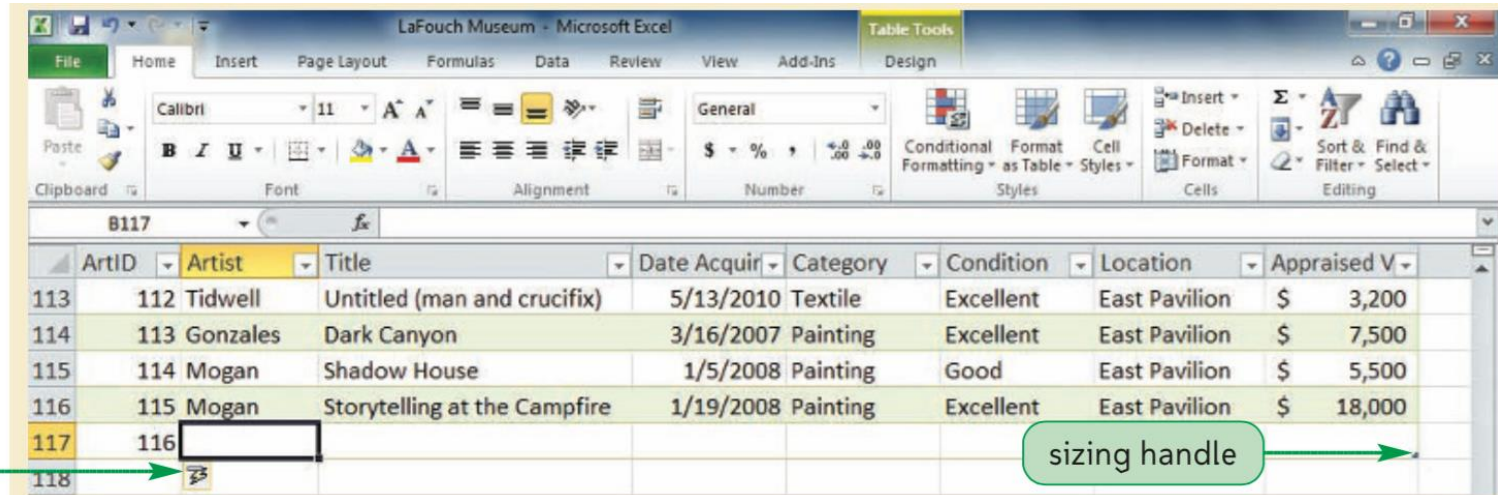
ADDING A RECORD TO AN EXCEL TABLE

- The simplest and most convenient way to add a record to an Excel table is to **enter the data in the first blank row below the last record**. You can then sort the data to arrange the table in the order you want. If you want the record in a specific location, you can also insert a row within the table for the new record.
 - Click in the row below the last row of the Excel table.
 - Type the values for the new record, pressing the Tab key to move from field to field.
 - Press the Tab key to create another new record.
- or
- Press the Enter key if this is the last record.

TIP

As you type in a cell, AutoComplete displays any existing entry in the column that matches the characters you typed. Press the Tab key to accept the entry; continue typing to replace it.

AutoCorrect
Options button



ArtID	Artist	Title	Date Acquir	Category	Condition	Location	Appraised V
113	112 Tidwell	Untitled (man and crucifix)	5/13/2010	Textile	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 3,200
114	113 Gonzales	Dark Canyon	3/16/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 7,500
115	114 Mogan	Shadow House	1/5/2008	Painting	Good	East Pavilion	\$ 5,500
116	115 Mogan	Storytelling at the Campfire	1/19/2008	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 18,000
117	116						
118							



FINDING AND DELETING A RECORD

- Press the **Ctrl+Home** keys to move to the top of the worksheet, and then click the first cell of the table to make it active.
- In the Editing group on the Home tab, click the Find & Select button, and then click Find. The **Find and Replace dialog box** opens.
- Type in the Find what box the word you need to find, and then click the Find Next button. The cell which contains the word you typed is selected. This is the record you want. If it is not, you can click the Find Next button again to display the next record that meets the search criteria.
- Click the Close button. The Find and Replace dialog box closes.
- In the Cells group on the Home tab, click the Delete button arrow, and then click **Delete Table Rows**. The record is deleted from the table.

SORTING ONE COLUMN USING THE SORT BUTTONS

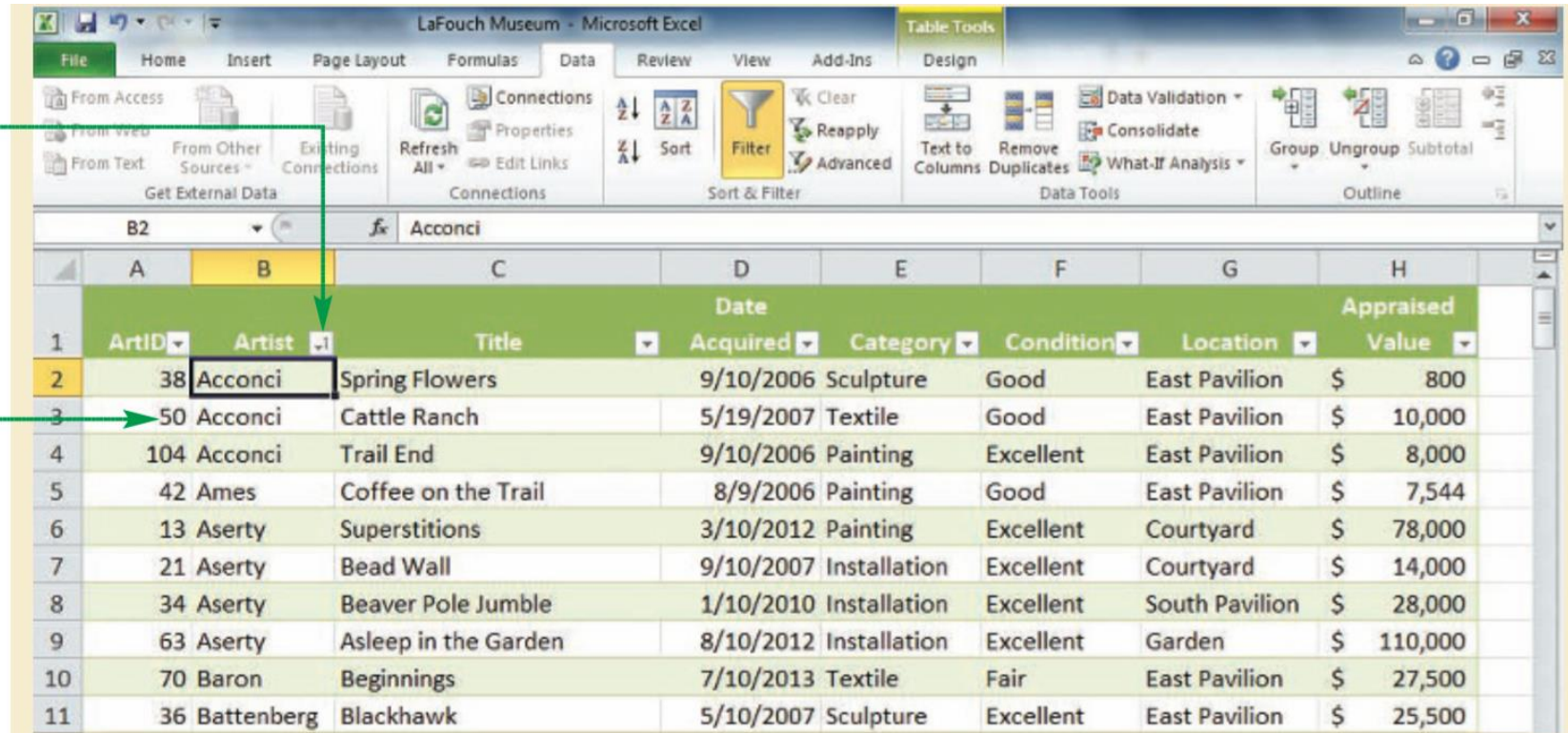
- Click any cell in the column. You do not need to select the entire table. Excel determines the table's range when you click any cell in the table.
- Click the Data tab on the Ribbon. The Data options appear on the Ribbon.
- In the Sort & Filter group, click the Sort A to Z button . The data is sorted in ascending order .

arrow changes to a
sort icon

art objects appear in
alphabetical order
by the artists' names

TIP

You can also click the
Sort & Filter button in
the Editing group on the
Home tab, and then click a
sort option.



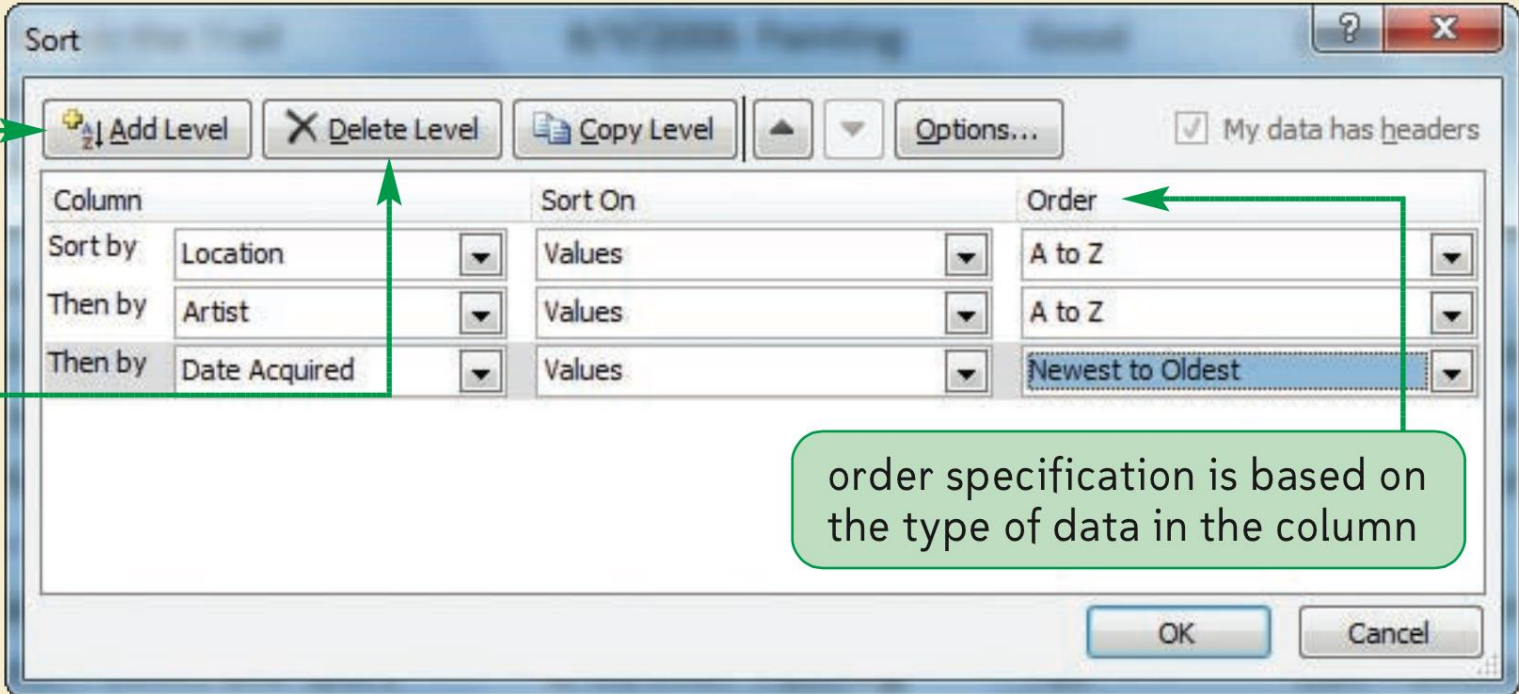
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
	ArtID	Artist	Title	Acquired	Category	Condition	Location	Value
1								
2	38	Acconci	Spring Flowers	9/10/2006	Sculpture	Good	East Pavilion	\$ 800
3	50	Acconci	Cattle Ranch	5/19/2007	Textile	Good	East Pavilion	\$ 10,000
4	104	Acconci	Trail End	9/10/2006	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 8,000
5	42	Ames	Coffee on the Trail	8/9/2006	Painting	Good	East Pavilion	\$ 7,544
6	13	Aserty	Superstitions	3/10/2012	Painting	Excellent	Courtyard	\$ 78,000
7	21	Aserty	Bead Wall	9/10/2007	Installation	Excellent	Courtyard	\$ 14,000
8	34	Aserty	Beaver Pole Jumble	1/10/2010	Installation	Excellent	South Pavilion	\$ 28,000
9	63	Aserty	Asleep in the Garden	8/10/2012	Installation	Excellent	Garden	\$ 110,000
10	70	Baron	Beginnings	7/10/2013	Textile	Fair	East Pavilion	\$ 27,500
11	36	Battenberg	Blackhawk	5/10/2007	Sculpture	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 25,500



SORTING DATA USING MULTIPLE SORT FIELDS

- Click any cell in a table or range.
- In the **Sort & Filter group on the Data tab**, click the Sort button.
- If necessary, click the Add Level button to insert the Sort by row.
- Click the Sort by arrow, select the column heading for the primary sort field, click the Sort On arrow to select the type of data, and then click the Order arrow to select the sort order.
- To sort by a second column, click the Add Level button. Click the Then by arrow, select the column heading for the secondary sort field, click the Sort On arrow to select the type of data, and then click the Order arrow to select the sort order.
- To sort by additional columns, click the Add Level button and select appropriate Then by, Sort On, and Order values.
- Click the OK button.

SORTING DATA USING MULTIPLE SORT FIELDS



The screenshot shows the 'Sort' dialog box in Microsoft Excel 2010. The dialog has a title bar 'Sort' and a close button. It contains several buttons at the top: 'Add Level' (with a plus icon), 'Delete Level' (with an X icon), 'Copy Level' (with a document icon), and 'Options...'. There is also a checkbox 'My data has headers' which is checked. Below these buttons is a table with three columns: 'Column', 'Sort On', and 'Order'. The table has three rows. The first row is 'Sort by' with 'Location' in the 'Column' column, 'Values' in the 'Sort On' column, and 'A to Z' in the 'Order' column. The second row is 'Then by' with 'Artist' in the 'Column' column, 'Values' in the 'Sort On' column, and 'A to Z' in the 'Order' column. The third row is 'Then by' with 'Date Acquired' in the 'Column' column, 'Values' in the 'Sort On' column, and 'Newest to Oldest' in the 'Order' column. The 'Date Acquired' row is highlighted. At the bottom are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons. Three green callout boxes with arrows point to specific parts of the dialog: one points to the 'Add Level' button with the text 'click to add a sort field'; another points to the 'Delete Level' button with the text 'click to delete the selected sort field'; and a third points to the 'Order' column of the third row with the text 'order specification is based on the type of data in the column'.

click to add a sort field

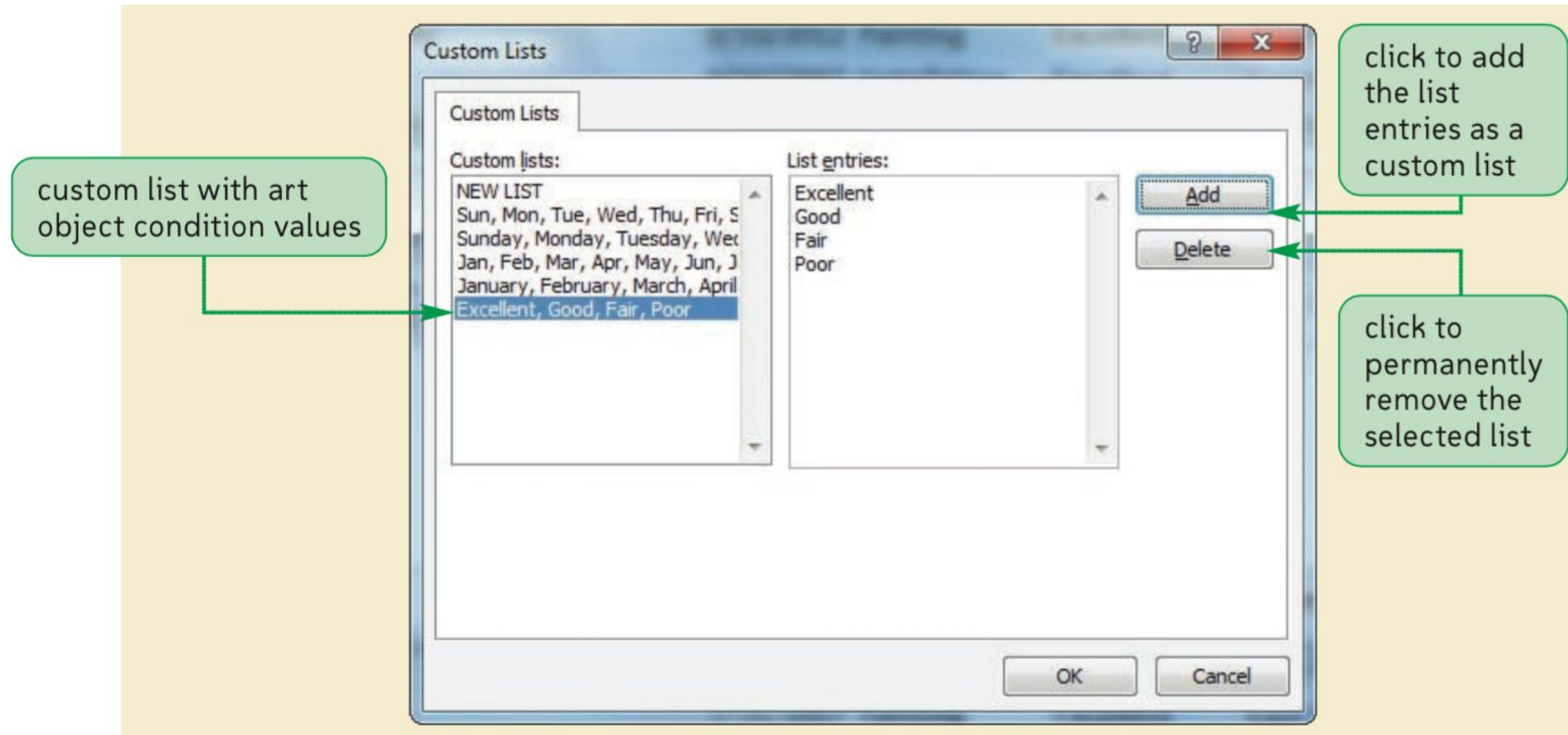
click to delete the selected sort field

order specification is based on the type of data in the column

SORTING USING A CUSTOM LIST

- Text is sorted in ascending or descending alphabetical order unless you specify a different order using a custom list. A custom list indicates the sequence in which you want data ordered.
- Excel provides four predefined custom sort lists. Two days-of-the-week custom lists (Sun, Mon, Tues, ... and Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, ...) and two months-of-the-year custom lists (Jan, Feb, Mar, Apr, ... and January, February, March, April, ...). If a column consists of day or month labels, you can sort them in their correct chronological order using one of these predefined custom lists.
- You can also create custom lists to sort records in a sequence you define. For example, you may want to create a custom list to arrange art objects based on their condition, with the top quality condition appearing first, as follows: Excellent, Good, Fair, Poor.
 - In the Sort & Filter group on the Data tab, click the Sort button.
 - Click the Order arrow, and then click Custom List.
 - In the List entries box, type each entry for the custom list, pressing the Enter key after each entry.
 - Click the Add button.
 - Click the OK button.

SORTING USING A CUSTOM LIST



FILTERING USING ONE COLUMN

- When you create an Excel table, a filter arrow appears in each column header. You click a filter arrow to open the **AutoFilter menu** for that field. You can use options on the AutoFilter menu to create three types of filters. You can filter a column of data by its cell colors or font colors; by a specific text, number, or date filter, although the choices depend on the type of data in the column; or by selecting the exact values by which you want to filter in the column. After you filter a column, the **Clear Filter** command becomes available so you can remove the filter and redisplay all the records.
- You can **display or hide filter arrows** for an Excel table or a range of data by using the Filter button in the Sort & Filter group on the Data tab.
- The AutoFilter menu also includes options to **Sort by Color** and **Filter by Color**. These options enable you to filter and sort data using color, one of many cell attributes. Suppose that you use specific cell background colors for certain records in a table. You can then click the Sort by Color option in the AutoFilter menu to display a list of available colors by which to sort, and then click the specific color so that all the records formatted with it will appear together.

FILTERING USING ONE COLUMN

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	ArtID	Artist	Title	Date	Category	Condition	Location	Appraised Value
2	13	Aserty	Superstitions			Excellent	Courtyard	\$ 78,000
3	21	Aserty	Bead Wall			Excellent	Courtyard	\$ 14,000
4	53	Bindner	Blue Eyed Indian			Excellent	Courtyard	\$ 40,000
5	4	Roman	Seeking Shelter			Excellent	Courtyard	\$ 52,000
6	66	Waid	Untitled (still life)			Excellent	Courtyard	\$ 19,500
7	104	Acconci	Trail End			Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 8,000
8	36	Battenberg	Blackhawk			Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 25,500
9	17	Bindner	Brittlecone			Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 1,300
10	56	Bindner	Cavalry Is Coming			Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 1,900
11	18	Blum	Mountain Scene			Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 2,500
12	55	Budd	Starlit Evening			Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 9,500
13	97	Cardenas	Ceremonial Sticks			Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 15,000
14	3	Chico	Spring Flowers			Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 2,400
15	103	Cox	Crying Hats			Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 10,000
16	59	Dawson	Dwelling			Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 16,000
17	5	DiGrigoro	The Hang	7/16/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 8,000

If the list is long you can enter the item you want to find in the Search box

unique items in the Category column

FILTERING USING ONE COLUMN

icon indicates that this column is being used to filter the table

row numbers of the filtered records are blue

only records with a category value of "Painting" are displayed

status bar indicates the number of records displayed

	ArtID	Artist	Title	Date Acquired	Category	Condition	Location	Appraised Value
2	13	Aserty	Superstitions	3/10/2012	Painting	Excellent	Courtyard	\$ 78,000
4	53	Bindner	Blue Eyed Indian	1/10/2012	Painting	Excellent	Courtyard	\$ 40,000
6	66	Waid	Untitled (still life)	4/13/2011	Painting	Excellent	Courtyard	\$ 19,500
7	104	Acconci	Trail End	9/10/2006	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 8,000
12	55	Budd	Starlit Evening	1/10/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 9,500
13	97	Cardenas	Ceremonial Sticks	7/23/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 15,000
15	103	Cox	Crying Hats	7/11/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 10,000
16	59	Dawson	Dwelling	3/16/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 16,000
17	5	DiGrigoro	The Hang	7/16/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 8,000
19	110	Fratt	Friends	10/18/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 16,000
21	72	Garin	Funnel	5/18/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 4,500
23	113	Gonzales	Dark Canyon	3/16/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 7,500
27	41	Hamend	Night Version	1/16/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 3,800
28	29	Hofmann	Horseshoe Falls	8/16/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 15,000
29	31	Ingraham	Inside/Out	12/16/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 3,500
31	51	Kerrihard	Night Version	1/16/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 7,000
32	88	Kollasch	Lessons	4/16/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 3,700
35	107	Long	Horse Corral	2/16/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 12,500

EXPLORING TEXT FILTERS

- You can use different text filters to display the records you want. If you know only part of a text value or if you want to match a certain pattern, you can use the **Begins With**, **Ends With**, and **Contains** operators to filter a text field to match the pattern you specify.
- The following examples are based on a student directory table that includes First Name, Last Name, Address, City, State, and Zip fields:
 - To find a student named Smith, Smithe, or Smythe, create a text filter using the Begins With operator. In this example, use “Begins With Sm” to display all records that have “Sm” at the beginning of the text value.
 - To Find anyone whose Last Name ends in “son” (such as Robertson, Anderson, Dawson, Gibson, and so forth), create a text filter using the Ends With operator. In this example, use “Ends With son” to display all records that have “son” as the last characters in the text value.
 - To find anyone whose street address includes “Central” (such as 101 Central Ave., 1024 Central Road, or 457 Avenue De Central), create a text filter using the Contains operator. In this example, use “Contains Central” to display all records that have “Central” anywhere in the text value.
- When you create a text filter, think about the results you want. Then, consider what text filter you can use to best achieve those results.

FILTERING USING MULTIPLE COLUMNS

- If you need to further restrict the records that appear in a filtered table, you can filter by one or more of the other columns. Each additional filter is applied to the currently filtered data and further reduces the records that are displayed.

icons indicate that these columns are being used to filter the table

three paintings are in poor condition

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
	ArtID	Artist	Title	Date Acquired	Category	Condition	Location	Appraised Value
112	77	Bindner	Bull Riding	9/10/2007	Painting	Poor	East Pavilion	\$ 5,200
113	52	Curtis	American Rodeo	5/15/2007	Painting	Poor	East Pavilion	\$ 3,500
114	68	Mogan	Moonlight	1/9/2008	Painting	Poor	East Pavilion	\$ 9,750
118								

CLEARING FILTERS

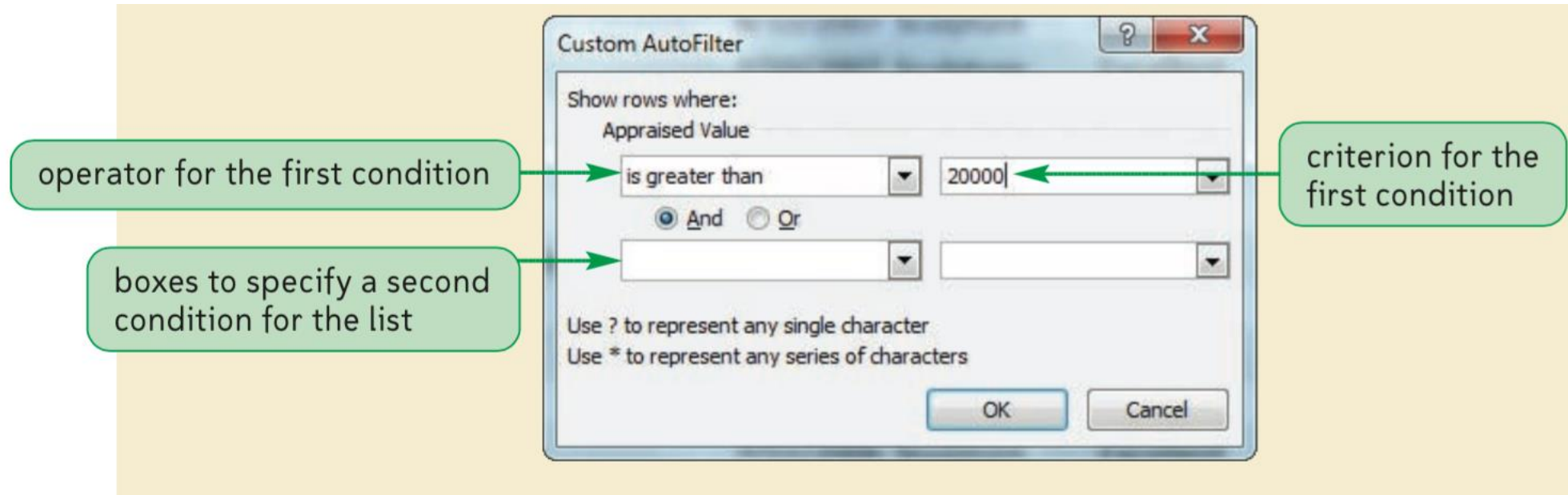
- When you want to redisplay all of the data in a filtered table, you need to clear (or remove) the filters. When you clear a filter from a column, any other filters are still applied. To Clear a filter from a table, click the respective filter arrow, and then click Clear Filter From “x”.

CREATING CRITERIA FILTERS TO SPECIFY MORE COMPLEX CRITERIA



- Filter items enable you to filter a range of data or an Excel table based on exact values in a column. However, many times you need broader criteria.
- **Criteria filters** enable you to **specify various conditions** in addition to those that are based on an “equals” criterion. For example, you might want to find all art objects with an appraised value greater than \$20,000 or those that were acquired after 7/1/2011. You use criteria filters to create these conditions.
- The type of criteria filters available change depending on whether the data in a column contains text, numbers, or dates.
- To create a number filter:
 - Click the filter arrow in the respective column, and then point to Number Filters. A menu opens, displaying the comparison operators available for columns of numbers.
 - Click, for example, Greater Than. The Custom AutoFilter dialog box opens. The upper-left box lists is greater than, the comparison operator you want to use to filter the column.
 - You enter the value you want to use for the filter criteria in the upper-right box, which, let’s say, is \$20,000. Type 20000 in the upper-right box.
 - You use the lower set of boxes if you want the filter to meet a second condition.
 - You click the And option button to display rows that meet both criteria.
 - You click the Or option button to display rows that meet either of the two criteria.

CREATING CRITERIA FILTERS TO SPECIFY MORE COMPLEX CRITERIA



OPTIONS FOR TEXT, NUMBER, AND DATE CRITERIA FILTERS

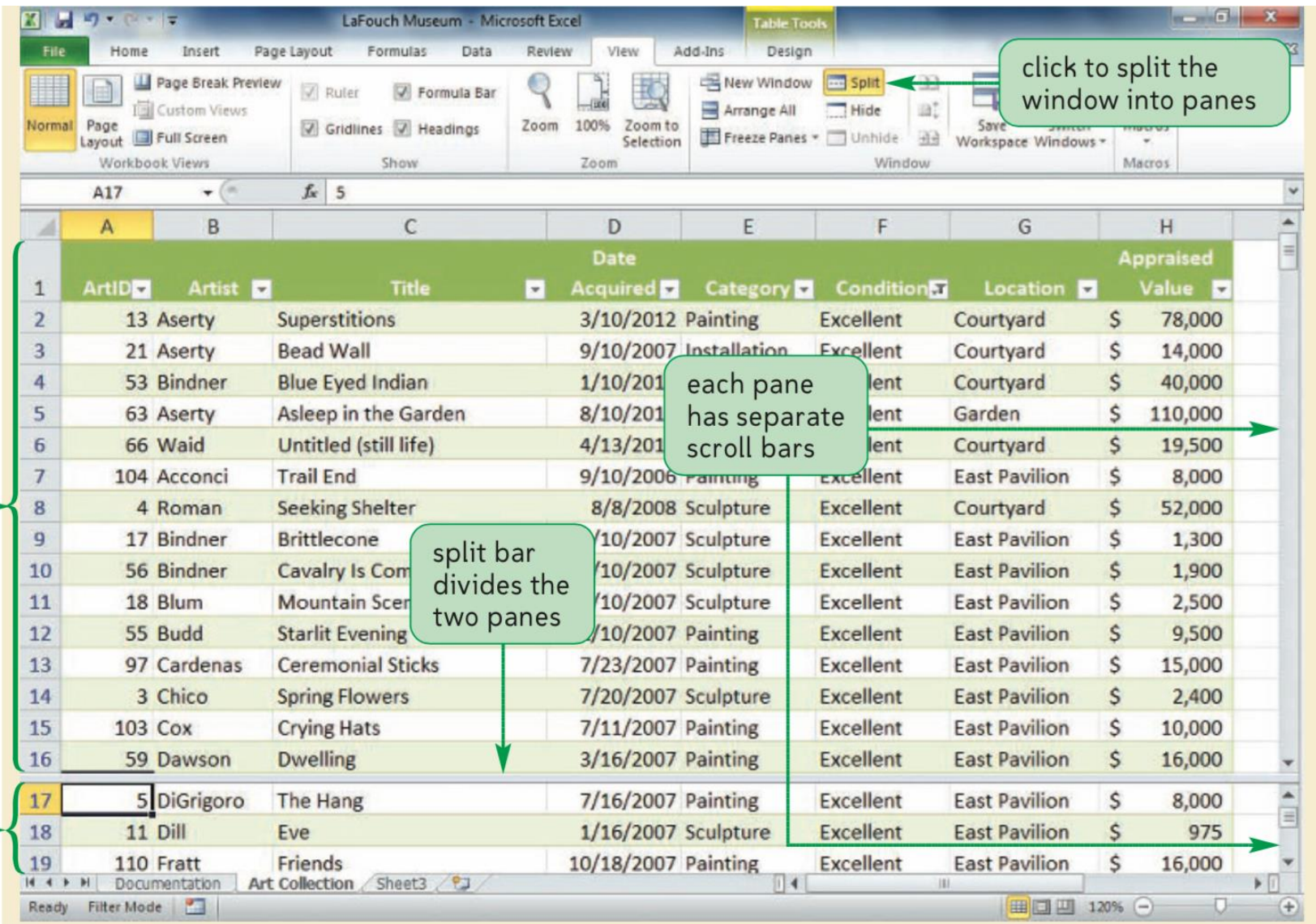


Filter	Criteria	Records Displayed
Text	Equals	Exactly match the specified text string
	Does Not Equal	Do not exactly match the specified text string
	Begins With	Begin with the specified text string
	Ends With	End with the specified text string
	Contains	Have the specified text string anywhere
	Does Not Contain	Do not have the specified text string anywhere
Number	Equals	Exactly match the specified number
	Greater Than or Equal to	Are greater than or equal to the specified number
	Less Than	Are less than the specified number
	Between	Are greater than or equal to <i>and</i> less than or equal to the specified numbers
	Top 10	Are the top or bottom 10 (or the specified number)
	Above Average	Are greater than the average
Date	Today	Have the current date
	Last Week	Are in the prior week
	Next Month	Are in the month following the current month
	Last Quarter	Are in the previous quarter of the year (quarters defined Jan, Feb, Mar; Apr, May, June; and so on)
	Year to Date	Are since January 1 of the current year to the current date
	Last Year	Are in the previous year (based on the current date)

SPLITTING THE WORKSHEET WINDOW INTO PANES

- You **can split the worksheet window into two or four separate panes**. This allows you to easily view data from several areas of the worksheet at the same time. Each pane has its own scroll bars so you can navigate easily within one pane or display different parts of the worksheet. You can move between panes using the mouse.
 - Press the Ctrl+Home keys to jump to the top of the table, and then click the cell which you want to be the first cell included in the second separate pane.
 - Click the View tab on the Ribbon, and then click the Split button in the Window group. The worksheet window splits into two panes. Each pane has its own set of scroll bars.
- **To remove the split panes** from the worksheet window:
 - Click the View tab on the Ribbon.
 - In the Window group, click the Split button. The split bar is removed, and the worksheet is again a single window.
- You can also double-click the split bar to remove the panes.

SPLITTING THE WORKSHEET WINDOW INTO PANES



click to split the window into panes

top horizontal pane

bottom horizontal pane

split bar divides the two panes

each pane has separate scroll bars

	ArtID	Artist	Title	Date Acquired	Category	Condition	Location	Appraised Value
1								
2	13	Aserty	Superstitions	3/10/2012	Painting	Excellent	Courtyard	\$ 78,000
3	21	Aserty	Bead Wall	9/10/2007	Installation	Excellent	Courtyard	\$ 14,000
4	53	Bindner	Blue Eyed Indian	1/10/201	Painting	Excellent	Courtyard	\$ 40,000
5	63	Aserty	Asleep in the Garden	8/10/201	Painting	Excellent	Garden	\$ 110,000
6	66	Waid	Untitled (still life)	4/13/201	Painting	Excellent	Courtyard	\$ 19,500
7	104	Acconci	Trail End	9/10/2006	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 8,000
8	4	Roman	Seeking Shelter	8/8/2008	Sculpture	Excellent	Courtyard	\$ 52,000
9	17	Bindner	Brittlecone	1/10/2007	Sculpture	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 1,300
10	56	Bindner	Cavalry Is Com	1/10/2007	Sculpture	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 1,900
11	18	Blum	Mountain Scer	1/10/2007	Sculpture	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 2,500
12	55	Budd	Starlit Evening	1/10/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 9,500
13	97	Cardenas	Ceremonial Sticks	7/23/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 15,000
14	3	Chico	Spring Flowers	7/20/2007	Sculpture	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 2,400
15	103	Cox	Crying Hats	7/11/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 10,000
16	59	Dawson	Dwelling	3/16/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 16,000
17	5	DiGrigoro	The Hang	7/16/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 8,000
18	11	Dill	Eve	1/16/2007	Sculpture	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 975
19	110	Fratt	Friends	10/18/2007	Painting	Excellent	East Pavilion	\$ 16,000

WRITTEN COMMUNICATION: SUMMARIZING DATA WITH A PIVOTTABLE

- PivotTables are **a great way to summarize data** from selected fields of an Excel table or range, which can help you back up or support specific points in written documents. The PivotTable omits all the detailed data, enabling readers to focus on the bigger picture. This makes it easier for readers to understand the results and gain insights about the topic.
- You can show summaries in written documents based on function results in PivotTables. The SUM function is probably the most frequently used function. For example, you might show the total sales for a region. However, you can use many other functions to summarize the data, including COUNT, AVERAGE, MIN, MAX, PRODUCT, COUNT NUMBERS, STDEV, STDEVP, VAR, and VARP. For example, you might show the average sales for a region, the minimum price of a product, or a count of the number of products sold.
- When you write a report, you want **supporting data to be presented in the way that best communicates your points**. With PivotTables, you display the values in different views. For example, to compare one item to another item in the PivotTable, you can show the values as a percentage of a total. You can display the data in each row as a percentage of the total for the row. You can also display the data in each column as a percentage of the total for the column or display the data as a percentage of the grand total of all the data in the PivotTable. Viewing data as a percentage of the total is useful for analyses such as comparing product sales with total sales within a region or comparing expense categories to total expenses for the year

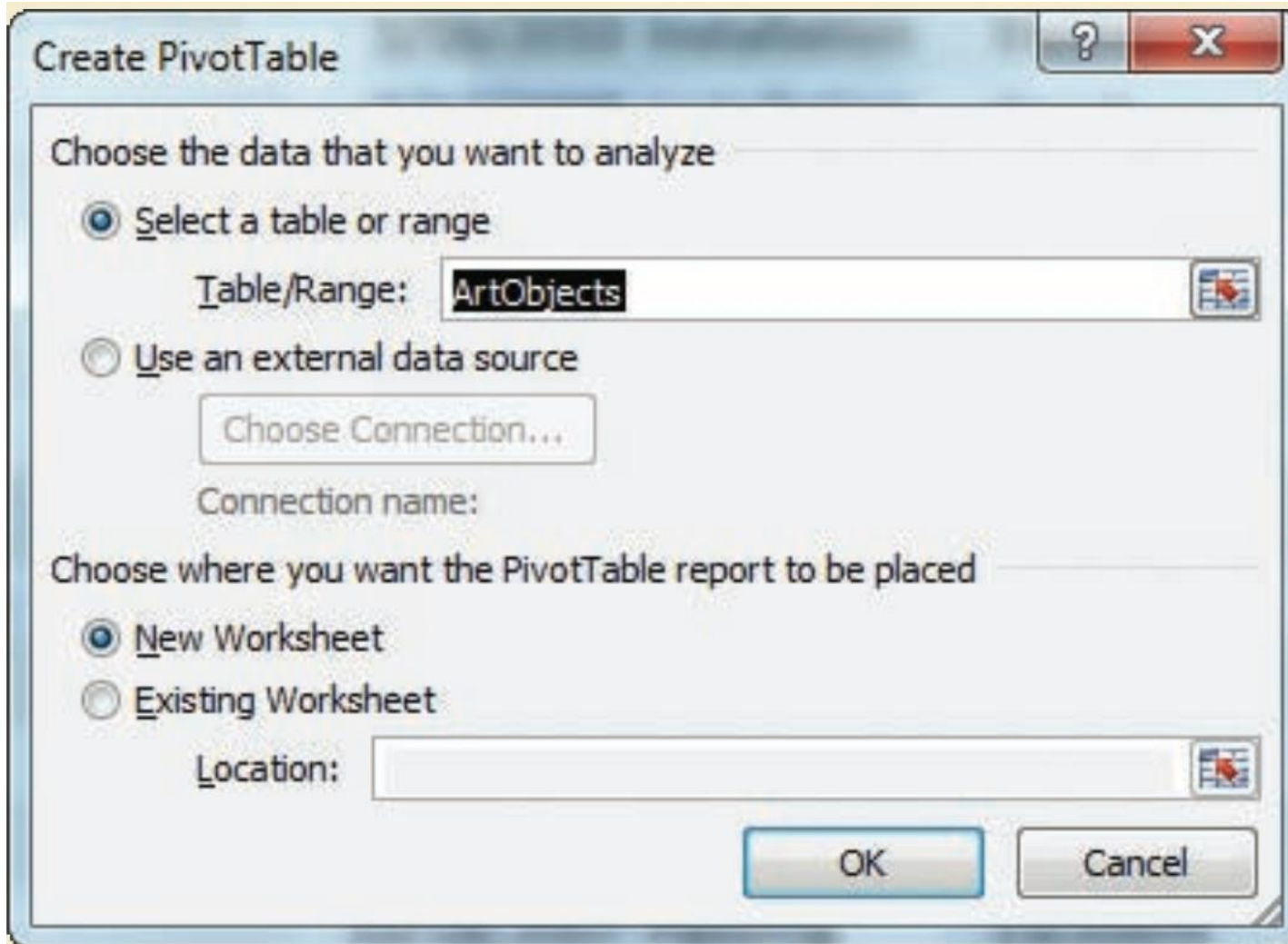
ANALYZING DATA WITH PIVOTTABLES

- As you can see, PivotTables provide great **flexibility in how you analyze and display data**. This makes it easier to present data in a way that highlights and supports the points you are communicating, making your written documents much more effective.
- To create a PivotTable report, you need to specify which fields in the data source to summarize.
- In PivotTable terminology, the fields that contain summary data are known as **values fields**.
- **Category fields** are the fields that group the values in a PivotTable, such as condition, location, and year acquired. Category fields appear in PivotTables as row labels, column labels, and report filters, which allows you to focus on a subset of the PivotTable by displaying one, several, or all items.
- You can easily rearrange, hide, and display different category fields in the PivotTable to provide alternative views of the data. This ability to “pivot” the table—for example, change row headings to column positions and vice versa—gives the PivotTable its name and makes it a powerful analytical tool.

CREATING A PIVOTTABLE

- To create a PivotTable, you will use the **PivotTable dialog box** to select the data to analyze and the location of the PivotTable report.
- When you create a PivotTable, you need to **specify where to find the data** for the PivotTable. The data can be in an Excel table or range in the current workbook or an external data source such as an Access database file.
- You also **specify whether to place the PivotTable** in a new or an existing worksheet. If you place the PivotTable in an existing worksheet, you must also specify the cell in which you want the upper-left corner of the PivotTable to appear.
 - Click in the Excel table or select the range of data for the PivotTable.
 - In the Tables group on the Insert tab, click the PivotTable button.
 - Click the Select a table or range option button and verify the reference in the Table/Range box.
 - Click the New Worksheet option button or click the Existing Worksheet option button and specify a cell. Click the OK button.
 - Click the check boxes for the fields you want to add to the PivotTable (or drag fields to the appropriate box in the layout section).
 - If needed, drag fields to different boxes in the layout section.
- You can also create a PivotTable by clicking the Summarize with PivotTable button in the Tools group on the Table Tools Design tab.

CREATING A PIVOTTABLE



The image shows the 'Create PivotTable' dialog box in Microsoft Excel 2010. The dialog has a title bar with a question mark and a close button. It is divided into two main sections. The first section, 'Choose the data that you want to analyze', has two radio buttons: 'Select a table or range' (which is selected) and 'Use an external data source'. Below the first radio button is a text box labeled 'Table/Range:' containing the text 'ArtObjects'. To the right of this text box is a small icon of a table. Below the second radio button is a button labeled 'Choose Connection...'. Below this button is a text box labeled 'Connection name:'. The second section, 'Choose where you want the PivotTable report to be placed', has two radio buttons: 'New Worksheet' (which is selected) and 'Existing Worksheet'. Below the 'Existing Worksheet' radio button is a text box labeled 'Location:'. To the right of this text box is a small icon of a table. At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: 'OK' and 'Cancel'.

Create PivotTable

Choose the data that you want to analyze

☒ Select a table or range

Table/Range: ArtObjects

☐ Use an external data source

Choose Connection...

Connection name:

Choose where you want the PivotTable report to be placed

☒ New Worksheet

☐ Existing Worksheet

Location:

OK Cancel

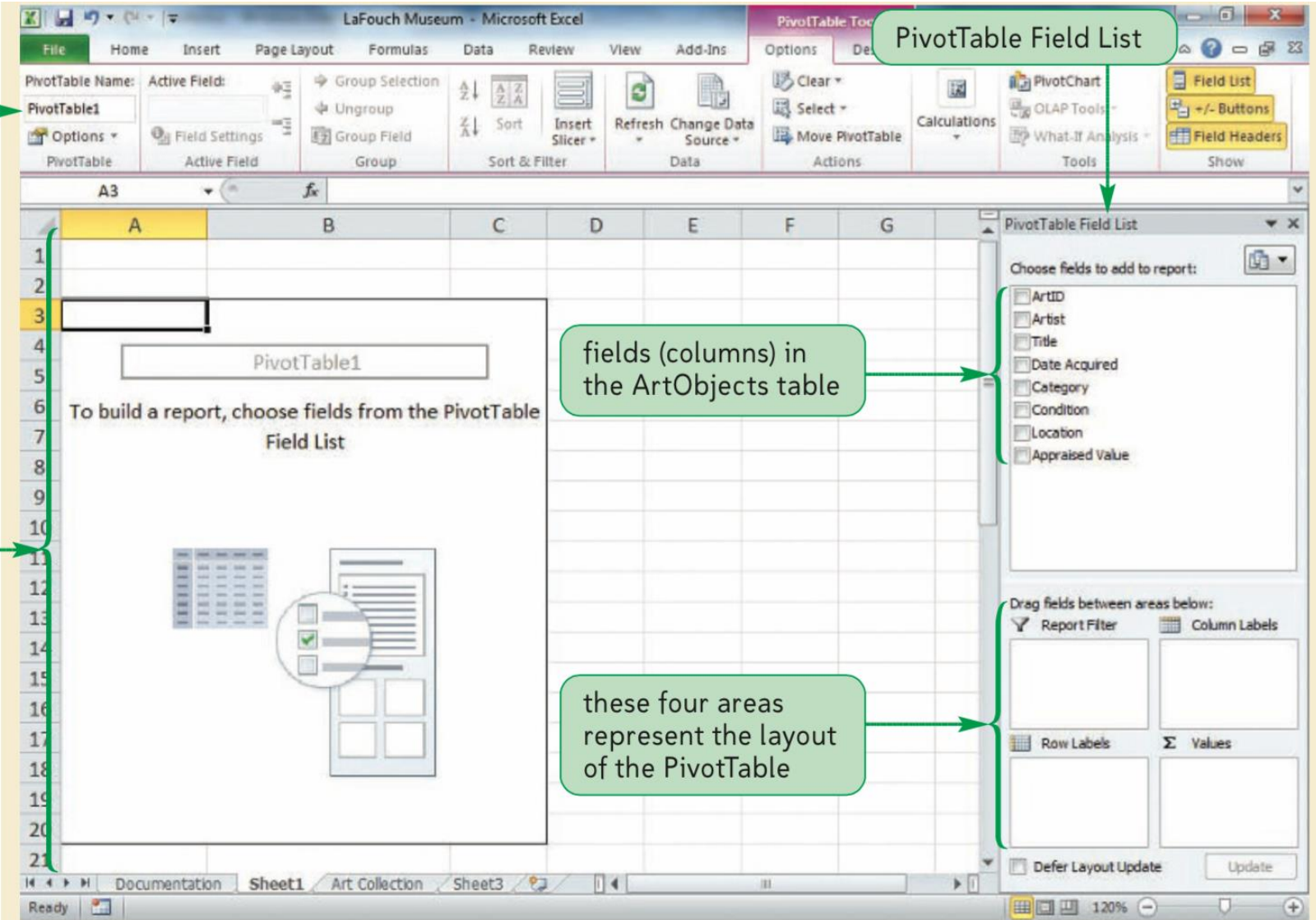
CREATING A PIVOTTABLE

- The PivotTable Field List is divided into two sections.
 - The upper field list section displays the names of each field in the table. You check a field check box to add that field to the PivotTable.
 - The lower layout section includes boxes for the four areas in which you can place fields: Report Filter, Row Labels, Column Labels, and Values.

Layout Area	Description
Row Labels	The fields you want to display as the rows in the PivotTable. One row is displayed for each unique item in this area. You can have nested row fields.
Column Labels	The fields you want to display as columns at the top of the PivotTable. One column is displayed for each unique item in this area. You can have nested column fields.
Report Filter	A field used to filter the report by selecting one or more items, enabling you to display a subset of data in a PivotTable report.
Values	The fields you want to summarize.

- Initially, selected fields with numeric data are placed in the Values area and the SUM function is used to summarize the PivotTable. Fields with nonnumeric data are placed in the Row Labels area. You can change these default placements of fields.

CREATING A PIVOTTABLE



you can enter a name for the PivotTable

PivotTable1

PivotTable Field List

fields (columns) in the ArtObjects table

PivotTable report area

these four areas represent the layout of the PivotTable

Choose fields to add to report:

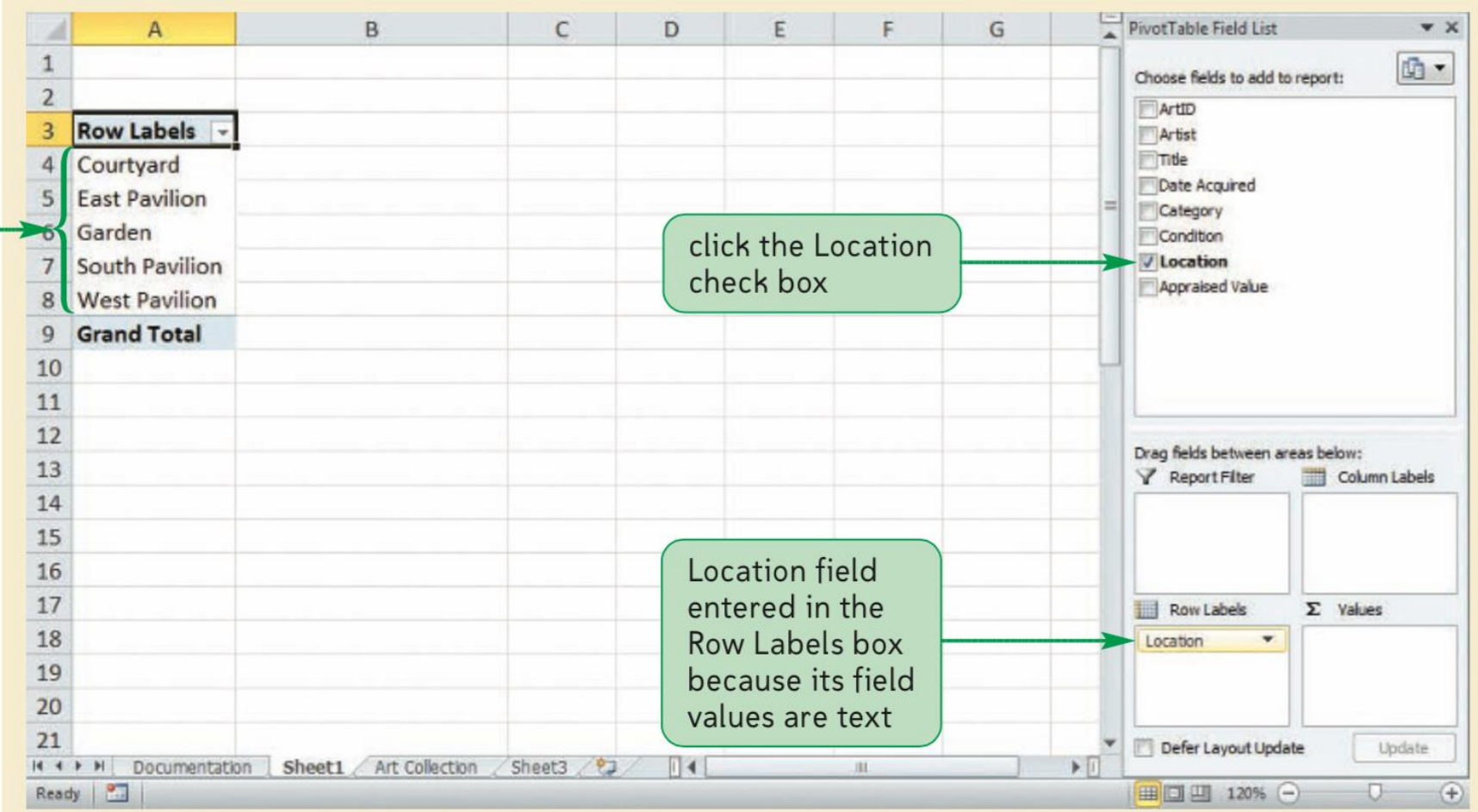
- ☐ ArtID
- ☐ Artist
- ☐ Title
- ☐ Date Acquired
- ☐ Category
- ☐ Condition
- ☐ Location
- ☐ Appraised Value

Drag fields between areas below:

Report Filter	Column Labels
Row Labels	Values

Defer Layout Update Update

CREATING A PIVOTTABLE



Location field values entered as the row labels in the PivotTable

click the Location check box

Location field entered in the Row Labels box because its field values are text

PivotTable Field List

Choose fields to add to report:

- ☐ ArtID
- ☐ Artist
- ☐ Title
- ☐ Date Acquired
- ☐ Category
- ☐ Condition
- ☒ Location
- ☐ Appraised Value

Drag fields between areas below:

Report Filter

Column Labels

Row Labels

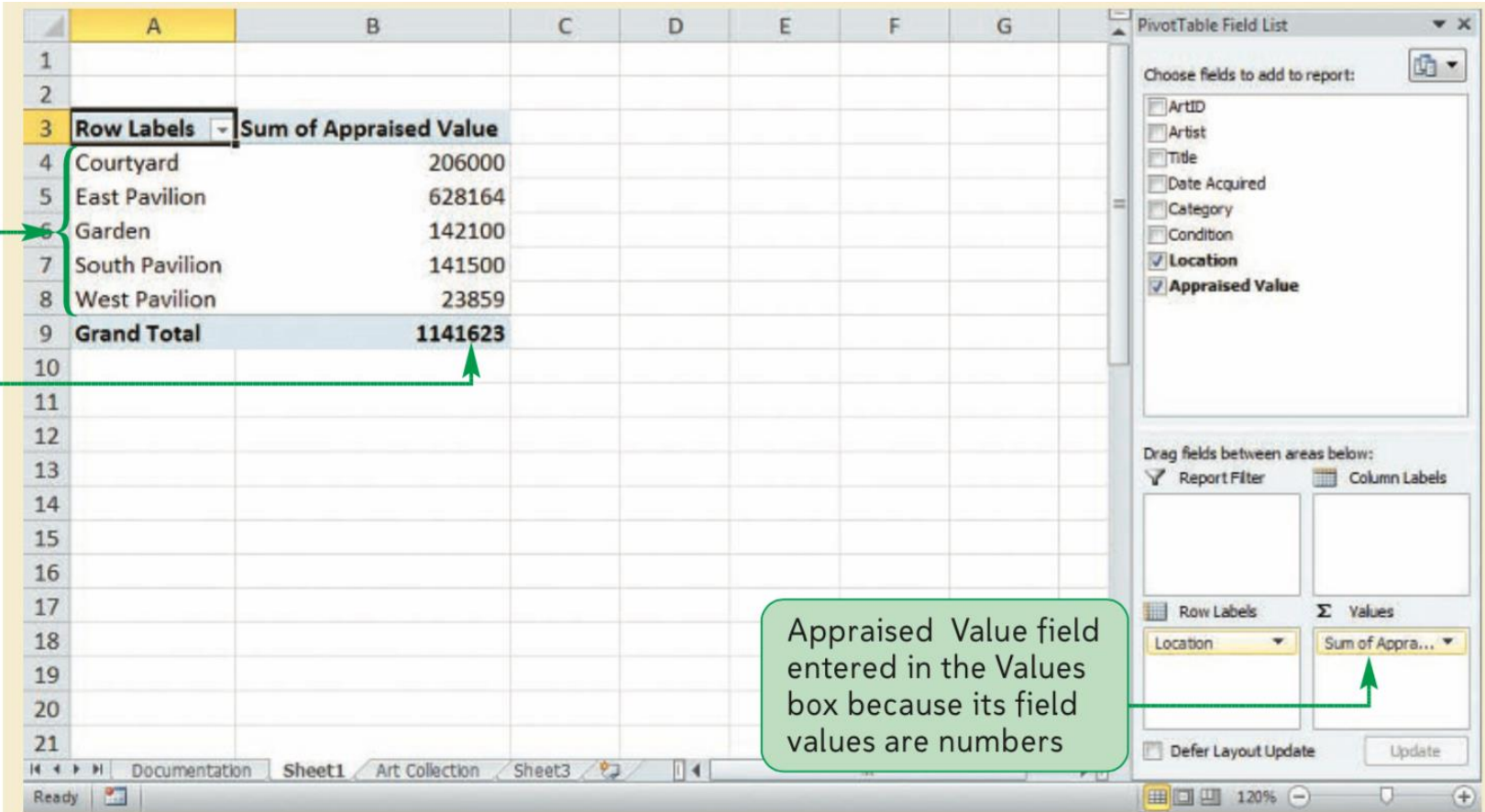
Location

Values

Defer Layout Update

Update

CREATING A PIVOTTABLE



total appraised value of all the art objects in each location

grand total of the appraised value of the art objects in all locations

Appraised Value field entered in the Values box because its field values are numbers

Row Labels	Sum of Appraised Value
Courtyard	206000
East Pavilion	628164
Garden	142100
South Pavilion	141500
West Pavilion	23859
Grand Total	1141623

PivotTable Field List

Choose fields to add to report:

- ☐ ArtID
- ☐ Artist
- ☐ Title
- ☐ Date Acquired
- ☐ Category
- ☐ Condition
- ☒ Location
- ☒ Appraised Value

Drag fields between areas below:

Report Filter

Column Labels

Row Labels: Location

Σ Values: Sum of Appra...

Defer Layout Update

Update

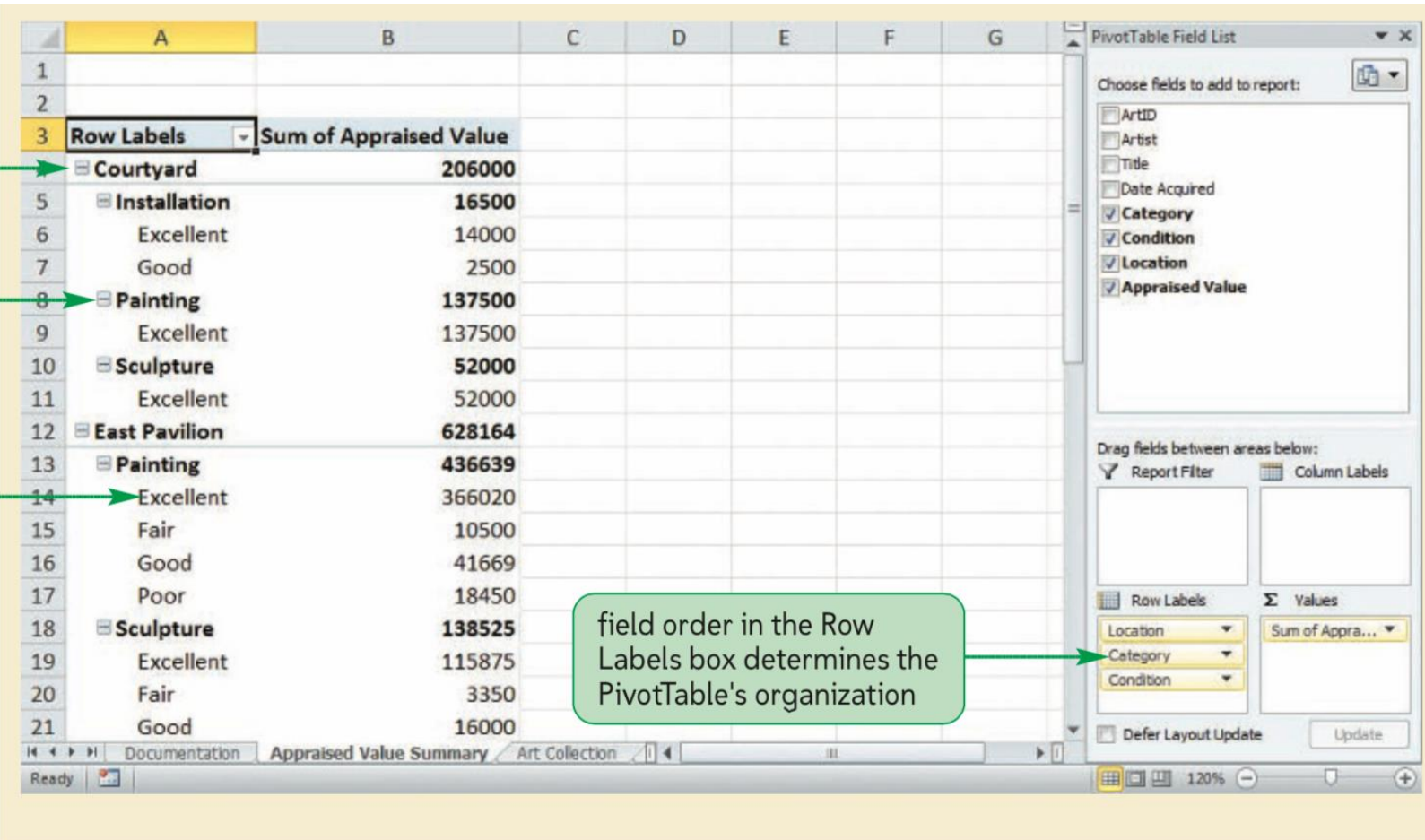
CREATING A PIVOTTABLE

objects organized first by location

objects organized within each location by category

objects organized within each category by condition

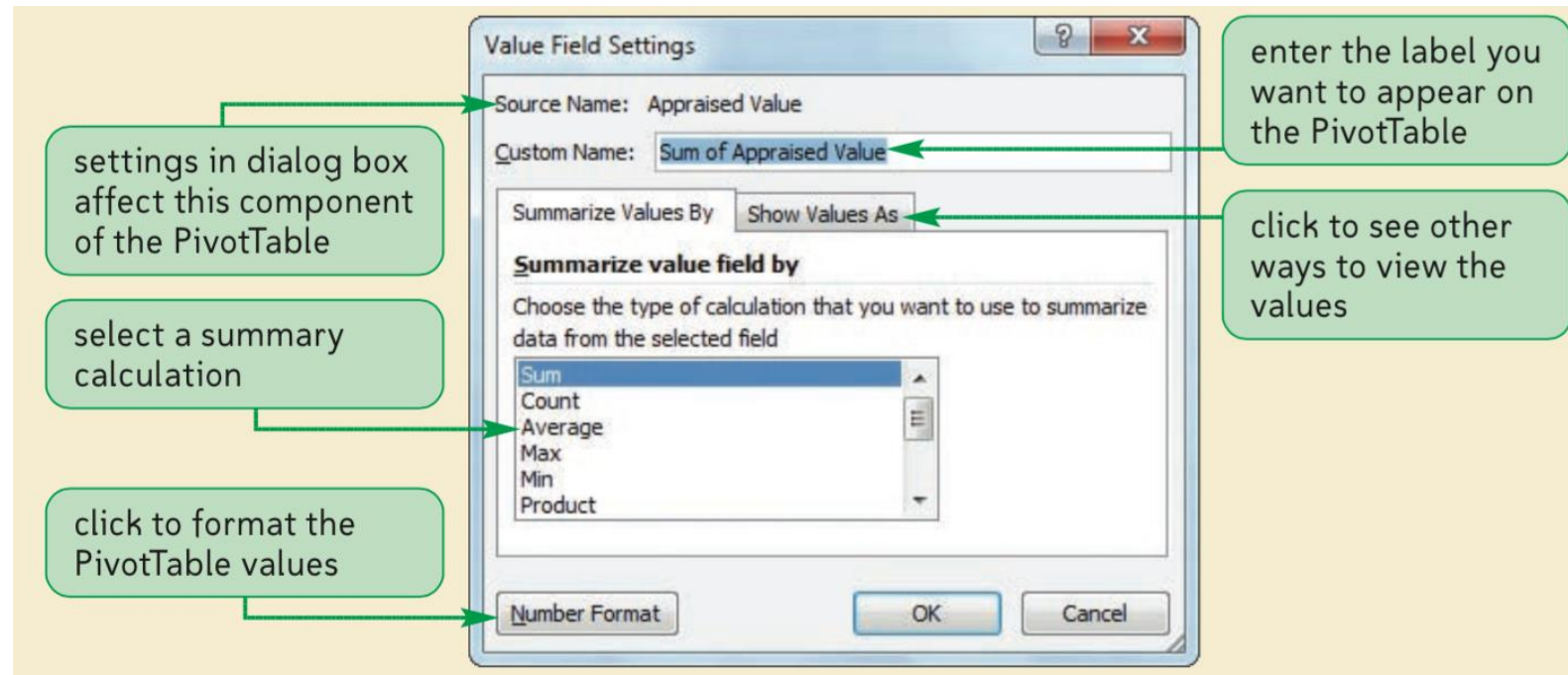
field order in the Row Labels box determines the PivotTable's organization



Row Labels	Sum of Appraised Value
Courtyard	206000
Installation	16500
Excellent	14000
Good	2500
Painting	137500
Excellent	137500
Sculpture	52000
Excellent	52000
East Pavilion	628164
Painting	436639
Excellent	366020
Fair	10500
Good	41669
Poor	18450
Sculpture	138525
Excellent	115875
Fair	3350
Good	16000

CREATING A PIVOTTABLE

- By default, the PivotTable report uses the SUM function for numbers in the Values area and the COUNT function for text and other nonnumeric values.
- **If you want a different summary function**, such as AVERAGE, MAX, or MIN, click the appropriate button in the Values box (in this case, the button is called “Sum of Appraised Value”) in the PivotTable Field List, and then click Value Field Settings. The Value Field Settings dialog box opens. You can then select the type of calculation you want from the list of available functions, and then click the OK button.



TIP

You can use the Summarize Values By tab to change the SUM function to a different summary function, such as AVERAGE. The name is updated to reflect your selection.

CREATING A PIVOTTABLE

- As with worksheet cells and Excel tables, you can **quickly format a PivotTable report** using a preset style. You can choose from a gallery of PivotTable styles similar to the gallery of Table styles. You can point to any style in the gallery to see a Live Preview of the PivotTable with that style applied. You also can modify the appearance of PivotTables by adding or removing banded rows, banded columns, row headers, and column headers.
- You can **add, remove, and rearrange fields** to change the PivotTable's layout. Recall that the benefit of a PivotTable is that it summarizes large amounts of data into a readable format. After you create a PivotTable, you can view the same data in different ways. The PivotTable Field List enables you to change, or pivot, the view of the data in the PivotTable by dragging the field buttons to different areas in the layout section.
- The **Compact report layout** places all fields from the row area in a single column and indents the items from each field below the outer fields. This is the default layout for PivotTable reports. You can choose two other layouts. In the **Outline report layout**, each field in the row area takes a column in the PivotTable. By default, the outline form shows the subtotals for each group at the top of every group. The **Tabular report layout** displays one column for each field and leaves space for column headers. A total for each group appears at the bottom of each group. You can find these report layout options on the **PivotTable Tools Design tab** in the **Layout group**.

CREATING DIFFERENT TYPES OF PIVOTTABLE REPORTS

- Most PivotTable summaries are based on numeric data, but PivotTables can also contain only non-numeric data. You cannot add **non-numeric data**, so you must use the COUNT function to produce summaries. For example, you could count the number of art objects by Location and Category.
- You can use PivotTables to **combine items into groups**. Items that appear as row labels or column labels can be grouped. If items are numbers or dates, they can be grouped automatically using the Grouping dialog box, or they can be grouped manually using the Ctrl key to select items in a group and choosing Group from the shortcut menu. For example, you can manually combine the Courtyard and Garden locations into an Outdoor group, combine the three pavilion locations into an Indoor group, and then provide counts or total appraised values by these groups within the PivotTable. Being able to combine categories that aren't part of your original data using the grouping feature gives you flexibility to summarize your PivotTables in a way that meets your analysis requirements.
- You can develop PivotTables using the value filter, which allows you to **filter one of your row or column fields in the PivotTable** based on numbers that appear in the Values area of the PivotTable. For example, a PivotTable can show the total value of art objects for each artist and be filtered to display only artists whose total is greater than \$25,000. Filtering provides you with a more precise way to view the PivotTable results by enabling you to include or remove data from the report.

ADDING A REPORT FILTER TO A PIVOTTABLE

- You can drag a field to the **Report Filter** area to create a filtered view of the PivotTable report. A report filter is used to filter the PivotTable to display summarized data for one or more field items or all field items in the Report Filter area.
 - In the PivotTable Field List, drag the field button you want from the Row Labels box to the Report Filter box. The Report Filter field item shows “All” to indicate that the PivotTable report displays all the summarized data associated with the specific field.
 - Click the report filter arrow. The AutoFilter menu opens, showing the field items displayed.
 - Click an option in the AutoFilter menu, and then click the OK button. The PivotTable displays the data filtered according to the option you have made.
 - The report filter arrow changes to an icon to indicate the PivotTable is currently filtered.
 - To filter more than one item at a time, click the Select Multiple Items check box in the AutoFilter menu to add a check mark next to each item, and then uncheck items you don’t want to include.

ADDING A REPORT FILTER TO A PIVOTTABLE

PivotTable shows
all the values in
the Location field

The screenshot shows an Excel 2010 interface with a PivotTable and the PivotTable Field List task pane. The PivotTable is filtered by Location. The task pane shows 'Location' moved to the Report Filter box.

Location	(All)					
Total Appraised Value	Column Labels					
Row Labels	Excellent	Good	Fair	Poor	Grand Total	
Installation	\$185,000	\$2,500			\$187,500	
Painting	\$612,020	\$41,669	\$10,500	\$18,450	\$682,639	
Sculpture	\$194,292	\$16,300	\$3,942	\$3,950	\$218,484	
Textile	\$7,400	\$18,100	\$27,500		\$53,000	
Grand Total	\$998,712	\$78,569	\$41,942	\$22,400	\$1,141,623	

PivotTable Field List

Choose fields to add to report:

- ☐ ArtID
- ☐ Artist
- ☐ Title
- ☐ Date Acquired
- ☒ Category
- ☒ Condition
- ☒ Location
- ☒ Appraised Value

Drag fields between areas below:

Report Filter: Location

Column Labels: Condition

Row Labels: Category

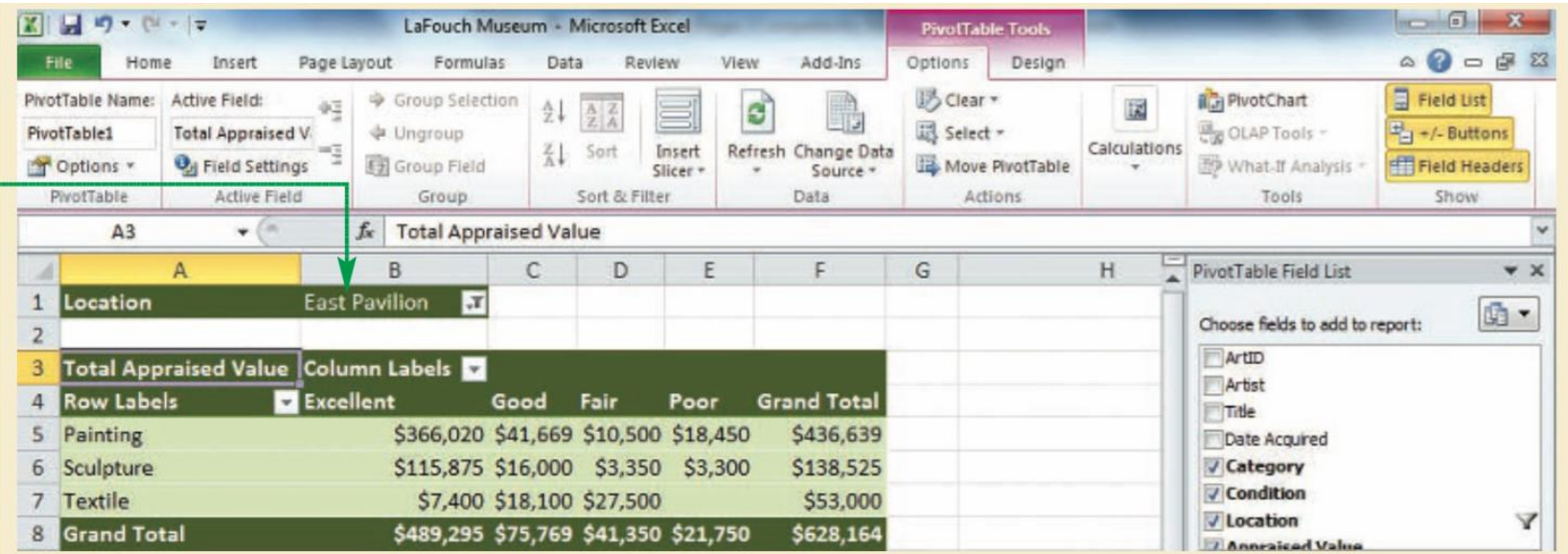
Values: Total Apprais...

Defer Layout Update: ☐ Update: [button]

field moved into the
Report Filter box

ADDING A REPORT FILTER TO A PIVOTTABLE

filtered PivotTable
shows the appraised
values of art objects
located in the East
Pavilion



PivotTable Name: PivotTable1 **Active Field:** Total Appraised Value

PivotTable Field List:

- ☐ ArtID
- ☐ Artist
- ☐ Title
- ☐ Date Acquired
- ☒ Category
- ☒ Condition
- ☒ Location
- ☒ Appraised Value

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	Location	East Pavilion						
2								
3	Total Appraised Value	Column Labels						
4	Row Labels	Excellent	Good	Fair	Poor	Grand Total		
5	Painting	\$366,020	\$41,669	\$10,500	\$18,450	\$436,639		
6	Sculpture	\$115,875	\$16,000	\$3,350	\$3,300	\$138,525		
7	Textile	\$7,400	\$18,100	\$27,500		\$53,000		
8	Grand Total	\$489,295	\$75,769	\$41,350	\$21,750	\$628,164		

FILTERING PIVOTTABLE FIELDS

- Filtering a field lets you focus on a subset of items in that field.
- You can filter field items in the PivotTable by clicking the **field arrow button** in the PivotTable that represents the data you want to hide, and then uncheck the check box for each item you want to hide.
- To show hidden items, you click the field arrow button and check the check box for the item you want to show.

filtered PivotTable
hides art objects
in poor condition

TIP

You can change the alignment of the column headings for better placement and readability.

LaFouch Museum - Microsoft Excel

PivotTable Name: PivotTable1
Active Field: Total Appraised Value

PivotTable Fields List:

- ArtID
- Artist
- Title
- Date Acquired
- ☒ Category
- ☒ Condition
- ☒ Location
- ☒ Appraised Value

Row Labels	Excellent	Good	Fair	Grand Total
Courtyard	\$203,500	\$2,500		\$206,000
Installation	\$14,000	\$2,500		\$16,500
Painting	\$137,500			\$137,500
Sculpture	\$52,000			\$52,000
East Pavilion	\$489,295	\$75,769	\$41,350	\$606,414
Painting	\$366,020	\$41,669	\$10,500	\$418,189
Sculpture	\$115,875	\$16,000	\$3,350	\$135,225
Textile	\$7,400	\$18,100	\$27,500	\$53,000

COLLAPSING AND EXPANDING ITEMS

- You can **expand and collapse items in the row labels of the PivotTable** to view fields at different levels of detail.
- The Expand and Collapse buttons identify where more details exist. The Expand button indicates you can show more details for that item, and the Collapse button indicates you can hide details for that item. The lowest level of the hierarchy does not have Expand and Collapse buttons because there is no data to expand or collapse.
- These buttons are helpful when you have complex PivotTables where you want to switch quickly between a detailed view and an overview.

click to display
the hidden details

Total Appraised Value				
Row Labels	Excellent	Good	Fair	Grand Total
Courtyard	\$203,500	\$2,500		\$206,000
East Pavilion	\$489,295	\$75,769	\$41,350	\$606,414
Garden	\$141,800	\$300		\$142,100
South Pavilion	\$141,500			\$141,500
West Pavilion	\$22,617		\$592	\$23,209

only the top-level
details are visible

SORTING PIVOTTABLE FIELDS

- You can sort a PivotTable field either by its own items or by the values in the body of the PivotTable.
- To sort a PivotTable field, you can use any of the Sort buttons on the Options tab to sort the information in a PivotTable report.

LaFouch Museum - Microsoft Excel

PivotTable Name: PivotTable1
Active Field: Total Appraised V.
Field Settings
Active Field

Options
PivotTable

Group Selection
Ungroup
Group Field
Group

Sort & Filter
Sort
Insert Slicer
Refresh
Change Data Source
Data

PivotTable Tools
Options
Design

Clear
Select
Move PivotTable
Actions

Calculations
PivotChart
OLAP Tools
What-If Analysis
Tools

Field List
+/- Buttons
Field Headers
Show

Row Labels	Excellent	Good	Fair	Grand Total
East Pavilion	\$489,295	\$75,769	\$41,350	\$606,414
Painting	\$366,020	\$41,669	\$10,500	\$418,189
Sculpture	\$115,875	\$16,000	\$3,350	\$135,225
Textile	\$7,400	\$18,100	\$27,500	\$53,000
Courtyard	\$203,500	\$2,500		\$206,000
Installation	\$14,000	\$2,500		\$16,500
Painting	\$137,500			\$137,500
Sculpture	\$52,000			\$52,000
Garden	\$141,800	\$300		\$142,100
Installation	\$118,000			\$118,000
Sculpture	\$23,800	\$300		\$24,100
South Pavilion	\$141,500			\$141,500

locations are sorted in descending order by the total appraised value

PivotTable Field List

Choose fields to add to report:

- ArtID
- Artist
- Title
- Date Acquired
- ☒ Category
- ☒ Condition
- ☒ Location
- ☒ Appraised Value

Drag fields between areas below:

Report Filter
Column Labels
Condition

USING A SLICER TO FILTER A PIVOTTABLE

- Although you can filter a PivotTable using the report filter arrow, column label arrows, and row label arrows, a slicer provides a quicker and easier way to filter a PivotTable or PivotChart.
- You can create a slicer for any field in a range or an Excel table.
- Every slicer consists of an object that contains a button for each unique value in that field. You can format the slicer and its buttons, changing its style, height, and width.
- You also can create more than one slicer at a time.
- **To add a slicer to the PivotTable:**
 - In the **Sort & Filter group** on the PivotTable Tools Options tab, click the **Insert Slicer** button. The Insert Slicers dialog box opens, displaying a list of available PivotTable fields. You can select any or all of the fields.
 - Click the check box you want to insert a check mark, and then click the OK button. The respective slicer control appears on the worksheet.
 - If necessary, click the slicer to select the slicer object. The Slicer Tools Options tab appears on the Ribbon.
 - In the Size group on the Slicer Tools Options tab, you can change the height and width. The slicer object is resized, eliminating the extra space below the buttons and to the right of the labels.
 - In the Slicer Styles group, click the More button , and then you can select a Slicer Style. The slicer colors now match the PivotTable.

USING A SLICER TO FILTER A PIVOTTABLE

selected style for the slicer

slicer object

new slicer dimensions

slicer buttons

	Excellent	Good	Fair	Grand Total
East Pavilion	\$489,295	\$75,769	\$41,350	\$606,414
Painting	\$366,020	\$41,669	\$10,500	\$418,189
Sculpture	\$115,875	\$16,000	\$3,350	\$135,225
Textile	\$7,400	\$18,100	\$27,500	\$53,000
Courtyard	\$203,500	\$2,500		\$206,000
Installation	\$14,000	\$2,500		\$16,500
Painting	\$137,500			\$137,500
Sculpture	\$52,000			\$52,000

USING A SLICER TO FILTER A PIVOTTABLE

- **To filter the PivotTable using the slicer:**
 - Click the slicer buttons you want the PivotTable to be filtered to display. The other slicer buttons are gray because they are not part of the report.
 - To select several buttons, press and hold the Ctrl key while clicking on them.

The screenshot shows the 'LaFouch Museum - Microsoft Excel' window. The 'Slicer Tools' ribbon is active, showing 'Options', 'Arrange', 'Buttons', and 'Size' tabs. The 'Location' slicer is visible, with buttons for 'Courtyard', 'East Pavilion', 'Garden', 'South Pavilion', and 'West Pavilion'. The 'East Pavilion', 'South Pavilion', and 'West Pavilion' buttons are highlighted in green, indicating they are selected. The PivotTable below shows the 'Total Appraised Value' for various art objects, filtered by location. The table has columns for 'Excellent', 'Good', 'Fair', and 'Grand Total'.

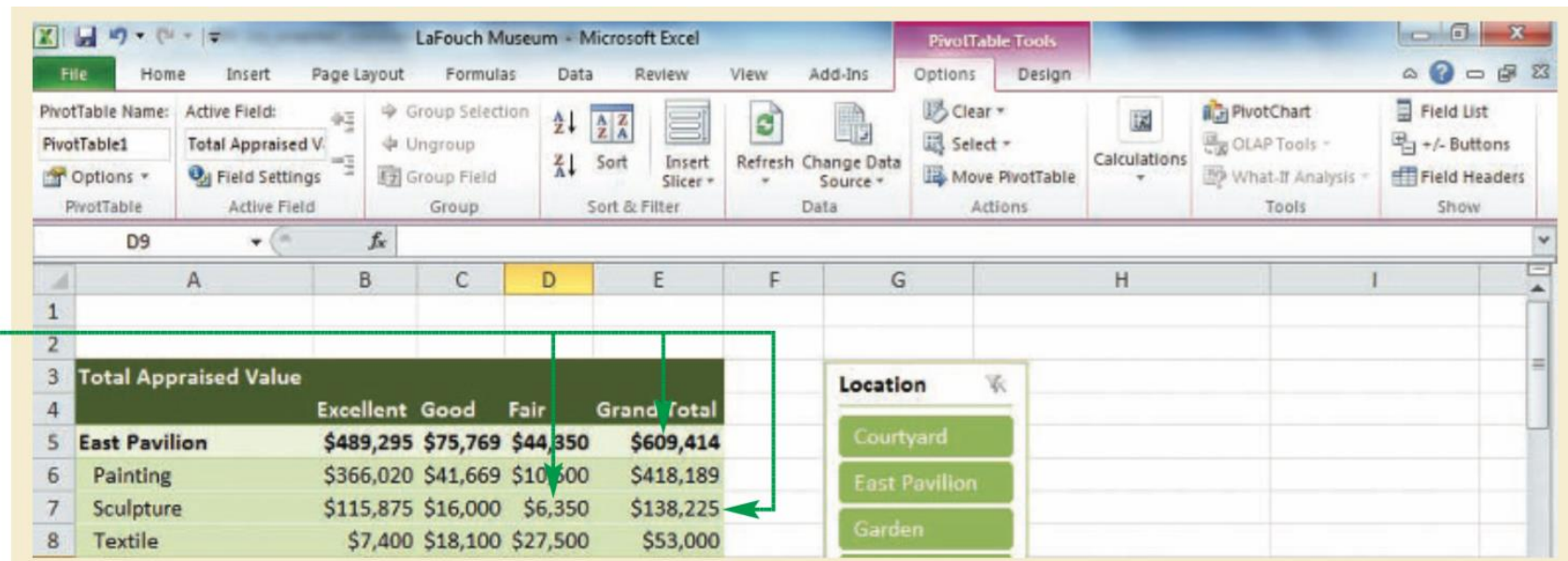
	Excellent	Good	Fair	Grand Total
East Pavilion	\$489,295	\$75,769	\$41,350	\$606,414
Painting	\$366,020	\$41,669	\$10,500	\$418,189
Sculpture	\$115,875	\$16,000	\$3,350	\$135,225
Textile	\$7,400	\$18,100	\$27,500	\$53,000
South Pavilion	\$141,500			\$141,500
Installation	\$53,000			\$53,000
Painting	\$88,500			\$88,500
West Pavilion	\$22,617		\$592	\$23,209
Painting	\$20,000			\$20,000

Annotations in the image:

- A green box points to the PivotTable with the text: "PivotTable shows the art objects that appear in the selected pavilions".
- A green box points to the 'East Pavilion' button with the text: "click to clear the filters".
- A green box points to the 'East Pavilion', 'South Pavilion', and 'West Pavilion' buttons with the text: "locations included in the report".

USING A SLICER TO FILTER A PIVOTTABLE

- You cannot change data directly in the PivotTable. Instead, you must edit the Excel table, and then refresh, or update, the PivotTable to reflect the updated data.
- After editing the Excel table, click any cell in the PivotTable, click the PivotTable Tools Options tab on the Ribbon, and then click the Refresh button in the Data group.



updated sculpture appraised values

	Excellent	Good	Fair	Grand Total
Total Appraised Value				
East Pavilion	\$489,295	\$75,769	\$44,350	\$609,414
Painting	\$366,020	\$41,669	\$10,500	\$418,189
Sculpture	\$115,875	\$16,000	\$6,350	\$138,225
Textile	\$7,400	\$18,100	\$27,500	\$53,000

Location

- Courtyard
- East Pavilion
- Garden

GROUPING PIVOTTABLE ITEMS



- When a field contains numbers, dates, or times, you can combine items in the rows of a PivotTable and combine them into groups automatically. For example, grouping items can **combine dates into larger groups** such as months, quarters, or years so that the PivotTable can include the desired level of summarization.
- If you want, for example, the PivotTable layout to show a count of items' acquisitions by year, not by date:
 - Click any date value in the Row Labels column of the PivotTable.
 - In the 'Group' group on the PivotTable Tools Options tab, click the Group Field button. The Grouping dialog box opens.
 - Click Months to deselect it, and then click Years to select it.
 - Click the OK button. The PivotTable report is grouped by year, displaying the number of item acquisitions in each year.

GROUPING PIVOTTABLE ITEMS

column adds the ArtID numbers rather than counting them

SUM function is applied because the ArtID field contains numbers

Row Labels	Sum of ArtID
7/11/2006	78
7/13/2006	9
8/9/2006	42
9/10/2006	142
1/10/2007	130
1/15/2007	73
1/16/2007	182
2/16/2007	107
3/16/2007	172
4/16/2007	88
5/10/2007	36
5/15/2007	52
5/16/2007	228
5/18/2007	109
5/19/2007	50
7/10/2007	56
7/11/2007	103
7/16/2007	194

PivotTable Field List

Choose fields to add to report:

- ☒ ArtID
- ☐ Artist
- ☐ Title
- ☒ Date Acquired
- ☐ Category
- ☐ Condition
- ☐ Location
- ☐ Appraised Value

Drag fields between areas below:

Report Filter: [Empty]

Column Labels: [Empty]

Row Labels: Date Acquired

Values: Sum of ArtID

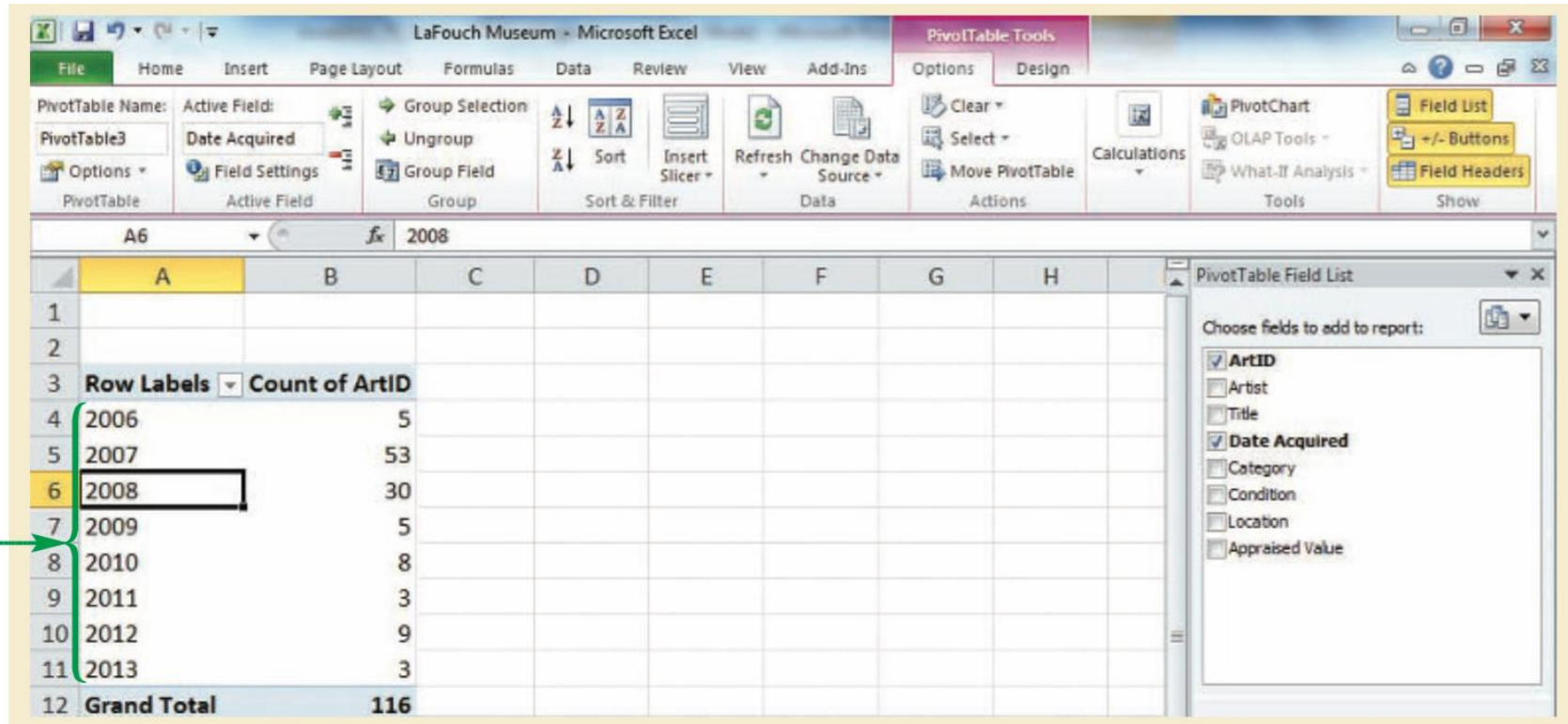
Defer Layout Update: [X] Update

GROUPING PIVOTTABLE ITEMS

The screenshot displays the Microsoft Excel 2010 interface. The PivotTable is located in the worksheet, with 'Row Labels' in column A and 'Count of ArtID' in column B. The data rows show acquisition dates and their corresponding counts. A green callout box points to the 'Count of ArtID' column with the text 'the number of art objects acquired by date'. The PivotTable Field List task pane on the right shows the fields 'ArtID' and 'Date Acquired' selected for the report.

Row Labels	Count of ArtID
7/11/2006	1
7/13/2006	1
8/9/2006	1
9/10/2006	2
1/10/2007	2
1/15/2007	1
1/16/2007	5
2/16/2007	1
3/16/2007	2

GROUPING PIVOTTABLE ITEMS



number of art
acquisitions by year

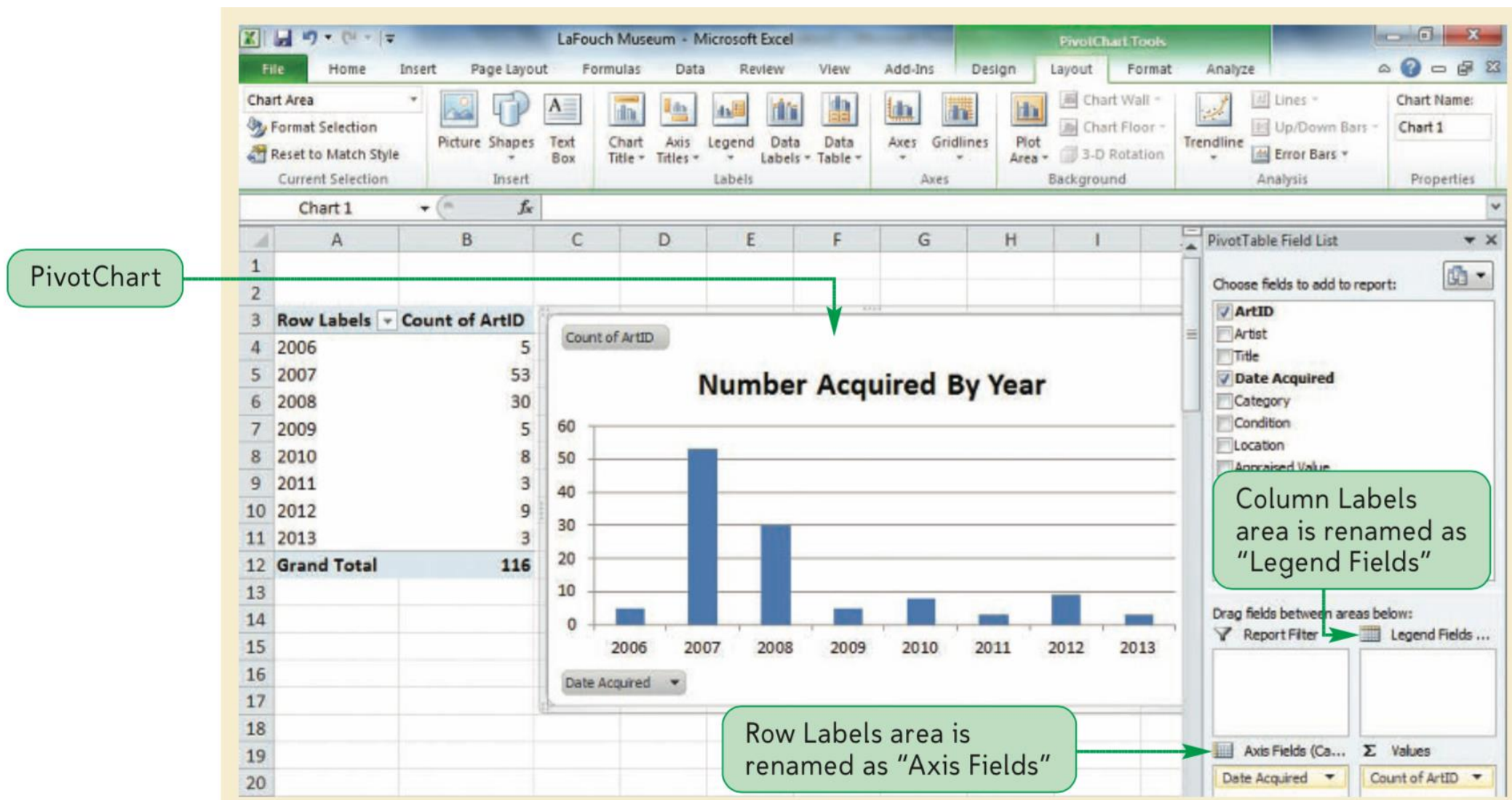
CREATING A PIVOTCHART



- Click any cell in the PivotTable.
- In the Tools group on the PivotTable Tools Options tab, click the PivotChart button. The Insert Chart dialog box opens.
- Click, for example, the Clustered Column chart (the first chart in the first row of the Column section), if necessary, and then click the OK button. A PivotChart appears next to the PivotTable along with the PivotTable Field List.
- Click the PivotChart Tools Layout tab, click the Legend button arrow in the Labels group, and then click None. The legend is removed from the PivotChart. You do not need a legend if the PivotChart has only one series.
- In the PivotChart, right-click the chart title, and then click Edit Text. The insertion point appears in the title so you can edit it.
- You can also create a PivotChart based directly on an Excel table, in which case both a PivotTable and a PivotChart are created.

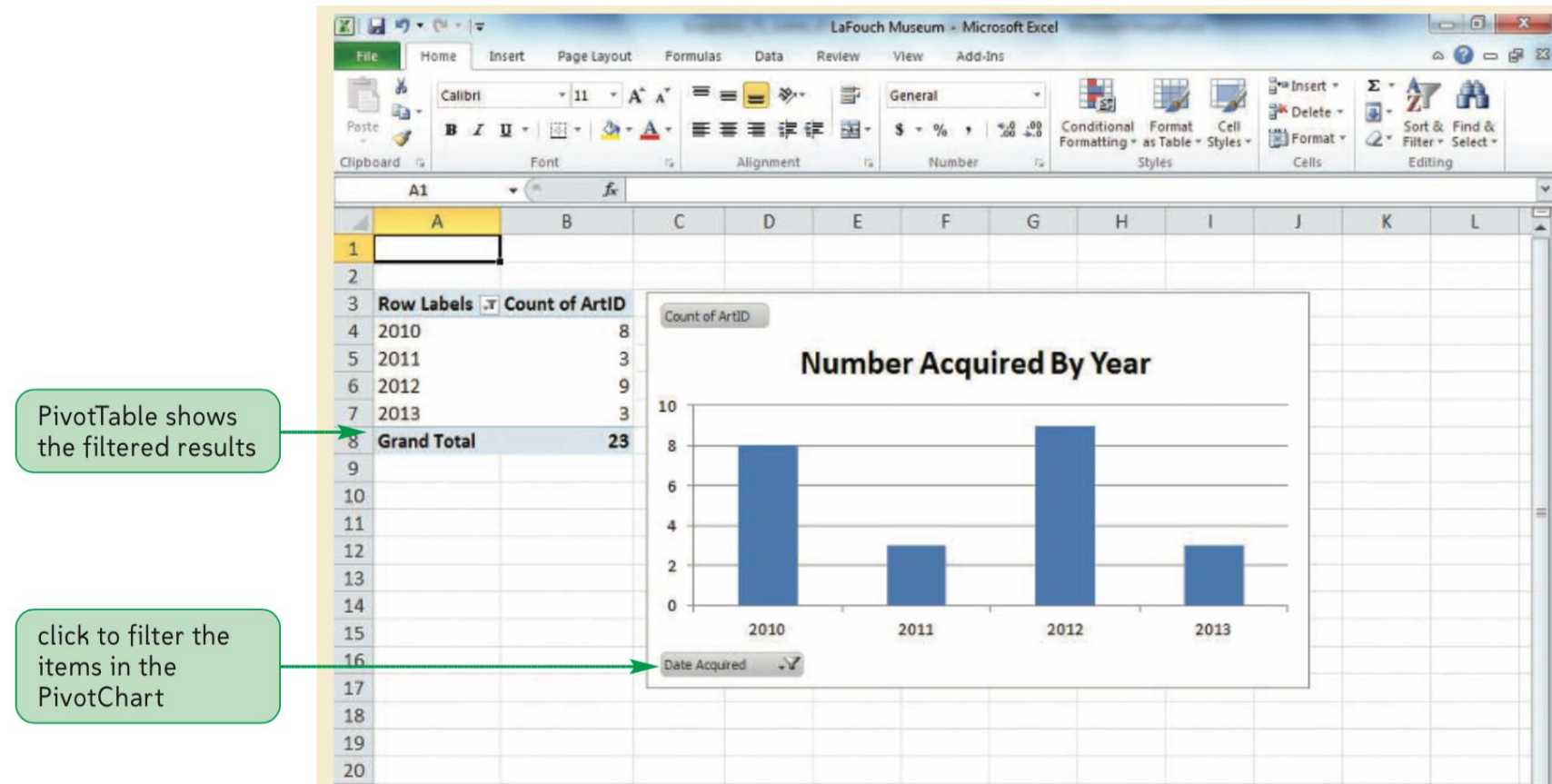
CREATING A PIVOTCHART

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



CREATING A PIVOTCHART

- The PivotChart Tools contextual tabs enable you to manipulate and format the selected PivotChart the same way as an ordinary chart. A PivotChart and its associated PivotTable are linked. When you modify one, the other also changes.
- You can quickly display different chart views of the PivotChart using the chart filter button on the PivotChart to filter the data.

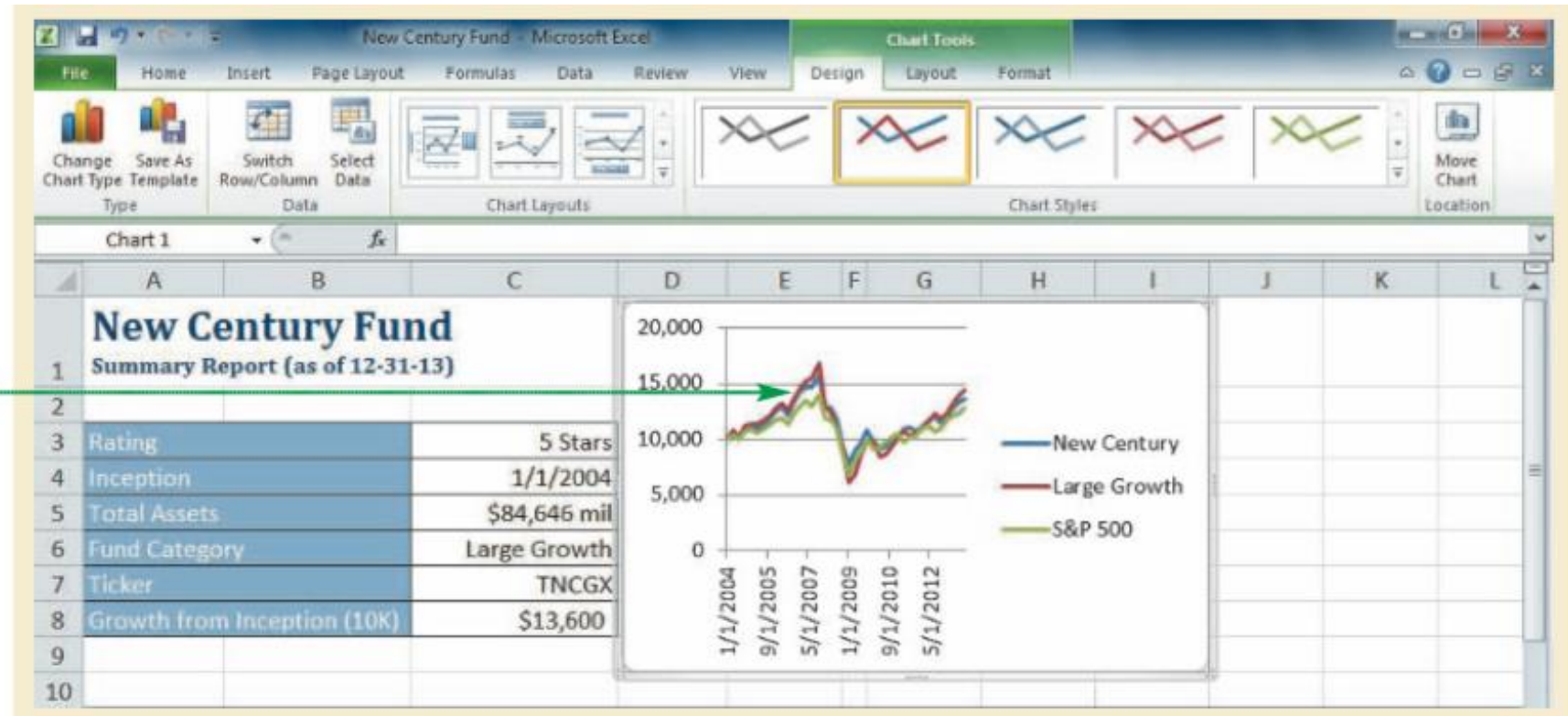


CREATING AND MOVING A CHART



- Line charts are typically used when the data consists of values drawn from categories that follow a sequential order at evenly spaced intervals, as with historical data in which the data values are recorded periodically such as monthly, quarterly, or yearly.
- **To create a line chart:**
 - Select the range of the data that you want to be depicted in the chart.
 - Click the Insert tab on the Ribbon.
 - In the Charts group, click the Line button, and then click the Line chart (the first chart in the 2-D Line section). A line chart is embedded in worksheet.
- **To move the chart to a new/an existing worksheet,** in the Location group on the Chart Tools Design tab, click the Move Chart button. The Move Chart dialog box opens.
- Click either the New Sheet or the Object in arrow. Name the new sheet or select the existing sheet that you want the chart to be moved to.
- Click the OK button. The line chart moves to the location of your choice.

CREATING A CHART



line chart with
three data series



- **To edit the title of the chart:**
 - Click the Chart Tools Layout tab on the Ribbon.
In the Labels group, click the Chart Title button, and then click Above Chart. A chart title appears above the line chart surrounded by a selection box.
 - Type a title name, and then press the Enter key. The new, descriptive title appears above the chart.
 - You can edit the Title fonts. the axis fonts as well as the Chart Legend fonts from the Font group on the Home tab on the Ribbon.
- **To modify the value axis scale and set specific range and increment values:**
 - Double-click the value axis to open the Format Axis dialog box.
 - Next to Maximum, click the Fixed option button, and then type the maximum value of the range of your data.
 - Next to Major Unit, click the Fixed option button, and then type the increment value in the box.
 - Click the Close button.

FORMATTING DATE LABELS



- In addition to numbers, a scale can be based on dates. As with numerical scales, you can set the minimum and maximum dates to use in the scale's range. You can also set the major and minor units as days, months, or years to use for the scale's interval.
- You can also format the category labels to show the four-digit year value rather than the complete date. Excel does not have a built-in format to display only four-digit year values, but you can create a custom format to accomplish this.
- Custom date formats use combinations of the letters “m”, “d”, and “y” for months, days, and years, respectively. The number of letters controls how Excel displays the date, as follows:
 - With months, m or mm displays the one- or two-digit month number, mmm displays the month's three-letter abbreviation, and mmmm displays the month's full name.
 - With days, d or dd displays the one- or two-digit day value and dddd displays the day's full name.
 - With years, yyyy displays the four-digit year value.
 - For example, a custom format of mmm-dd displays a three-letter month abbreviation followed by a hyphen and a two-digit day number (such as Apr-05).
- You can apply such changes through the Axis Options menu on the Format Axis dialog box.

FORMATTING DATE LABELS

Format Axis

Axis Options

Number

Fill

Line Color

Line Style

Shadow

Glow and Soft Edges

3-D Format

Alignment

Axis Options

Minimum: ☒ Auto ☐ Fixed 1/1/2004

Maximum: ☒ Auto ☐ Fixed 10/1/2013

Major unit: ☐ Auto ☒ Fixed 2 Years

Minor unit: ☐ Auto ☒ Fixed 1 Years

Base Unit: ☐ Auto ☒ Fixed Months

☐ Dates in reverse order

Axis Type:

☒ Automatically select based on data

☐ Text axis

☐ Date axis

Major tick mark type: Outside

Minor tick mark type: None

Axis labels: Next to Axis

Vertical axis crosses:

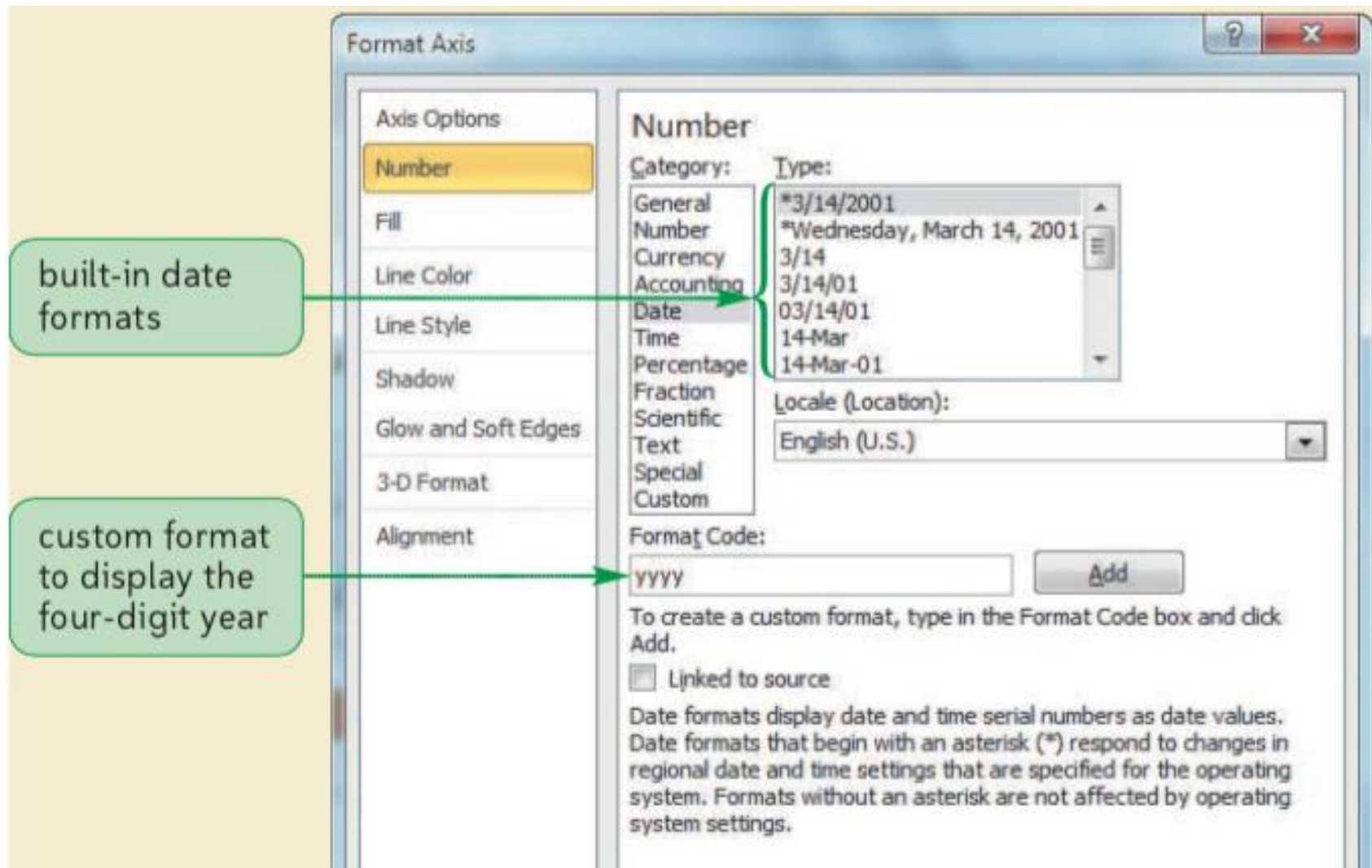
☒ Between dates

☐ At date: 1/1/2004

set the major tick marks at two-year intervals

set the minor tick marks at one-year intervals

FORMATTING DATE LABELS



Format Axis

Axis Options

- Number
- Fill
- Line Color
- Line Style
- Shadow
- Glow and Soft Edges
- 3-D Format
- Alignment

Number

Category:

- General
- Number
- Currency
- Accounting
- Date
- Time
- Percentage
- Fraction
- Scientific
- Text
- Special
- Custom

Type:

- *3/14/2001
- *Wednesday, March 14, 2001
- 3/14
- 3/14/01
- 03/14/01
- 14-Mar
- 14-Mar-01

Locale (Location):

English (U.S.)

Format Code:

yyyy

Add

To create a custom format, type in the Format Code box and click Add.

☐ Linked to source

Date formats display date and time serial numbers as date values. Date formats that begin with an asterisk (*) respond to changes in regional date and time settings that are specified for the operating system. Formats without an asterisk are not affected by operating system settings.

built-in date formats

custom format to display the four-digit year

SETTING LABEL UNITS



- When a chart involves large numbers, the axis labels can take up a lot of the available chart area and be difficult to read.
- You can simplify the chart's appearance by displaying units of measure more appropriate to the data values. For example, you can display the value 20 to represent 20,000 or 20,000,000.
- This is particularly useful when space is at a premium, such as in an embedded chart confined to a small area of the worksheet. When you select the display units, such as Thousands, you can choose to show the display unit in the axis title.
- **To set the display unit for the value axis:**
 - Double-click the value axis to open the Format Axis dialog box with the Axis Options displayed.
 - Click the Display units arrow, and then click, for example, Thousands.
 - The scale of the value axis changes. The axis title “Thousands” indicates that the values are expressed in units of 1000. To save space, you can remove this title from the chart.
 - Click the Show display units label on chart check box to remove the check mark. The axis title is removed from the chart.
- You can apply custom formats to numbers just as with dates. One application of custom formats is to add text to a number. This is often used to include the units of measure alongside the value, such as 10k to indicate 10,000. To add text to a value, you use the custom format value “text”, where value is the number format applied to the value and text is the text to include next to the value. The text must be placed within quotation marks.

SETTING LABEL UNITS

value axis labels use the letter "k" to represent thousands as the display units



OVERLAYING A CHART LEGEND

- Chart elements, such as titles and legends, overlay the chart area, which means they are placed on top of the chart. Overlaying chart elements is a way to make more space for the plot area because the chart does not resize to make room for that element.
- **To overlay and format the chart legend:**
 - Double-click the legend to open the Format Legend dialog box.
 - Click the ‘Show the legend without overlapping the chart’ check box to remove the check mark. The legend moves left, overlaying the chart. The plot and the legend intersect, and the plot area shows through the legend.
 - Click **Fill** on the left side of the Format Legend dialog box, and then click the Solid fill option button.
 - Click the Color button , and then click white (the first color in the Theme Colors section). The legend now has a solid white background, making it easier to read.
 - Click **Border Color** on the left side of the Format Legend dialog box, and then click the Solid line option button.
 - Click the Color button , and then click Blue (the eighth color in the Standard Colors section).
 - Click the Close button. The Format Legend dialog box closes, and the reformatted legend overlays the chart.

OVERLAYING A CHART LEGEND



- An overlaid chart element floats in the chart area and is not fixed to a particular position. This means that you can drag the chart element to a new location. This is helpful because when you overlay a chart element, it might overlap some of the chart contents, as the legend does. You'll drag the overlaid legend down a bit so that it doesn't obscure any of the data in the line chart.
- **To move the chart legend:**
 - Position the pointer over a blank spot in the chart legend so the pointer changes to and "Legend" appears in a ScreenTip.
 - Drag the legend to the lower-right corner of the plot area so the bottom of the legend is on the horizontal axis.
 - Click and drag the upper-left sizing handle of the legend down a few pixels until the legend no longer overlaps the lines on the chart.

OVERLAYING A CHART LEGEND



GRIDLINES AND AXIS TITLES



- By default, Excel places horizontal **gridlines** on line charts and column charts. Each gridline is aligned with a major tick mark on the value axis. From the Axes group on Chart Tools Layout tab on the Ribbon, you can change the gridlines so that they appear for only the minor units, appear for both the major and minor units, or do not appear at all. The category axis has these same gridline options.
- An **axis title** is descriptive text that appears next to the axis values. An axis title can provide additional information that is not covered in the chart title. It can include information about the source of the data and the units in which the data is measured. You can add/edit an axis title from the Chart Tools Layout tab in the Labels group.

GRIDLINES AND AXIS TITLES

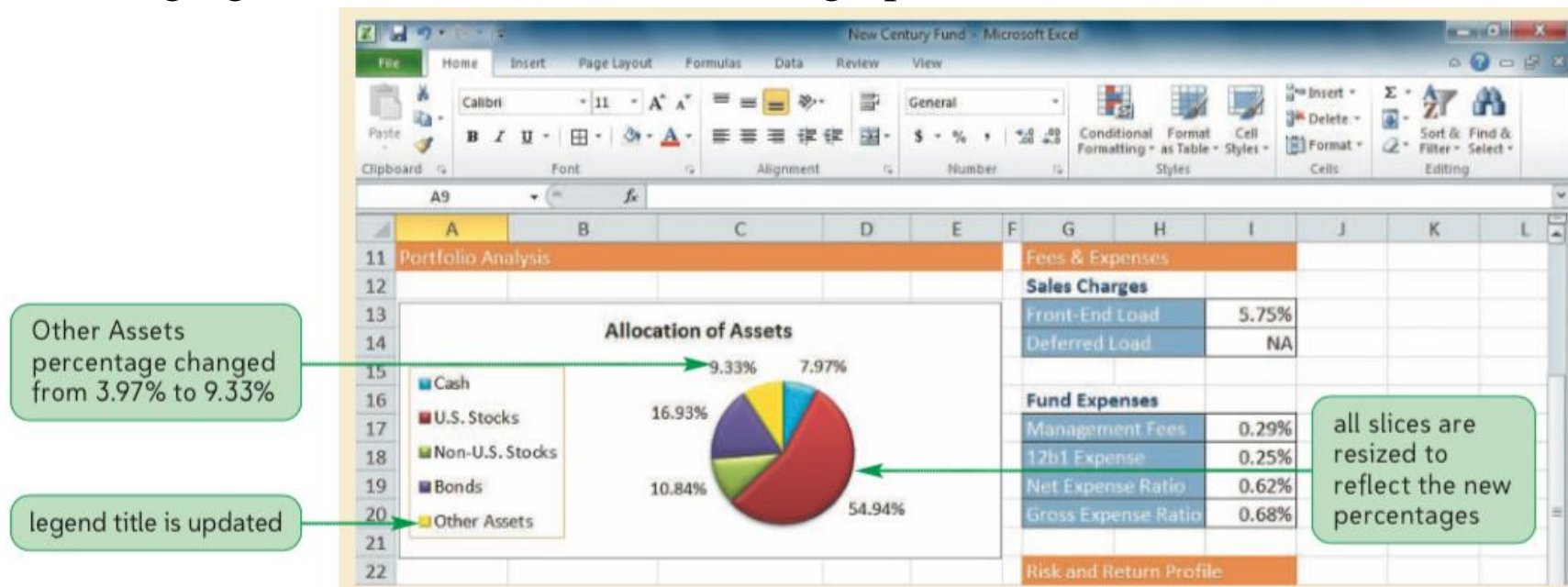


vertical axis title



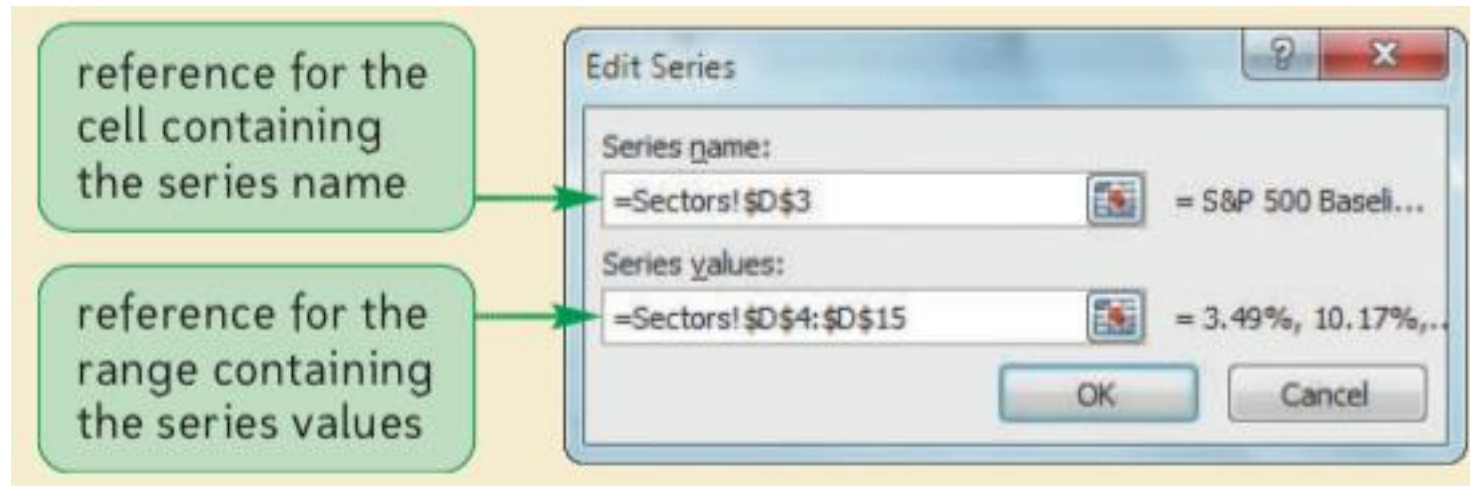
EDITING AND REVISING CHART DATA

- Chart data can be edited and revised at any time. You do this by modifying the data range that the chart is based on, not by directly modifying the data in the chart. The change can be as simple as updating a specific value within the data source. Or it can be as involved as adding another data series to the chart.
- Charts remain linked or connected to their data sources, even if they appear in different worksheets. If you change any values or labels in the data source, the chart is automatically updated to show the new content. One advantage of Excel charts is that you can quickly see how changing one or more values affects a graph.

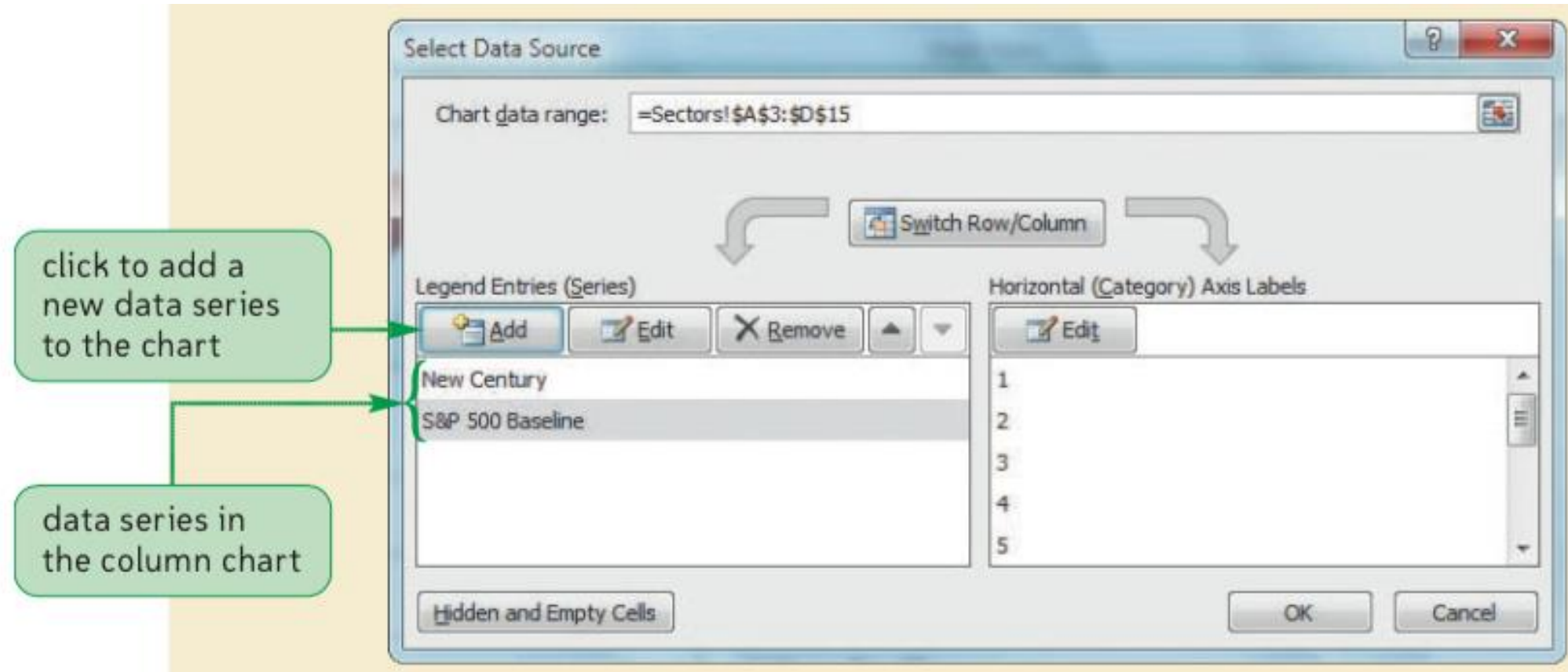


ADDING A DATA SERIES TO AN EXISTING CHART

- Select the chart to which you want to add a data series.
- In the Data group on the Chart Tools Design tab, click the Select Data button.
- Click the Add button in the Select Data Source dialog box.
- Select the range with the series name and series values you want for the new data series.
- Click the OK button in each dialog box.



ADDING A DATA SERIES TO AN EXISTING CHART

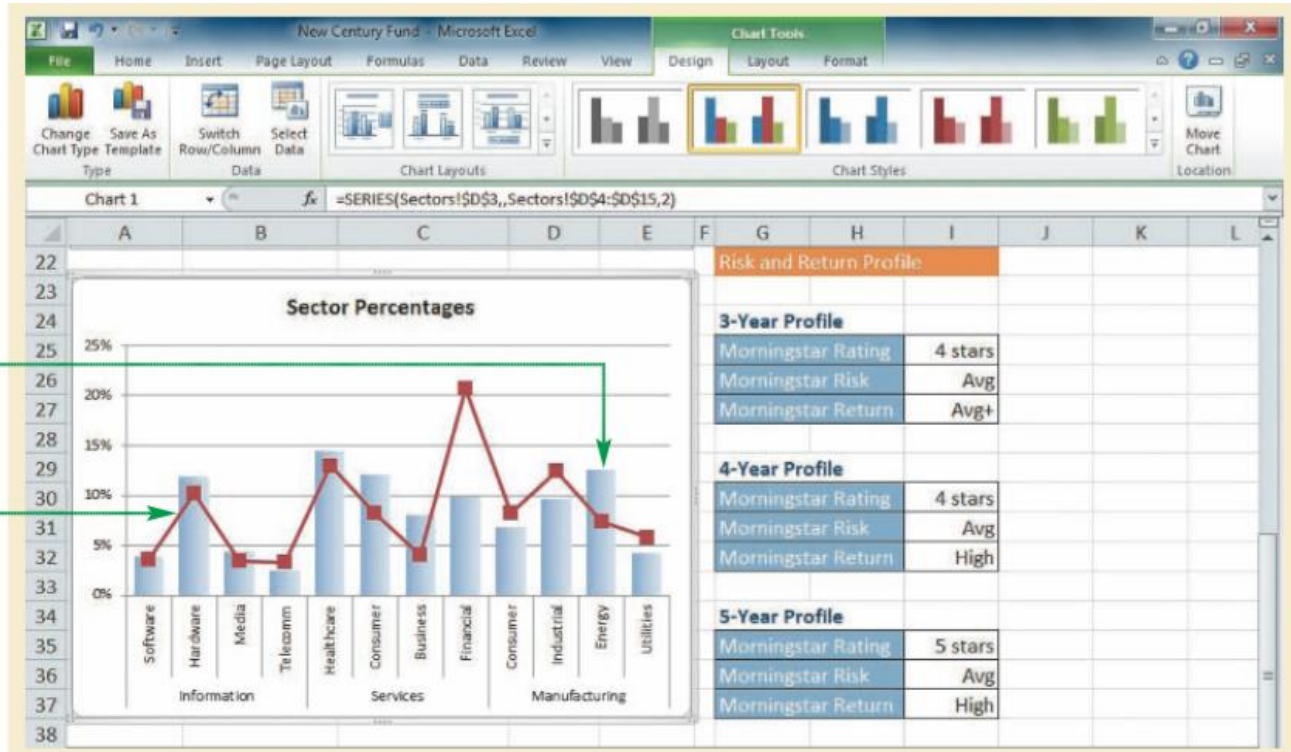


CREATING A COMBINATION CHART

- A combination chart is a chart that combines two or more chart types in a single graph, such as a column chart and a line chart. To create a combination chart, you select a data series in an existing chart, and then apply a new chart type to that series, leaving the other data series in its original format.
 - Select a data series in an existing chart that you want to appear as another chart type.
 - In the Type group on the Chart Tools Design tab, click the Change Chart Type button, and then click the chart type you want.
 - Click the OK button.

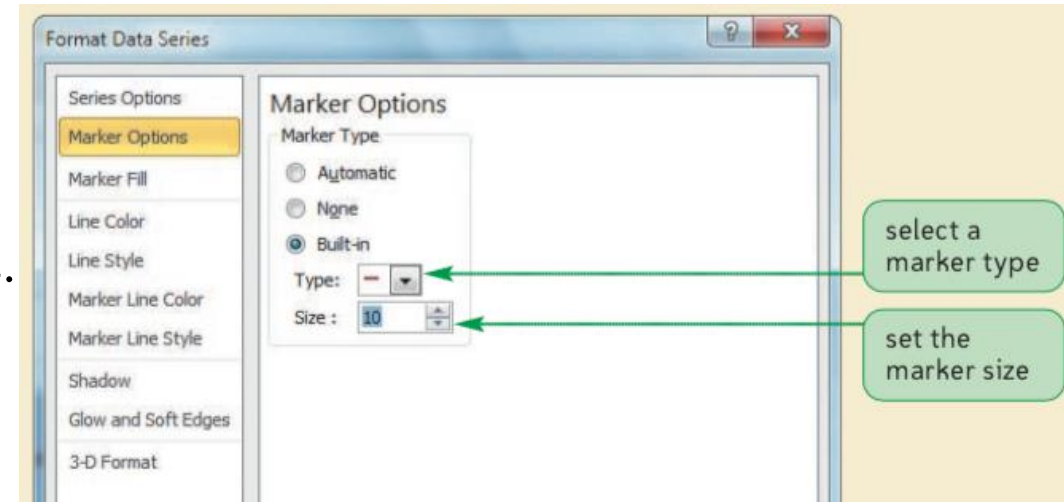
New Century Fund values displayed as columns

S&P 500 values displayed as a line with markers



CREATING A COMBINATION CHART

- Line charts are appropriate when the categories can be ordered sequentially, that is when the categories represent dates. In the previous Figure, the sector categories do not have a sequential order and the lines connecting the different categories have no meaning.
- **To remove the lines and edit the markers in a line chart:**
 - Click the line to select it.
 - Click the Chart Tools Layout tab on the Ribbon, and then click Format Selection in the Current Selection group. The Format Data Series dialog box opens.
 - Click Line Color on the left side of the dialog box, and then click the No line option button to remove the line from the line chart.
 - Click Marker Options on the left side of the dialog box, and then click the Built-in option button. You can now select the type and size of the marker.



CREATING A 3-D CHART



- You can add visual interest to charts by using **3-D (three dimensional) effects**. The 3-D effects provide the illusion of depth and distance, which makes the charts appear to stand out on the page.
- To create a 3-D effect, Excel adds three spatial dimensions to the chart, which it labels the **x-, y, and z-axes**.
 - The x-axis represents the length of the object.
 - The y-axis represents the height of the object.
 - The z-axis represents the object's depth.
- To increase the 3-D effect, you need to rotate the chart. You can only **rotate** the chart horizontally or vertically.
 - Increasing the rotation horizontally spins the chart clockwise (as seen from above).
 - Increasing the rotation vertically raises the user's viewpoint higher above the chart.
- Often you'll need to **experiment to find the right angles** for a 3-D chart by rotating the chart in different directions until it looks good without distorting the data.
- Excel charts cannot be rotated around the z- or depth axis, but you can **specify the chart's depth**. Depth values can range from 0 to 2000 units. The larger the value, the thicker or deeper the chart appears to extend away from the viewer.

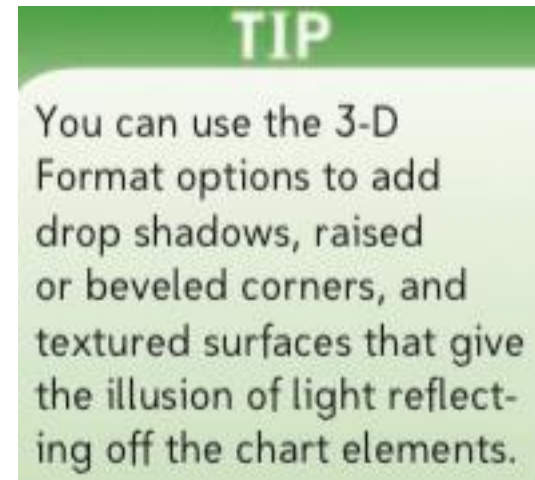
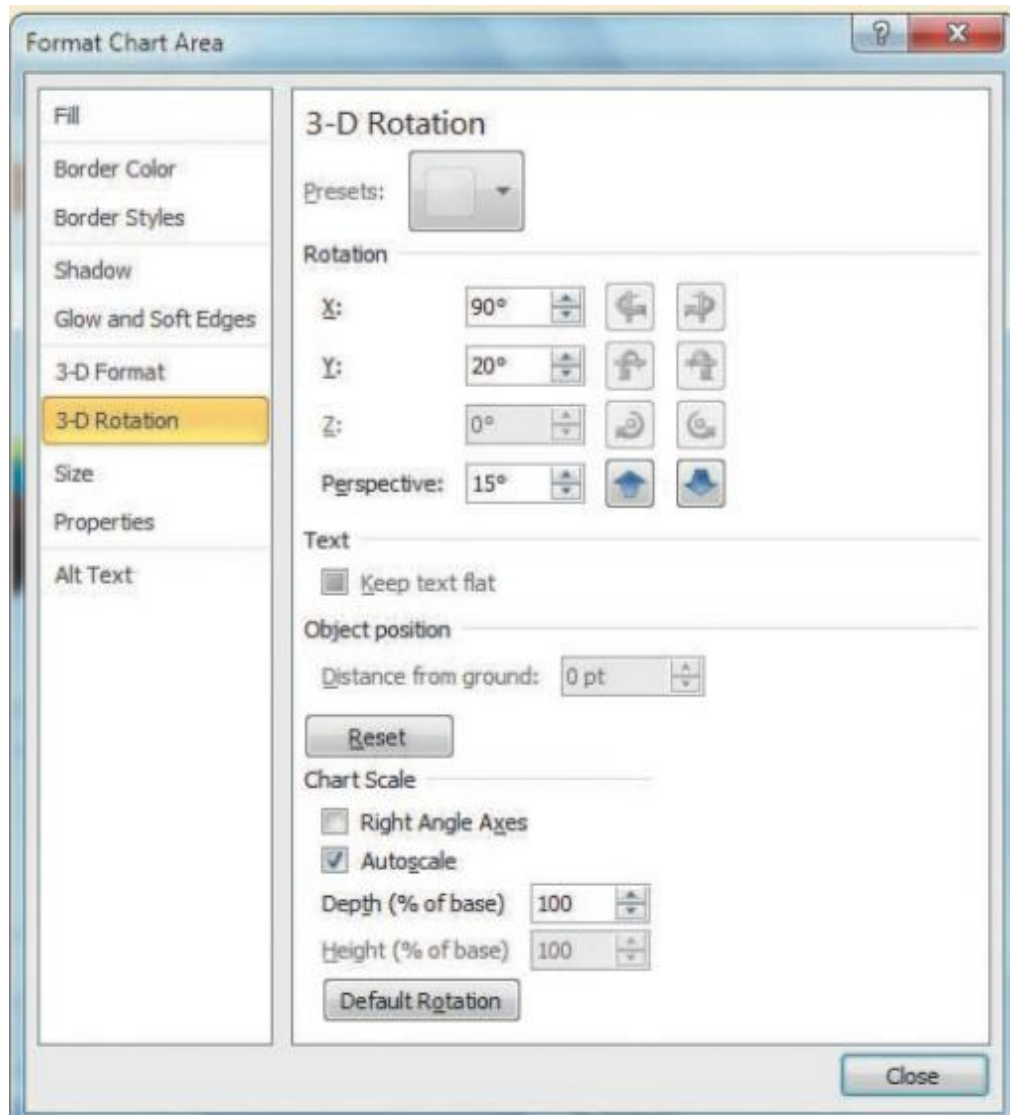
CREATING A 3-D CHART

- You can also **change the chart's perspective**, which controls how fast the chart appears to recede from the viewer's eye. Perspective values range from 0 degrees to 90 degrees. A 90 degree perspective value exaggerates the 3-D effect, making distant objects appear very small, whereas perspective values near 0 degrees minimize this effect.
- Excel immediately applies your choices for depth and perspective, so you can try different depth and perspective values to determine which work best for your chart.
- **To change a pie chart to 3-D:**
 - Click the pie chart, and then click the Chart Tools Design tab on the Ribbon.
 - In the Type group, click the Change Chart Type button. The Change Chart Type dialog box opens.
 - In the Pie section, click Pie in 3-D (the second Pie chart type).
 - Click the OK button. The pie chart is now a 3-D chart, and has a slight shadow along its lower edge.

CREATING A 3-D CHART

- You can also **change the chart's perspective**, which controls how fast the chart appears to recede from the viewer's eye. Perspective values range from 0 degrees to 90 degrees. A 90 degree perspective value exaggerates the 3-D effect, making distant objects appear very small, whereas perspective values near 0 degrees minimize this effect.
- Excel immediately applies your choices for depth and perspective, so you can try different depth and perspective values to determine which work best for your chart.
- **To change a pie chart to 3-D:**
 - Click the pie chart, and then click the Chart Tools Design tab on the Ribbon.
 - In the Type group, click the Change Chart Type button. The Change Chart Type dialog box opens.
 - In the Pie section, click Pie in 3-D (the second Pie chart type).
 - Click the OK button. The pie chart is now a 3-D chart, and has a slight shadow along its lower edge.
- **To rotate and reorient the 3-D pie chart:**
 - Click the Chart Tools Layout tab on the Ribbon.
 - In the Background group, click the 3-D Rotation button. The Format Chart Area dialog box opens with the 3-D Rotation options displayed.
 - In the Rotation section, use the X box and the Y box to adjust rotation.





CREATING A 3-D CHART



ADDING SPARKLINES AND DATA BARS

- For **more compact graphing**, you can insert charts within worksheet cells. Excel provides two tools to do this—sparklines and data bars. Both convey graphical information about worksheet data without occupying a lot of space.
- A **sparkline** is a mini chart that is displayed within a worksheet cell. Because sparklines are compact in size, they don't include chart elements such as legends, titles, gridlines, or axes. The goal of a sparkline is to convey the maximum amount of graphical information within a very small space. As a result, sparklines are useful when you don't want charts to overwhelm the rest of your worksheet or take up valuable page space.
- Excel supports the following three types of sparklines:
 - A **line sparkline** for highlighting trends
 - A **column sparkline** used for column charts
 - A **win/loss sparkline** for highlighting positive and negative values.

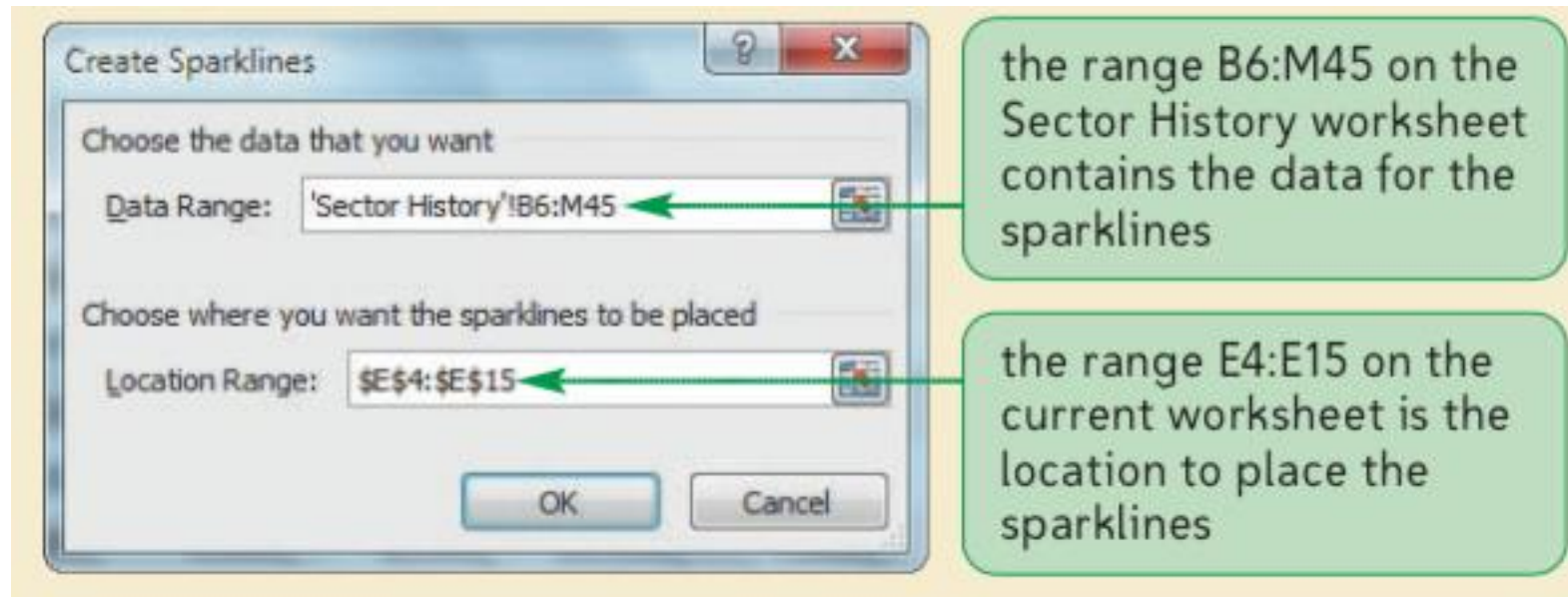
	A	B	C
1	Sales by Department (sales in millions)		
2	Department	Current	1-Year
3	Laptops	\$ 29.4	
4	Printers	\$ 13.2	
5	Monitors	\$ 13.0	
6	Peripherals	\$ 11.5	
7	All Departments	\$ 67.1	

	A	B	C
1		Temperature Record	
2	City	Yearly	Monthly
3	Seattle	37.7°C	
4	Buenos Aires	54.0°C	
5	Moscow	14.3°C	
6	Melbourne	47.4°C	

	A	B	C
1	Team	Record	Season
2	Cutler Tigers	10 - 2	
3	Apsburg Hawks	8 - 4	
4	Central City Spartans	6 - 6	
5	Liddleton Lions	3 - 9	

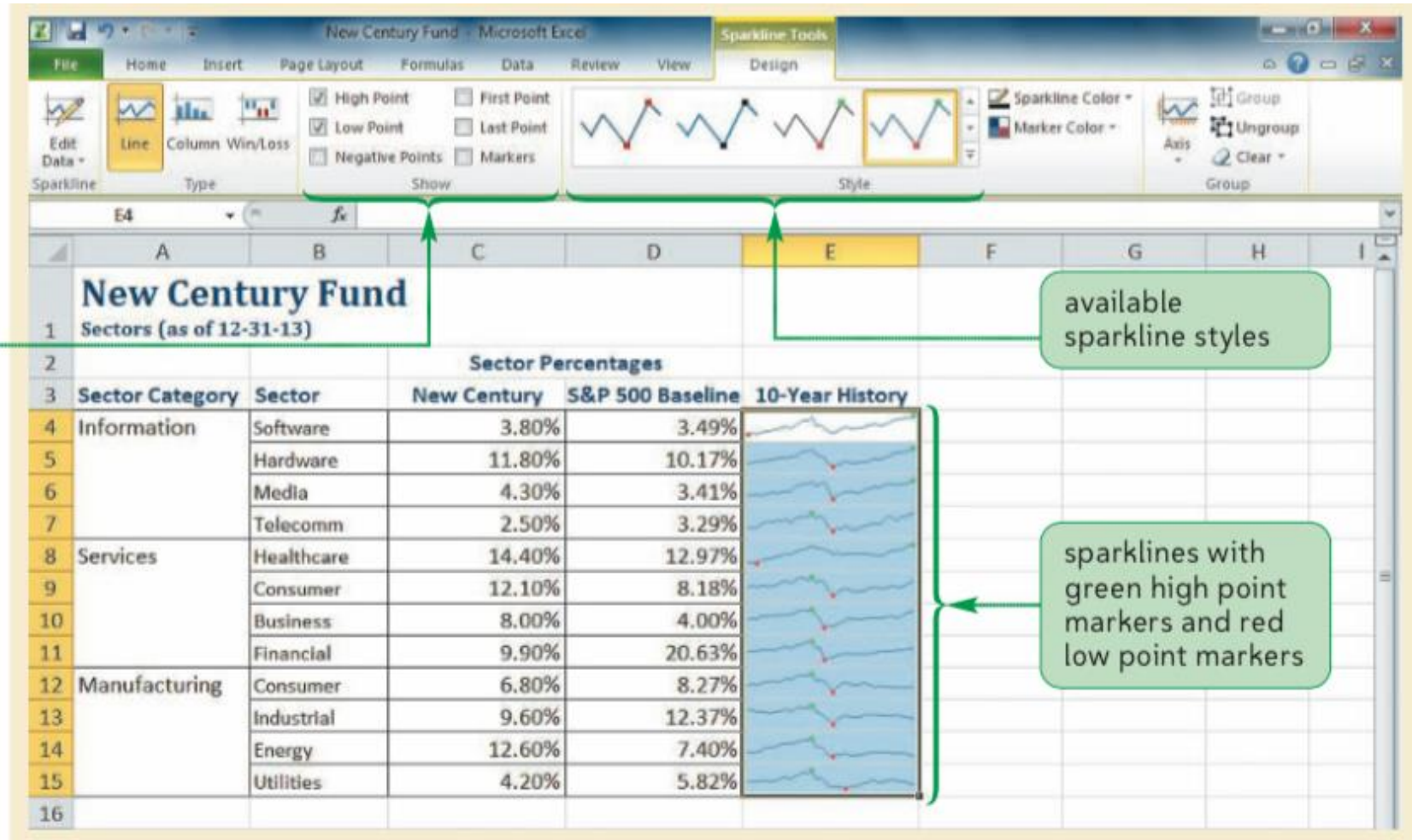
CREATING AND EDITING SPARKLINES

- In the Sparklines group on the **Insert tab**, click the Line, Column, or Win/Loss button.
- In the Data Range box, enter the range for the data source of the sparkline.
- In the Location Range box, enter the range into which to place the sparkline.
- Click the OK button.
- To edit a sparkline's appearance, click the Sparkline Tools Design tab.
- In the Show group, click the appropriate check boxes to specify which markers to display on the sparkline.
- In the Group group, click the Axis button, and then click Show Axis to add an axis to the sparkline.



CREATING AND EDITING SPARKLINES

select which data markers to show on the selected sparklines



available sparkline styles

sparklines with green high point markers and red low point markers

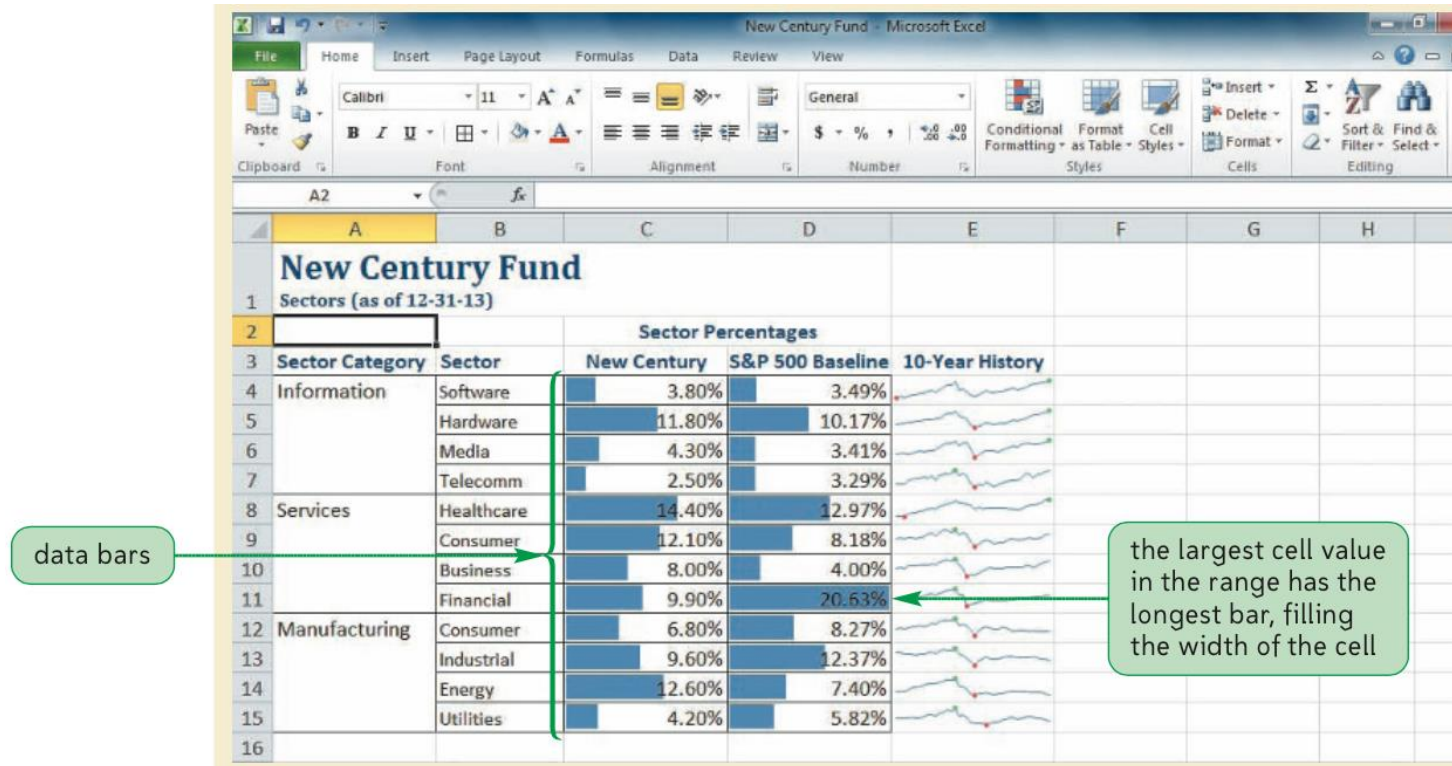
CREATING DATA BARS



- A **data bar** is a conditional format that adds a horizontal bar to the background of a cell containing a numeric value. When applied to a range of cells, the data bars have the same appearance as a bar chart with each cell containing one bar.
- The **lengths** of data bars are based on the value of each cell in the selected range. Cells with larger values have longer bars; cells with smaller values have shorter bars.
- Data bars are **dynamic**, which means that if one cell's value changes, the lengths of the data bars in the selected range are automatically updated.
- Data bars **differ from sparklines** in that the bars are always placed in the cells containing the value they represent and each cell represents only a single bar from the bar chart. By contrast, a column sparkline can be inserted anywhere within the workbook and can represent data from several rows or columns. However, like sparklines, data bars can be used to create compact graphs that can be easily integrated alongside the text and values stored in your worksheet cells.

CREATING DATA BARS

- **To add data bars:**
- Select the relevant data range.
- Click the Home tab on the Ribbon.
- In the Styles group, click the Conditional Formatting button, and then point to Data Bars to display the Data Bars gallery.
- In the Solid Fill group, click Blue Data Bar (the first data bar style). The data bars are added to the selected cells.



MODIFYING A DATA BAR RULE

- The lengths of the data bars are determined based on the values in the selected range. The cell with the largest value contains a data bar that extends across the entire width of the cell, and the lengths of the other bars in the selected range are determined relative to that bar. In some cases, this means that the longest data overlaps the cell's data value, making it difficult to read. You can modify the length of the data bars by altering the rules of the conditional format.
- **To modify the data bar rule:**
 - Select the range which contains the data bars.
 - In the Styles group on the Home tab, click the Conditional Formatting button, and then click Manage Rules. The Conditional Formatting Rules Manager dialog box opens, displaying all the rules applied to any conditional format in the workbook.
 - Make sure Current Selection appears in the Show formatting rules for box.
 - Click the Edit Rule button. The Edit Formatting Rule dialog box opens.
 - In the Type row, click the Maximum arrow, and then click Number.
 - In the Value row, type the value you want in the Maximum box.

MODIFYING A DATA BAR RULE

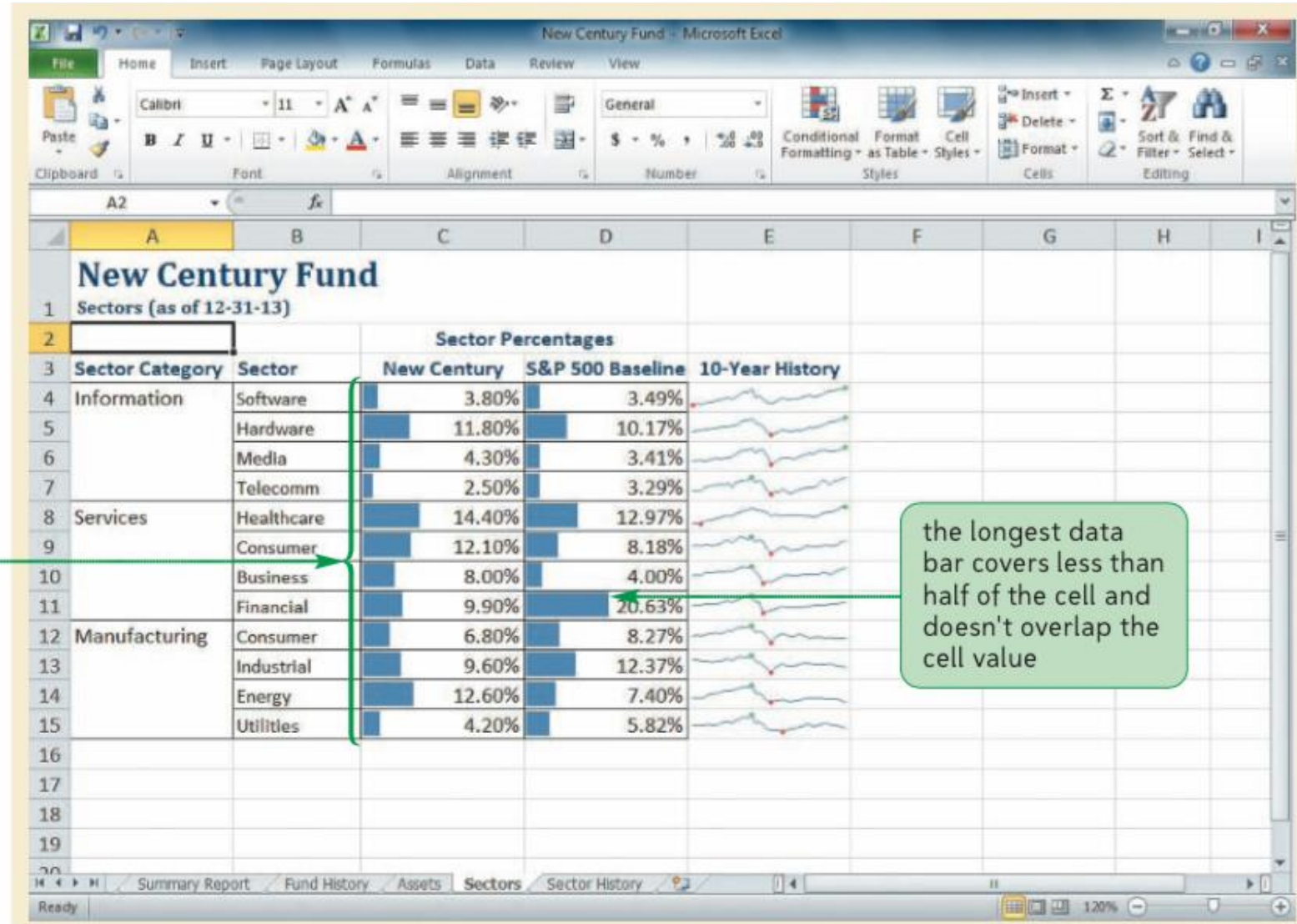
The screenshot shows the 'Edit Formatting Rule' dialog box with the following settings and annotations:

- Select a Rule Type:** 'Format all cells based on their values' is selected.
- Edit the Rule Description:**
 - Format Style:** 'Data Bar' is selected. *Annotation: defines the value used for the shortest data bar*
 - Show Bar Only:** ☐. *Annotation: hides the cell value, showing only the data bar*
 - Minimum:**
 - Type:** 'Automatic'
 - Value:** '(Automatic)'. *Annotation: sets the fill and border colors of the data bars*
 - Maximum:**
 - Type:** 'Number'
 - Value:** '0.4'. *Annotation: defines the value used for the longest data bar*
- Bar Appearance:**
 - Fill:** 'Solid Fill' (blue). *Annotation: sets the fill and border colors of the data bars*
 - Color:** Blue.
 - Border:** 'No Border'.
 - Color:** Black.
 - Negative Value and Axis...** button. *Annotation: click to define how negative values will be presented in the data bars*
 - Bar Direction:** 'Context'.
 - Preview:** A blue bar.

MODIFYING A DATA BAR RULE

data bar lengths are expressed relative to a maximum value of 40%

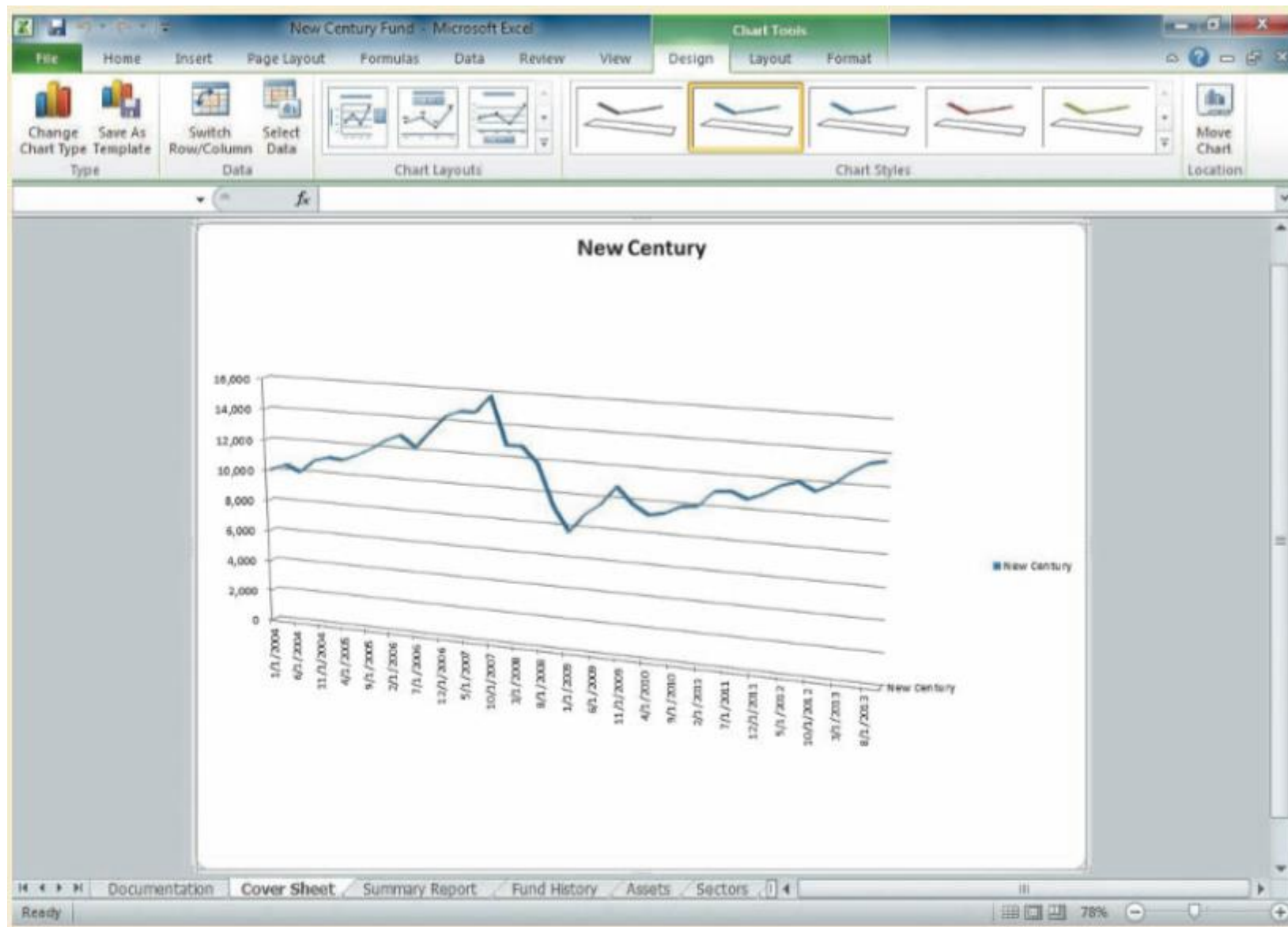
the longest data bar covers less than half of the cell and doesn't overlap the cell value



CREATING A CHART SHEET

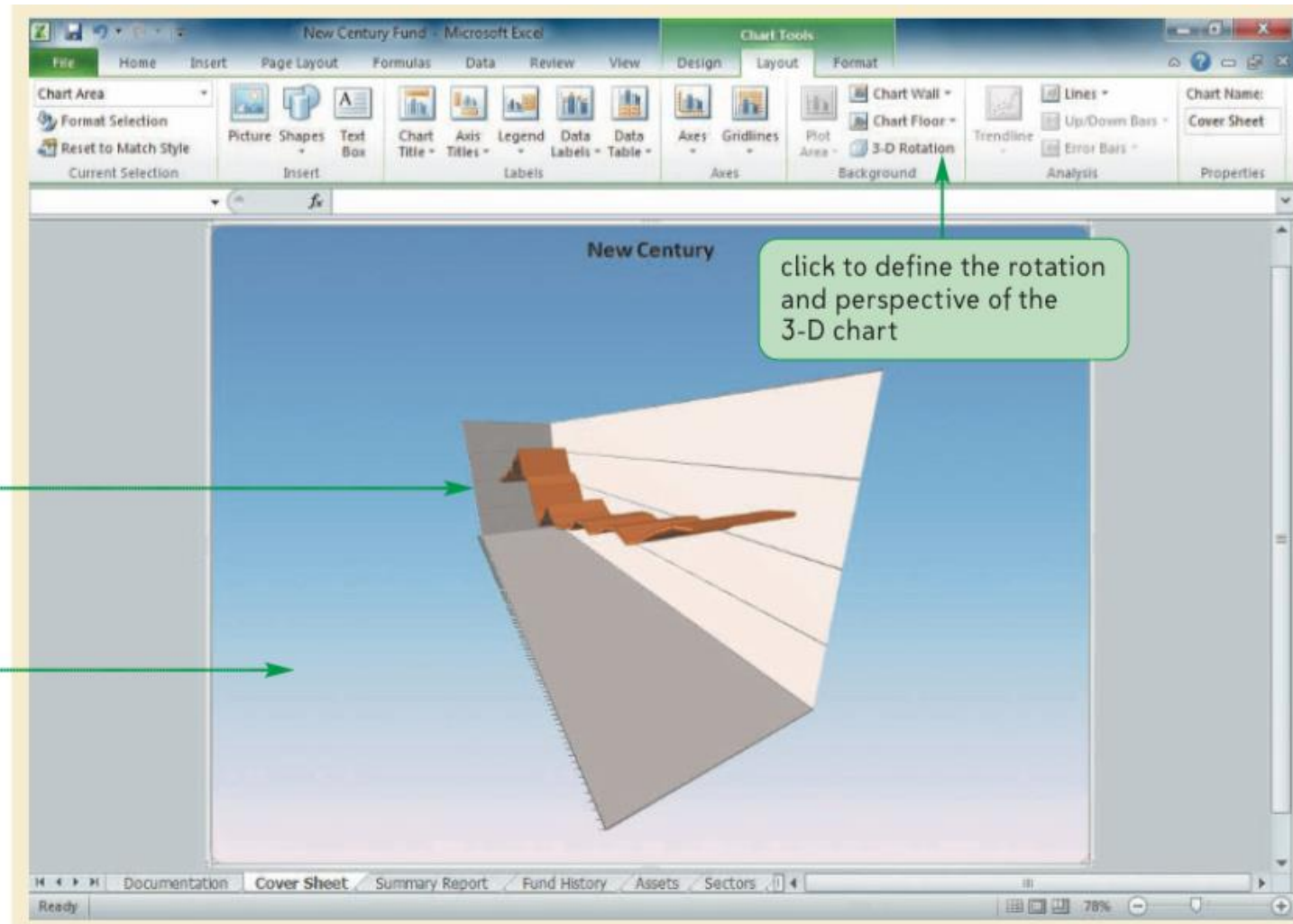
- Chart sheets are helpful for detailed charts that need more space to be seen clearly or when you want to show a chart without any worksheet text or data.
- Some reports require large expansive charts rather than compact graphs to provide more detail and make them easier to view and share. In those situations, you may want to devote an entire sheet to a graph rather than embed it within a worksheet.
- To create a larger version of a chart that covers an entire sheet, you move the chart to a chart sheet. Chart sheets are used for graphic elements like charts and images, and do not contain worksheet cells for calculating numeric values.
- **To create a chart sheet:**
 - Select the relevant data range.
 - Click the Insert tab on the Ribbon.
 - In the Charts group, click the Line button, and then click the 3-D Line chart type. The 3-D line chart is embedded in the worksheet. You'll move this chart to a chart sheet.
 - In the Location group on the Chart Tools Design tab, click the Move Chart button. The Move Chart dialog box opens.
 - Click the New sheet option button, and then type the name for the new chart sheet.
 - Click the OK button. A chart sheet that contains the 3-D line chart is inserted in the workbook.

CREATING A CHART SHEET



CREATING A CHART SHEET

- You can format a chart in a chart sheet using all the same options and tools as you do to format a chart embedded in a worksheet.



WORKSHEET FORMATTING

The **Format Painter** copies and pastes formatting from one cell or range to another without duplicating any data.

You can format a text string within a cell in Edit mode.

The appearance of text is determined by its **typeface**, which is the specific design of a set of characters, including letters, numbers, punctuation marks, and symbols.

Every font can be formatted with a font style such as *italic*, **bold**, or ***bold italic*** and special effects such as underline, ~~strikethrough~~, and color.

The Alignment group has buttons for setting the horizontal and vertical alignment, the orientation, indents, and text wrapping of text in a cell, as well as merging cells.

You can **merge**, or combine, several cells into one cell. This content is merged and centered across the range A4:F4.

You can set the **font size** to increase or decrease the size of the text. Font sizes are measured in **points**, where one point is approximately 1/72 of an inch.

X310 Yearly Sales Anal		
	2011 Sales	2012 Sales
	3,605	3,853
	3,966	3,842
	3,760	4,035
	3,777	4,063
	3,974	3,725

WORKSHEET FORMATTING

The Comma style adds a thousands separator and two decimal places to the right of the decimal point, and lines up values by their decimal points. You can change how many decimal places are displayed.

A **font** is a set of characters that employ the same typeface, such as Arial, Times New Roman, and Courier.

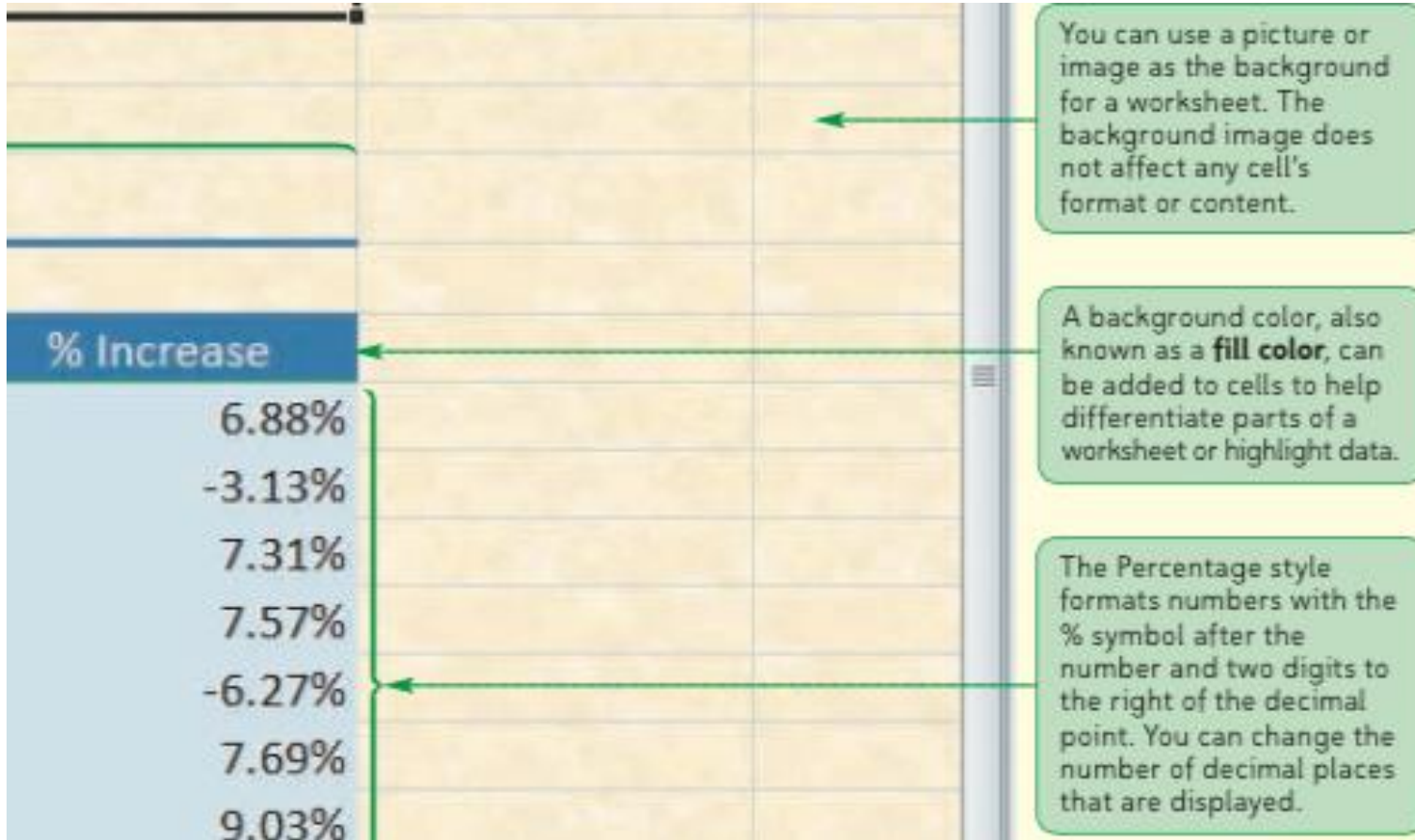
The Accounting style lines up currency values by their currency symbol and decimal point; negative numbers are enclosed in parentheses.

one point is approximately 1/72 of an inch.

9	Units Sold	R03	3,760
10		R04	3,777
11		R05	3,974
12		R06	3,656
13		R07	3,554
14		R08	3,844
15		Total	30,136
16			
17	Region	2011 Sales	20
18	R01	\$ 104,364.75	\$
19	R02	114,815.70	

Ready Scroll Lock Documentation Yearly Sales Monthly Sales

WORKSHEET FORMATTING



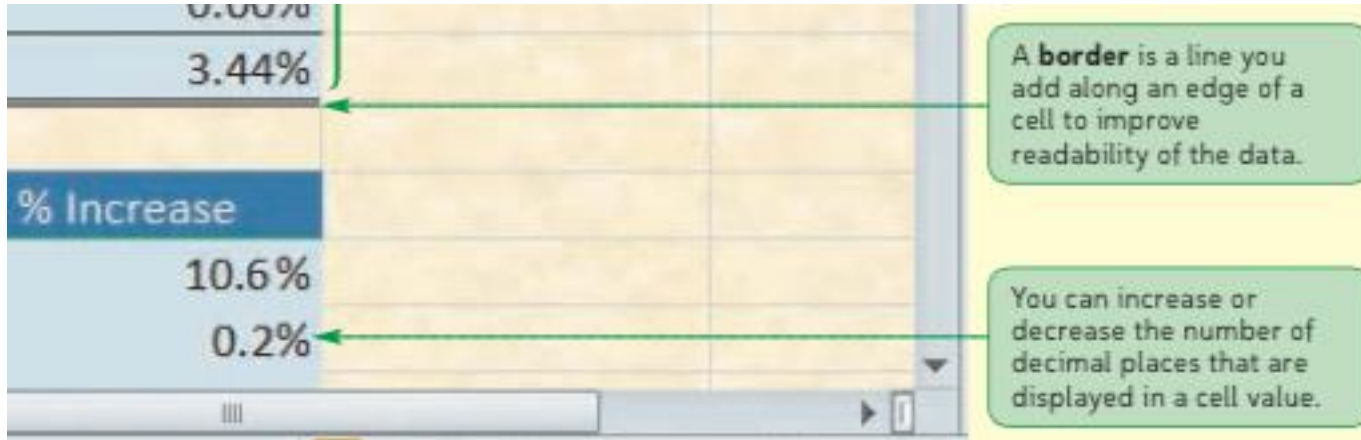
You can use a picture or image as the background for a worksheet. The background image does not affect any cell's format or content.

A background color, also known as a **fill color**, can be added to cells to help differentiate parts of a worksheet or highlight data.

The Percentage style formats numbers with the % symbol after the number and two digits to the right of the decimal point. You can change the number of decimal places that are displayed.

% Increase
6.88%
-3.13%
7.31%
7.57%
-6.27%
7.69%
9.03%

WORKSHEET FORMATTING



The screenshot shows a portion of an Excel worksheet. The first column contains the following values: 0.00%, 3.44%, a blue header cell with "% Increase", 10.6%, and 0.2%. The second column is empty. A green arrow points from the first callout box to the right border of the cell containing 3.44%. Another green arrow points from the second callout box to the right border of the cell containing 0.2%.

A **border** is a line you add along an edge of a cell to improve readability of the data.

You can increase or decrease the number of decimal places that are displayed in a cell value.

FORMATTING CELL TEXT

- Formatting is the process of **changing a workbook's appearance** by defining the fonts, styles, colors, and decorative features. Formatting changes only the appearance of data—it does not affect the data itself.
- Excel organizes its formatting tools in terms of themes. A **theme** is a collection of formats for text, colors, images, and graphical effects applied throughout a workbook. Each theme has a name. The Office theme is the default, although you can apply other themes or create your own. You can also use fonts and colors that are not part of the current theme. As you format a workbook, Live Preview shows the effects of the formats on the workbook's appearance.
- **Formatting Cell Content:**
 - To change the font, select the cell or range. In the Font group on the Home tab, click the Font arrow, and then click a font.
 - To change the font size, select the cell or range. In the Font group on the Home tab, click the Font Size arrow, and then click a font size.
 - To change a font style, select the cell or range. In the Font group on the Home tab, click the Bold, Italic, or Underline button.
 - To change a font color, select the cell or range. In the Font group on the Home tab, click the Font Color button arrow, and then click a color.
 - To format a text selection, double-click the cell to enter Edit mode, select the text to format, change the font, size, style, or color, and then press the Enter key.

FORMATTING CELL TEXT

The screenshot shows the Microsoft Excel 2010 interface with the 'Home' tab selected. The 'Font' group on the ribbon is active, and the font dropdown menu is open. The menu is divided into 'Theme Fonts' (Cambria, Calibri) and 'All Fonts' (Agency FB, Aharoni, ALGERIAN, Andalus, Aragona New, Aragona UPC, Aparajita, Arabic Typesetting, Arial, Arial Black, Arial Narrow, Arial Rounded MT Bold, Arial Unicode MS, Baskerville Old Face, Batang, BatangChe, Bauhaus 93). Annotations with green arrows point to the 'Font arrow' (the dropdown arrow), 'theme fonts' (the 'Theme Fonts' section), 'Font Size arrow' (the font size dropdown), and 'theme and non-theme fonts' (the 'All Fonts' section). The spreadsheet shows a table with columns C, D, and E. Cell C1 contains 'ExerComp Sales Report', C2 contains 'The Internet', C3 contains 'Author', C4 contains 'Date', C5 contains 'Purpose', C6 contains '2012 sales of the X310 heart rate monitor', and C7 contains '2012 sales of the X310 heart rate monitor'.

Font arrow

theme fonts

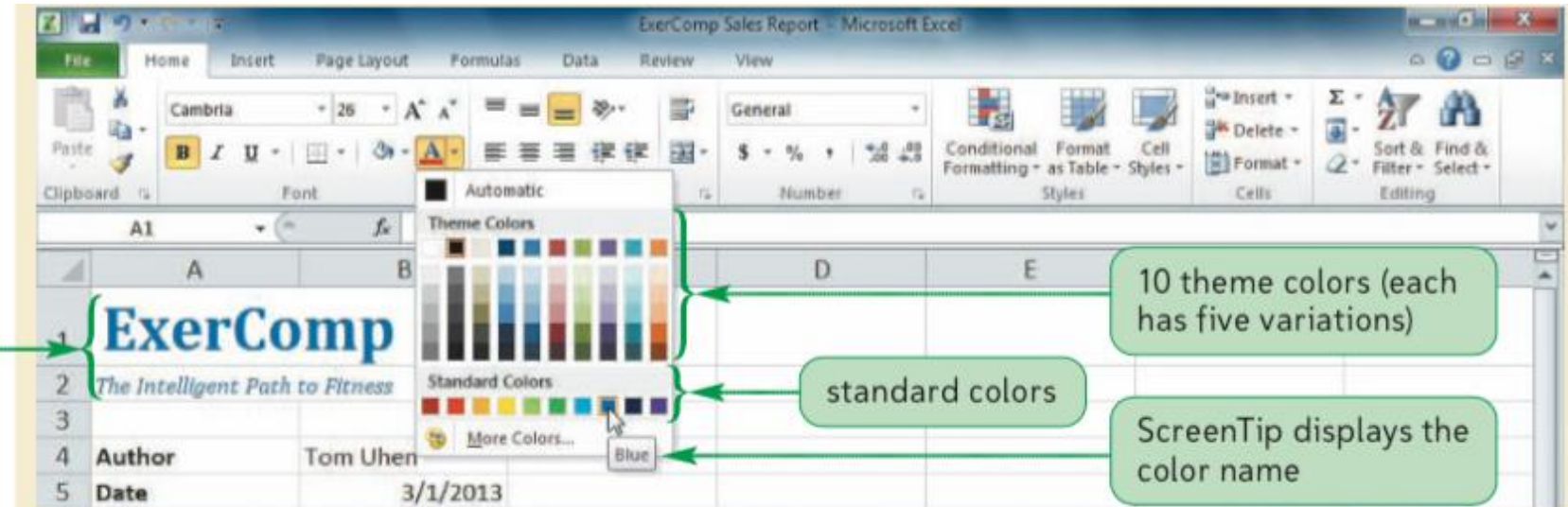
Font Size arrow

theme and non-theme fonts

TIP
You can also change the font size incrementally by clicking the Increase Font Size or Decrease Font Size button in the Font group on the Home tab.

FORMATTING CELL TEXT

Live Preview shows the text with the font color

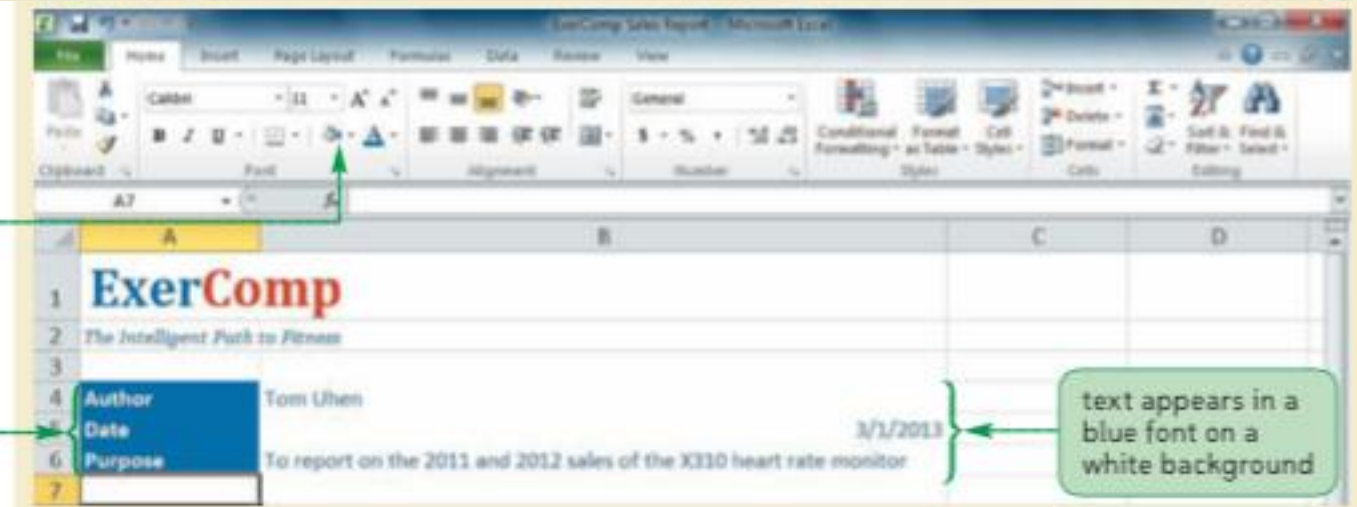


TIP

You can add a fill color to a sheet tab. In the Cells group on the Home tab, click the Format button, point to Tab Color, and then click a color.

Fill Color button

text appears in a white font on a blue background

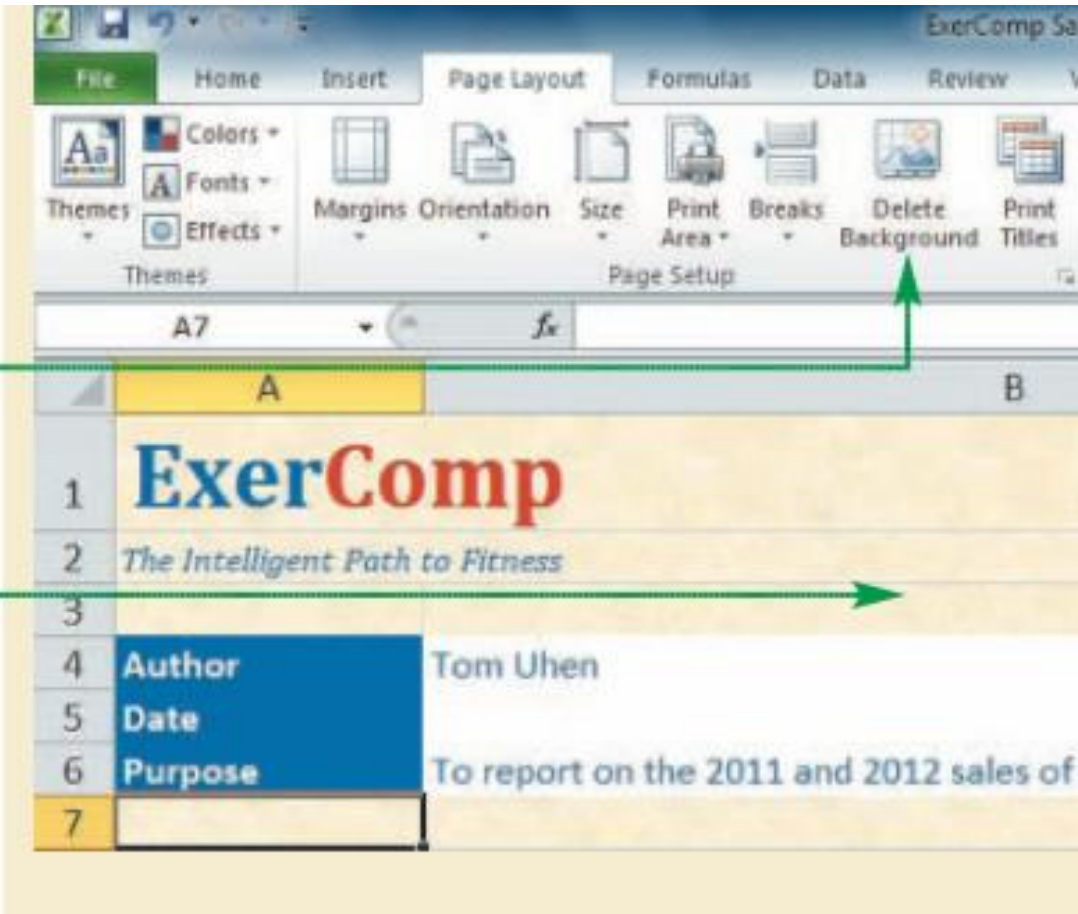


ADDING A BACKGROUND IMAGE



- You can use a picture or an image as the background for a worksheet. An image can give the worksheet a textured appearance, like that of granite, wood, or fibered paper. The image is repeated until it fills the entire worksheet.
- The background image does not affect any cell's format or content. Background colors applied to cells appear on top of the image, covering that portion of the image.
- Background images do not print.
- **To add a background image to the worksheet:**
 - Click the Page Layout tab on the Ribbon. The page layout options appear on the Ribbon.
 - In the Page Setup group, click the Background button. The Sheet Background dialog box opens.
 - Navigate to the image file, and then click the Insert button. The image is added to the background of the worksheet.

ADDING A BACKGROUND IMAGE



click to remove the background image

background comes from an image file and is repeated until it fills the sheet

	A	B
1	ExerComp	
2	<i>The Intelligent Path to Fitness</i>	
3		
4	Author	Tom Uhen
5	Date	
6	Purpose	To report on the 2011 and 2012 sales of t
7		

WRITTEN COMMUNICATION: FORMATTING WORKBOOKS FOR READABILITY AND APPEAL

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



- Designing a workbook requires the same care as designing any written document or report. A well-formatted workbook is easier to read and establishes **a sense of professionalism** with readers. Do the following to improve the appearance of your workbooks:
 - Clearly identify each worksheet's purpose with column or row titles and a descriptive sheet name.
 - Don't crowd individual worksheets with too much information. Each worksheet should deal with only one or two topics. Place extra topics on separate sheets. Readers should be able to interpret each worksheet with a minimal amount of horizontal and vertical scrolling.
 - Place worksheets containing the most important information first in the workbook. Position worksheets summarizing your findings near the front of the workbook. Position worksheets with detailed and involved analysis near the end as an appendix.
 - Use consistent formatting throughout the workbook. If negative values appear in red on one worksheet, format them in the same way on all sheets. Also, be consistent in the use of thousands separators, decimal places, and percentages.
 - Pay attention to the format of the printed workbook. Make sure your printouts are legible with informative headers and footers. Check that the content of the printout is scaled correctly to the page size and that page breaks divide the information into logical sections.
- Excel provides many formatting tools. However, too much formatting can be intrusive, overwhelm data, and make the document difficult to read. Always remember, the goal of formatting is not simply to make a “pretty workbook,” but also to accentuate important trends and relationships in the data.

USING COLOR TO ENHANCE A WORKBOOK



- When used wisely, color can enhance any workbook. However, when used improperly, color can distract the user, making the workbook more difficult to read. As you format a workbook, keep in mind the following tips:
 - Use colors from the same theme within a workbook to maintain a consistent look and feel across the worksheets. If the built-in themes do not fit your needs, you can create a custom theme.
 - Use colors to differentiate types of cell content and to direct users where to enter data. For example, format a worksheet so that formula results appear in cells without a fill color and users enter data in cells with a light gray fill color.
 - Avoid garish color combinations that can annoy the reader and be difficult to read.
 - Print the workbook on both color and black-and-white printers to ensure that the printed copy is readable in both versions.
 - Understand your printer's limitations and features. Colors that look good on your monitor might not look as good when printed.
 - Be sensitive to your audience. About 8 percent of all men and 0.5 percent of all women have some type of color blindness and might not be able to see the text when certain color combinations are used. Red-green color blindness is the most common, so avoid using red text on a green background or green text on a red background.

APPLYING NUMBER FORMATS



- You can **format values using a number format**, which displays the values in a way that makes it easy for the reader to quickly understand and interpret them. You can change the number format for the displayed value without affecting the underlying stored value.
- Excel formats numbers by default in the **General number format**, which, for the most part, displays values exactly as they are typed by the user. If the value is calculated from a formula or function, Excel shows as many digits after the decimal point as will fit in the cell with the last displayed digit rounded. Calculated values too large to fit into the cell are displayed in scientific notation.
- The General number format is good for simple calculations, but some values require additional formatting to make the numbers easier to interpret. Using Excel, you can:
 - Set the number of digits displayed to the right of the **decimal** point.
 - Add commas to act as a **thousands separator** for large values.
 - Apply **currency or accounting symbols** to numeric values to identify the monetary unit being used.
 - Display **percentages** using the % symbol.

APPLYING NUMBER FORMATS

Decrease Decimal button

Comma Style button

thousands separators added to each value; no digits appear to the right of the decimal place

negative values are displayed within parentheses

zeroes appear as dashes

Units Sold	Region	2011 Sales	2012 Sales	Increase	% Increase
	R01	3,605	3,853	248	0.068793343
	R02	3,966	3,842	(124)	-0.031265759
	R03	3,760	4,035	275	0.073138298
	R04	3,777	4,063	286	0.075721472
	R05	3,974	3,725	(249)	-0.062657272
	R06	3,656	3,937	281	0.076859956
	R07	3,554	3,875	321	0.090320765
	R08	3,844	3,844	-	0
	Total	30,136	31,174	1,038	0.034443855

APPLYING NUMBER FORMATS

Diagram illustrating the application of number formats in Microsoft Excel 2010.

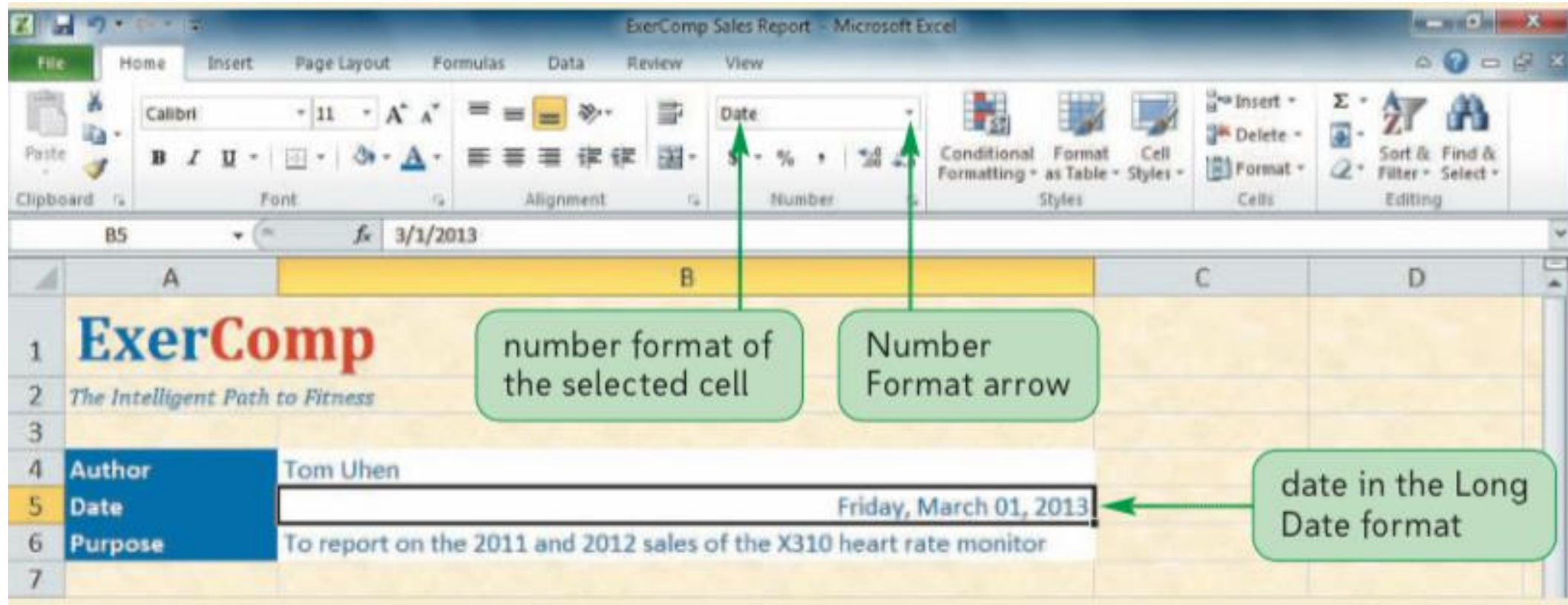
The screenshot shows the Excel ribbon with the **Number** group selected. The **Percent Style** button is highlighted, and the **Increase Decimal** button is also indicated.

The data values are formatted as percentages with two decimal places.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
6	Units Sold	Region	2011 Sales	2012 Sales	Increase	% Increase	
7		R01	3,605	3,853	248	6.88%	
8		R02	3,966	3,842	(124)	-3.13%	
9		R03	3,760	4,035	275	7.31%	
10		R04	3,777	4,063	286	7.57%	
11		R05	3,974	3,725	(249)	-6.27%	
12		R06	3,656	3,937	281	7.69%	
13		R07	3,554	3,875	321	9.03%	
14		R08	3,844	3,844	-	0.00%	
15		Total	30,136	31,174	1,038	3.44%	
16							
17	Revenue	Region	2011 Sales	2012 Sales	Increase	% Increase	
18		R01	\$ 104,364.75	\$ 115,397.35	\$ 11,032.60	10.57%	

FORMATTING DATES AND TIMES

- Because Excel stores dates and times as numbers and not as text, you can apply different formats without affecting the date and time value.

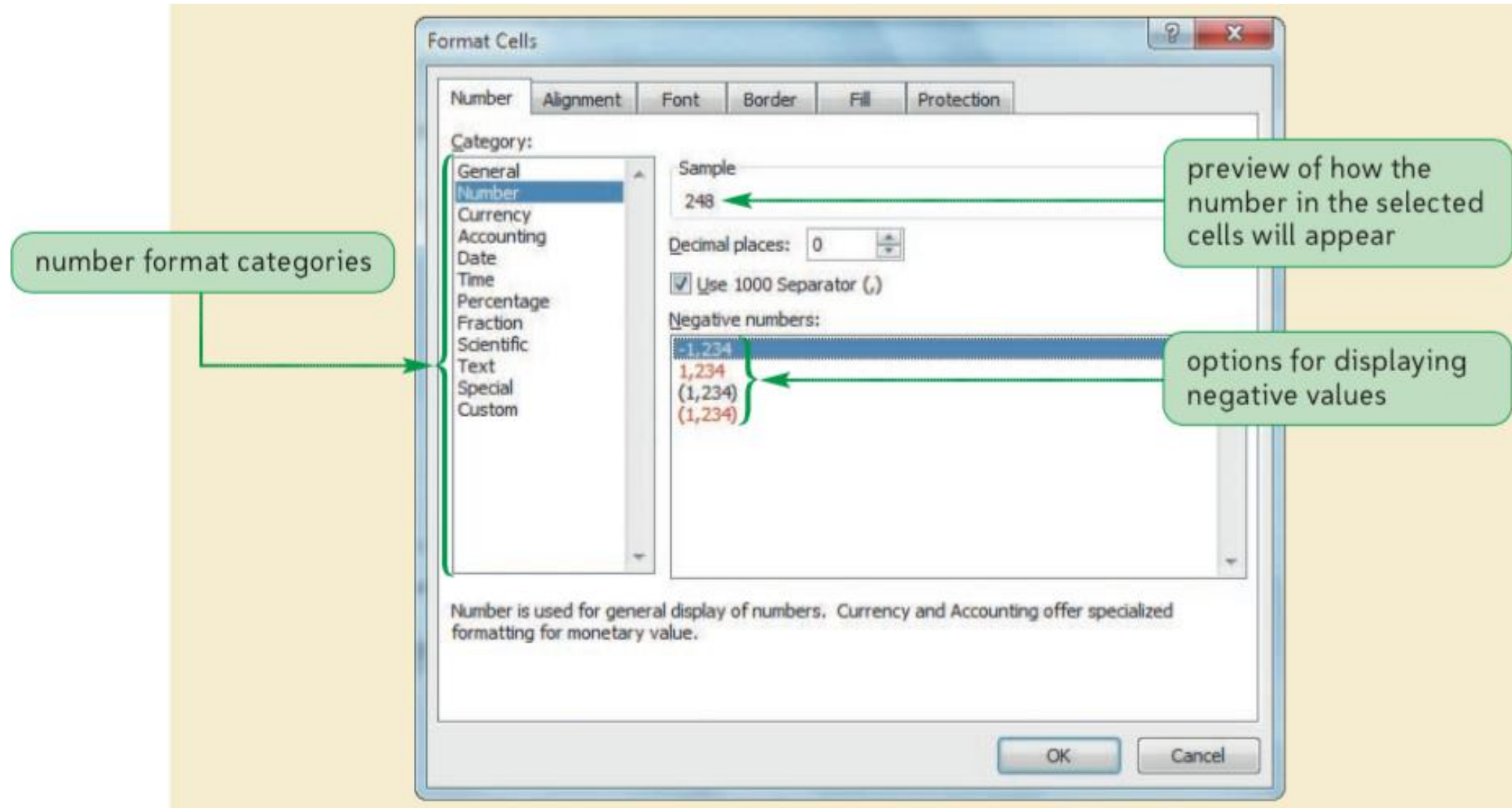


EXPLORING OPTIONS IN THE FORMAT CELLS DIALOG BOX

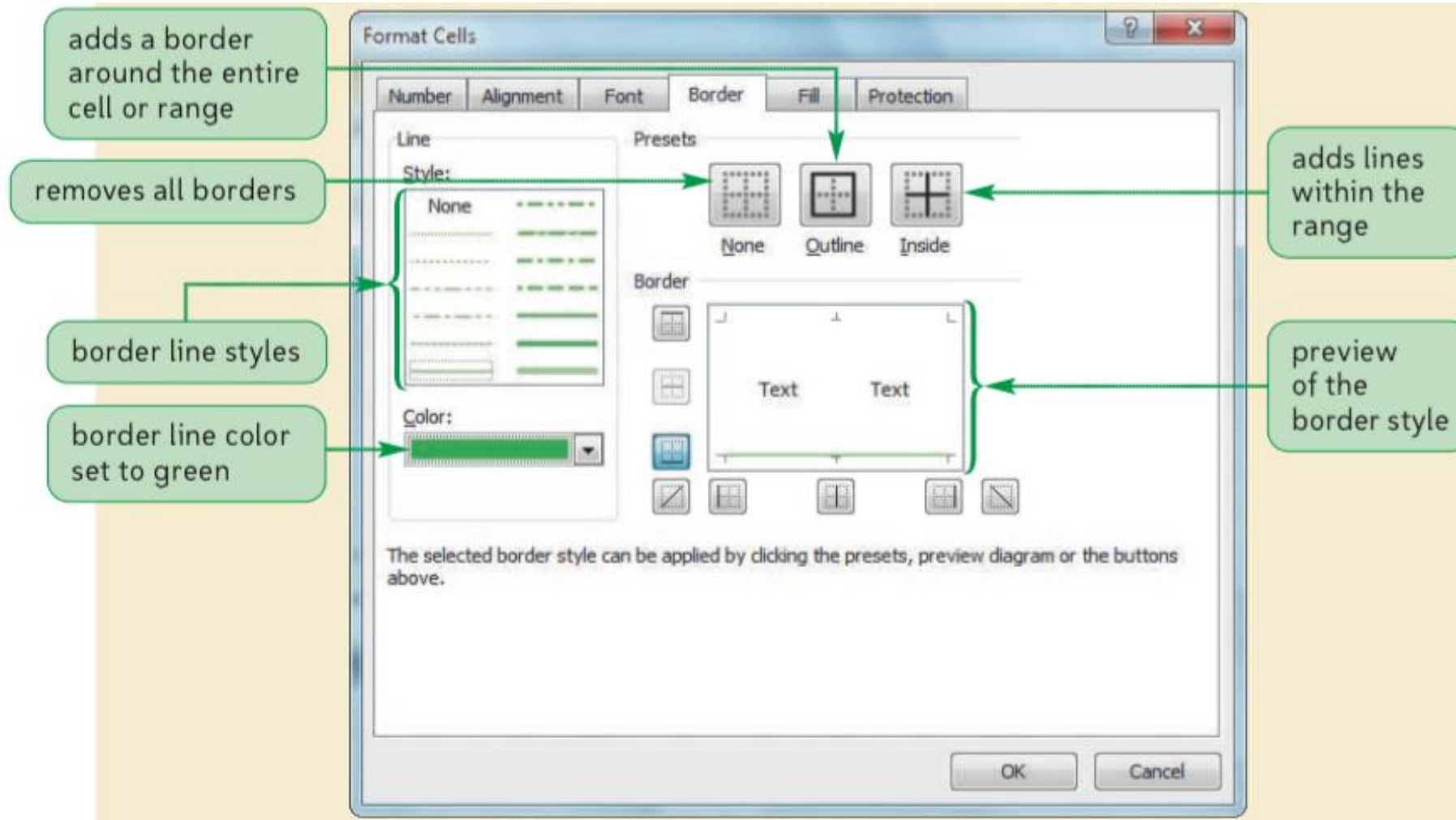


- The buttons on the Home tab provide quick access to the most commonly used formatting choices. For more options, you can use the Format Cells dialog box.
- You can open the Format Cells dialog box by right-clicking a cell or selected range, and then clicking Format Cells on the shortcut menu.
- The Format Cells dialog box has six tabs, each focusing on a different set of formatting options, as described below. You can apply the formats in this dialog box to selected worksheet cells.
 - **Number** provides options for formatting the appearance of numbers, including dates and numbers treated as text (for example, telephone or Social Security numbers).
 - **Alignment** provides options for how data is aligned within a cell.
 - **Font** provides options for selecting font types, sizes, styles, and other formatting attributes such as underlining and font colors.
 - **Border** provides options for adding and removing cell borders as well as selecting a line style and color.
 - **Fill** provides options for creating and applying background colors and patterns to cells.
 - **Protection** provides options for locking or hiding cells to prevent other users from modifying their contents.

EXPLORING OPTIONS IN THE FORMAT CELLS DIALOG BOX







EXPLORING OPTIONS IN THE FORMAT CELLS DIALOG BOX










ALIGNING CELL CONTENT

- By default, cell text is aligned with the left and bottom borders of a cell and cell values are aligned with the right and bottom borders. In some cases, you might want to change the text alignment to make the text more readable or visually appealing. In general, you should center column titles, left-align other cell text, and align numbers to keep their decimal places lined up within a column. The buttons to set these alignment options are located in the Alignment group on the Home tab.

Button	Description
	Aligns the cell content with the cell's top edge
	Vertically centers the cell content within the cell
	Aligns the cell content with the cell's bottom edge
	Aligns the cell content with the cell's left edge

ALIGNING CELL CONTENT

Button	Description
	Horizontally centers the cell content within the cell
	Aligns the cell content with the cell's right edge
	Decreases the size of the indentation used in the cell
	Increases the size of the indentation used in the cell
	Rotates the cell content to any angle within the cell
	Forces the cell text to wrap within the cell borders
	Merges the selected cells into a single cell

ALIGNING CELL CONTENT

The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet titled "ExerComp Sales Report - Microsoft Excel". The ribbon is set to "Home", and the "Alignment" group is active. A green callout box points to the center alignment icon, stating "text centered in each cell". Another green callout box points to the left alignment icon, stating "text indented one character space". The spreadsheet contains two tables: "Units Sold" (rows 6-15) and "Revenue" (rows 17-26). Both tables have columns for Region, 2011 Sales, 2012 Sales, Increase, and % Increase. The "Units Sold" table has a "Total" row at row 15. The "Revenue" table has a "Total" row at row 26. The "Units Sold" table is highlighted with a yellow background. The "Revenue" table is highlighted with a light blue background. The "Units Sold" table has a green arrow pointing to the "Region" column header, and the "Revenue" table has a green arrow pointing to the "Region" column header. The "Units Sold" table has a green arrow pointing to the "Increase" column header, and the "Revenue" table has a green arrow pointing to the "Increase" column header. The "Units Sold" table has a green arrow pointing to the "% Increase" column header, and the "Revenue" table has a green arrow pointing to the "% Increase" column header.

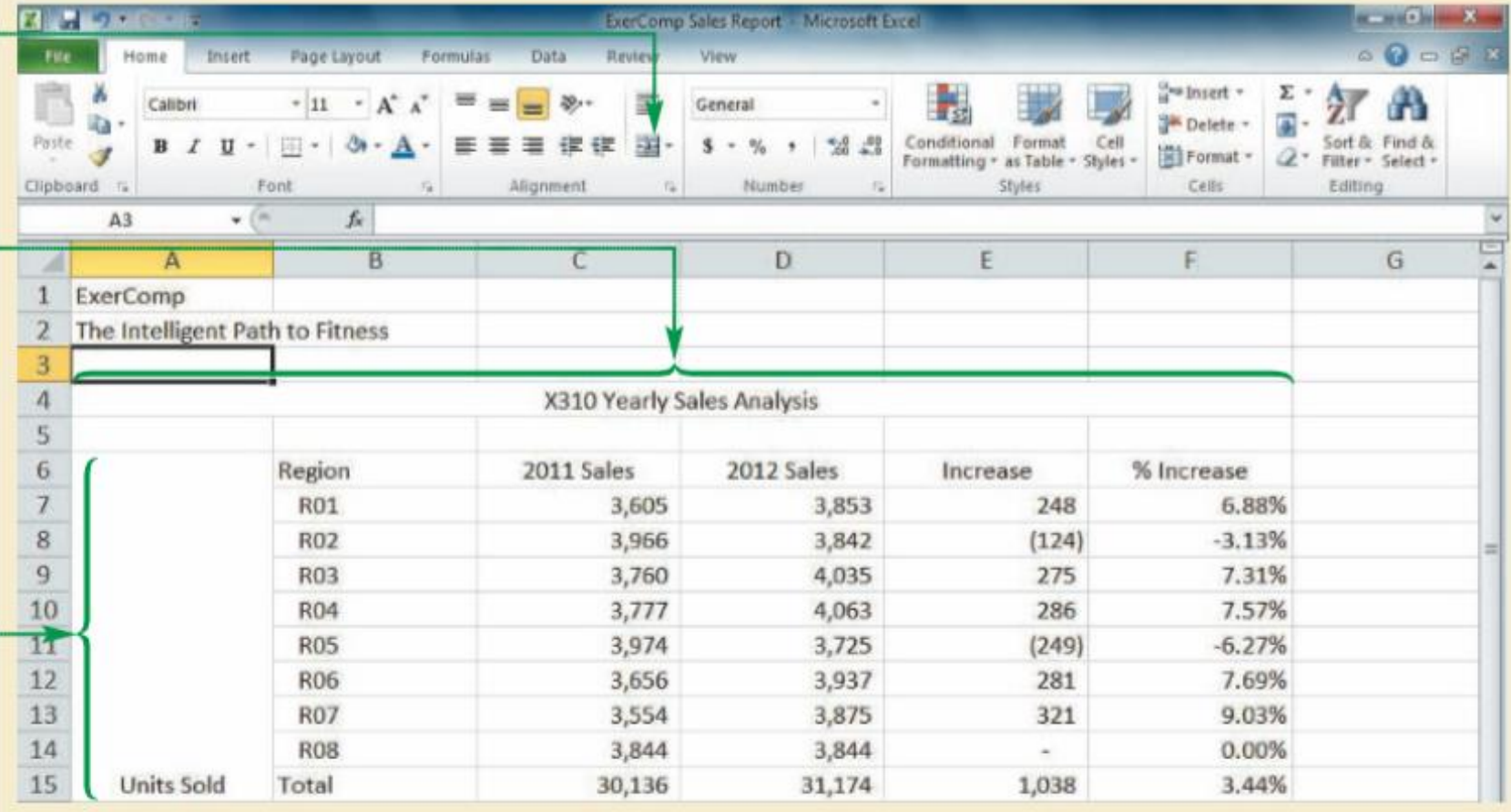
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
6	Units Sold	Region	2011 Sales	2012 Sales	Increase	% Increase	
7		R01	3,605	3,853	248	6.88%	
8		R02	3,966	3,842	(124)	-3.13%	
9		R03	3,760	4,035	275	7.31%	
10		R04	3,777	4,063	286	7.57%	
11		R05	3,974	3,725	(249)	-6.27%	
12		R06	3,656	3,937	281	7.69%	
13		R07	3,554	3,875	321	9.03%	
14		R08	3,844	3,844	-	0.00%	
15		Total	30,136	31,174	1,038	3.44%	
16							
17	Revenue	Region	2011 Sales	2012 Sales	Increase	% Increase	
18		R01	\$ 104,364.75	\$ 115,397.35	\$ 11,032.60	10.57%	
19		R02	114,815.70	115,067.90	252.20	0.22%	
20		R03	108,852.00	120,848.25	11,996.25	11.02%	
21		R04	109,344.15	121,686.85	12,342.70	11.29%	
22		R05	115,047.30	111,563.75	(3,483.55)	-3.03%	
23		R06	105,841.20	117,913.15	12,071.95	11.41%	
24		R07	102,888.30	116,056.25	13,167.95	12.80%	
25		R08	111,283.80	115,127.80	3,844.00	3.45%	
26		Total	\$ 872,437.20	\$ 933,661.30	\$ 61,224.10	7.02%	

MERGING CELLS

Merge & Center button

range A4:F4 merged into a single cell with the contents centered

range A6:A15 merged into a single cell



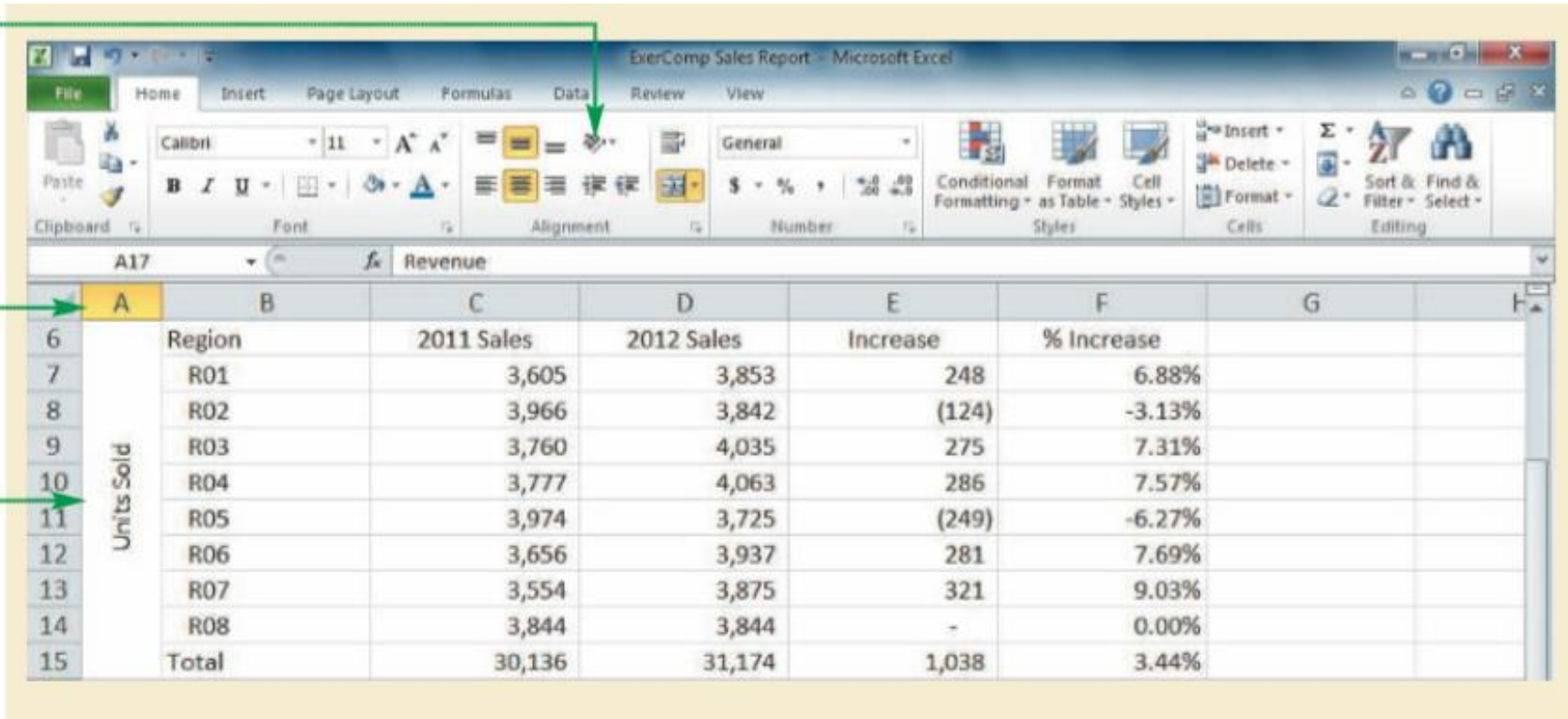
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	ExerComp						
2	The Intelligent Path to Fitness						
3							
4	X310 Yearly Sales Analysis						
5							
6		Region	2011 Sales	2012 Sales	Increase	% Increase	
7		R01	3,605	3,853	248	6.88%	
8		R02	3,966	3,842	(124)	-3.13%	
9		R03	3,760	4,035	275	7.31%	
10		R04	3,777	4,063	286	7.57%	
11		R05	3,974	3,725	(249)	-6.27%	
12		R06	3,656	3,937	281	7.69%	
13		R07	3,554	3,875	321	9.03%	
14		R08	3,844	3,844	-	0.00%	
15	Units Sold	Total	30,136	31,174	1,038	3.44%	

ROTATING CELL CONTENTS

Orientation button

column A is five characters wide

rotated label takes up less space in the merged cell



The screenshot shows the Microsoft Excel 2010 interface. The ribbon is set to the 'Home' tab, and the 'Orientation' button in the 'Alignment' group is highlighted with a green arrow. The spreadsheet displays a sales report for 'ExerComp Sales Report'. Column A is five characters wide. The label 'Units Sold' is rotated 90 degrees counter-clockwise and placed in a merged cell spanning rows 6 to 15. The data in the spreadsheet is as follows:

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
6		Region	2011 Sales	2012 Sales	Increase	% Increase	
7		R01	3,605	3,853	248	6.88%	
8		R02	3,966	3,842	(124)	-3.13%	
9		R03	3,760	4,035	275	7.31%	
10		R04	3,777	4,063	286	7.57%	
11		R05	3,974	3,725	(249)	-6.27%	
12		R06	3,656	3,937	281	7.69%	
13		R07	3,554	3,875	321	9.03%	
14		R08	3,844	3,844	-	0.00%	
15		Total	30,136	31,174	1,038	3.44%	

COPYING FORMATS WITH THE PASTE OPTIONS BUTTON

The screenshot shows an Excel worksheet with two tables. The first table, '2011 Sales', is in the range B2:G6. The second table, '2012 Sales', is in the range B9:G13. A 'Paste Options' menu is open, showing 14 options for pasting content and formatting. The menu is divided into three sections: 'Paste' (4 options), 'Paste Values' (3 options), and 'Other Paste Options' (7 options). The 'Paste' section includes icons for 'Paste All' (Ctrl+V), 'Paste Values' (Ctrl+Shift+V), 'Paste Formulas' (Ctrl+D), and 'Paste Formulas and Formatting' (Ctrl+Alt+V). The 'Paste Values' section includes icons for 'Paste Values' (Ctrl+Shift+V), 'Paste Values and Number Formats' (Ctrl+Shift+V), and 'Paste Values and Text Formats' (Ctrl+Shift+V). The 'Other Paste Options' section includes icons for 'Paste Values and All Formats' (Ctrl+Shift+V), 'Paste Values and All Formats (Keep Source Formatting)' (Ctrl+Shift+V), 'Paste Values and All Formats (Keep Source Formatting)' (Ctrl+Shift+V), 'Paste Values and All Formats (Keep Source Formatting)' (Ctrl+Shift+V), 'Paste Values and All Formats (Keep Source Formatting)' (Ctrl+Shift+V), 'Paste Values and All Formats (Keep Source Formatting)' (Ctrl+Shift+V), and 'Paste Values and All Formats (Keep Source Formatting)' (Ctrl+Shift+V).

Model	R01	R02	R03	Total
X310	3,605	3,996	3,760	11,361
X410	1,875	1,924	2,112	5,911
X510	850	912	750	2,512
Total	6,330	6,832	6,622	19,784

Model	R01	R02	R03	Total
X310	3,853	3,842	4,035	11,730
X410	2,112	1,801	2,304	6,217
X510	1,025	1,115	912	3,052
Total	6,990	6,758	7,251	20,999

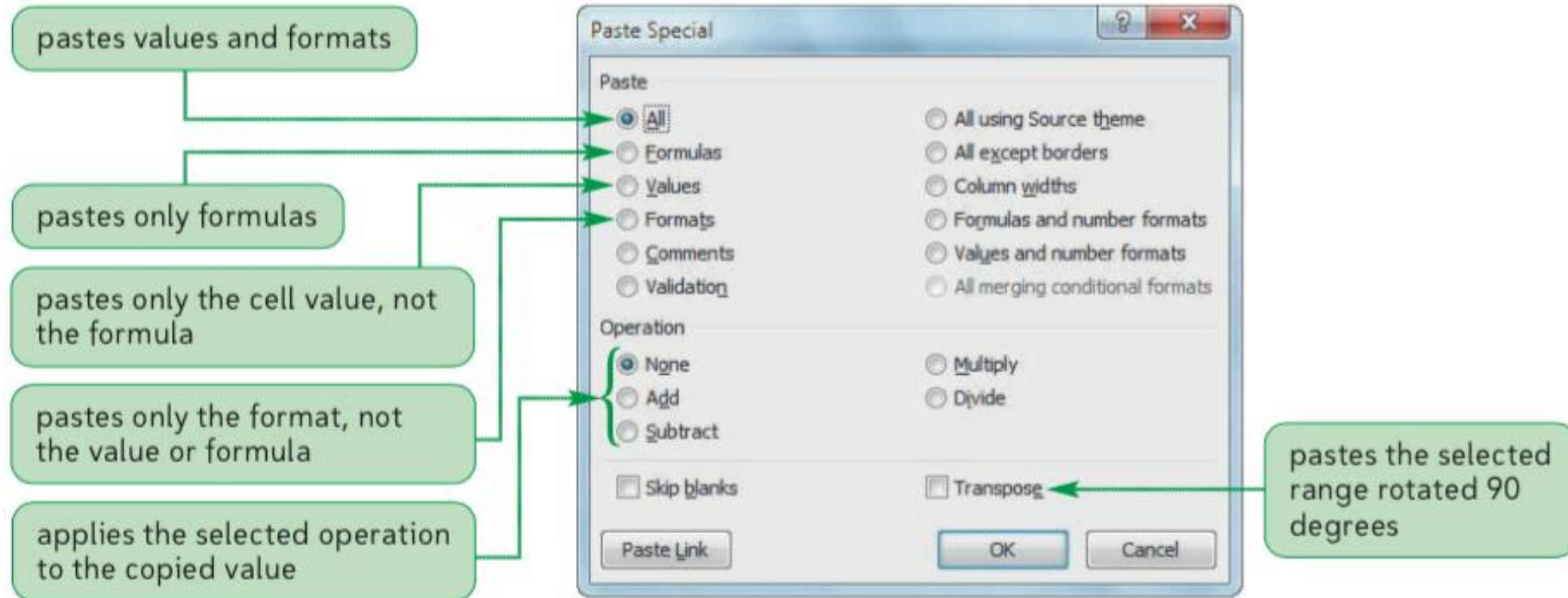
copied range

pasted range

button appears in the lower-right corner of the pasted range

14 option buttons specify what to paste into the selected cell range

COPYING FORMATS WITH PASTE SPECIAL



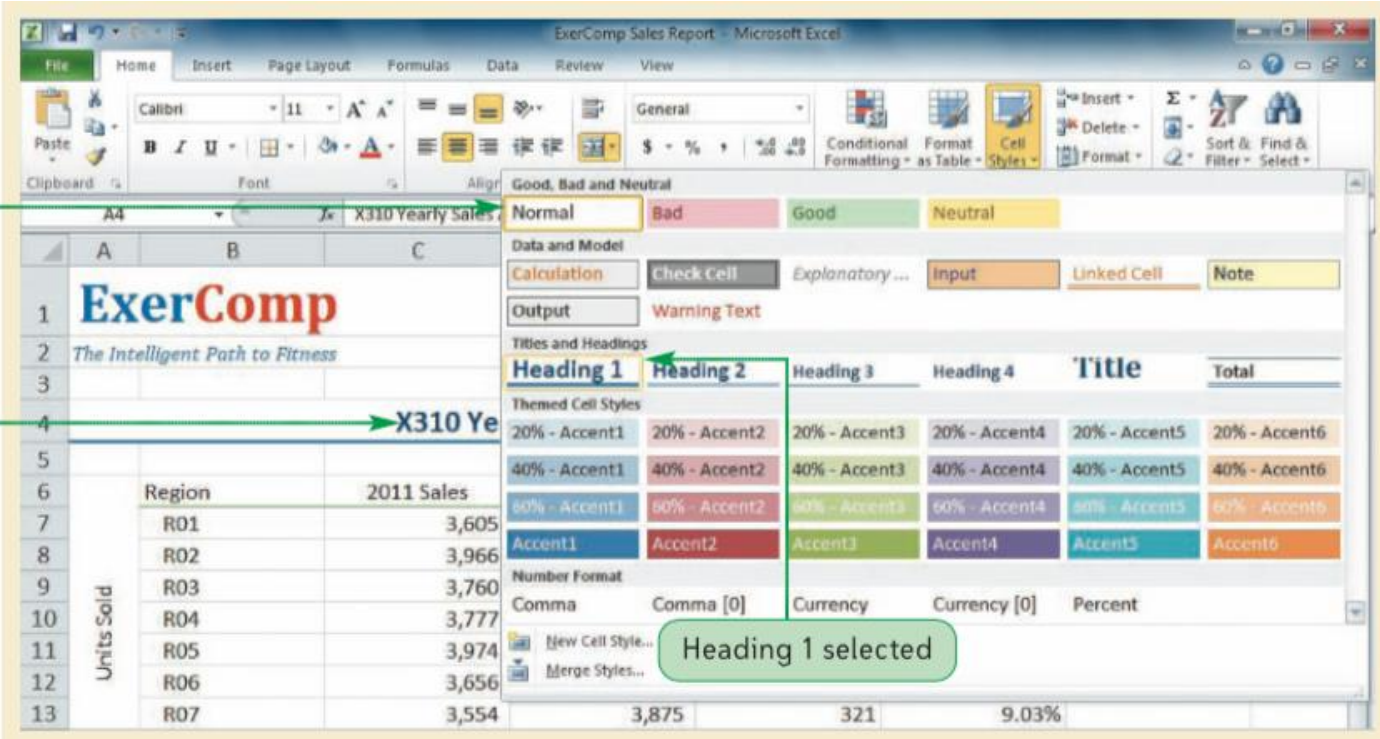
APPLYING CELL STYLES



- A workbook often contains several cells that store the same type of data. For example, each worksheet might have a cell displaying the sheet title, or a range of financial data might have several cells containing summary totals. It's good design practice to **apply the same format to worksheet cells that contain the same type of data**.
- One way to ensure that you are using consistent formats is to copy and paste your formats using the Format Painter. The Format Painter is effective, but it can also be time consuming if you need to copy the same format to several cells scattered across the workbook. Moreover, if you decide to modify the format, you must copy and paste the revised format all over again. Another way to ensure that cells displaying the same type of data use the same format is with styles.
- A style is a selection of formatting options using a specific font and color from the current theme. For example, you can create a style to display sheet titles in a bold, white, 20-point Calibri font on a blue background. You can then apply that style to any sheet title in a workbook. If you later revise the style, the appearance of any cell formatted with that style is updated automatically. This **saves you the time and effort of reformatting each cell individually**.

APPLYING A CELL STYLE

- Select the cell or range to which you want to apply a style.
- In the Styles group on the Home tab, click the Cell Styles button.
- Point to each style in the Cell Styles gallery to see a Live Preview of that style on the selected cell or range.
- Click the style you want to apply to the selected cell or range.



gallery of built-in styles

Live Preview of the Heading 1 style applied to cell A4

Heading 1 selected

ExerComp		The Intelligent Path to Fitness	
X310 Yearly Sales		X310 Yearly Sales	
Region	2011 Sales		
R01	3,605		
R02	3,966		
R03	3,760		
R04	3,777		
R05	3,974		
R06	3,656		
R07	3,554		
	3,875	321	9.03%

WORKING WITH THEMES



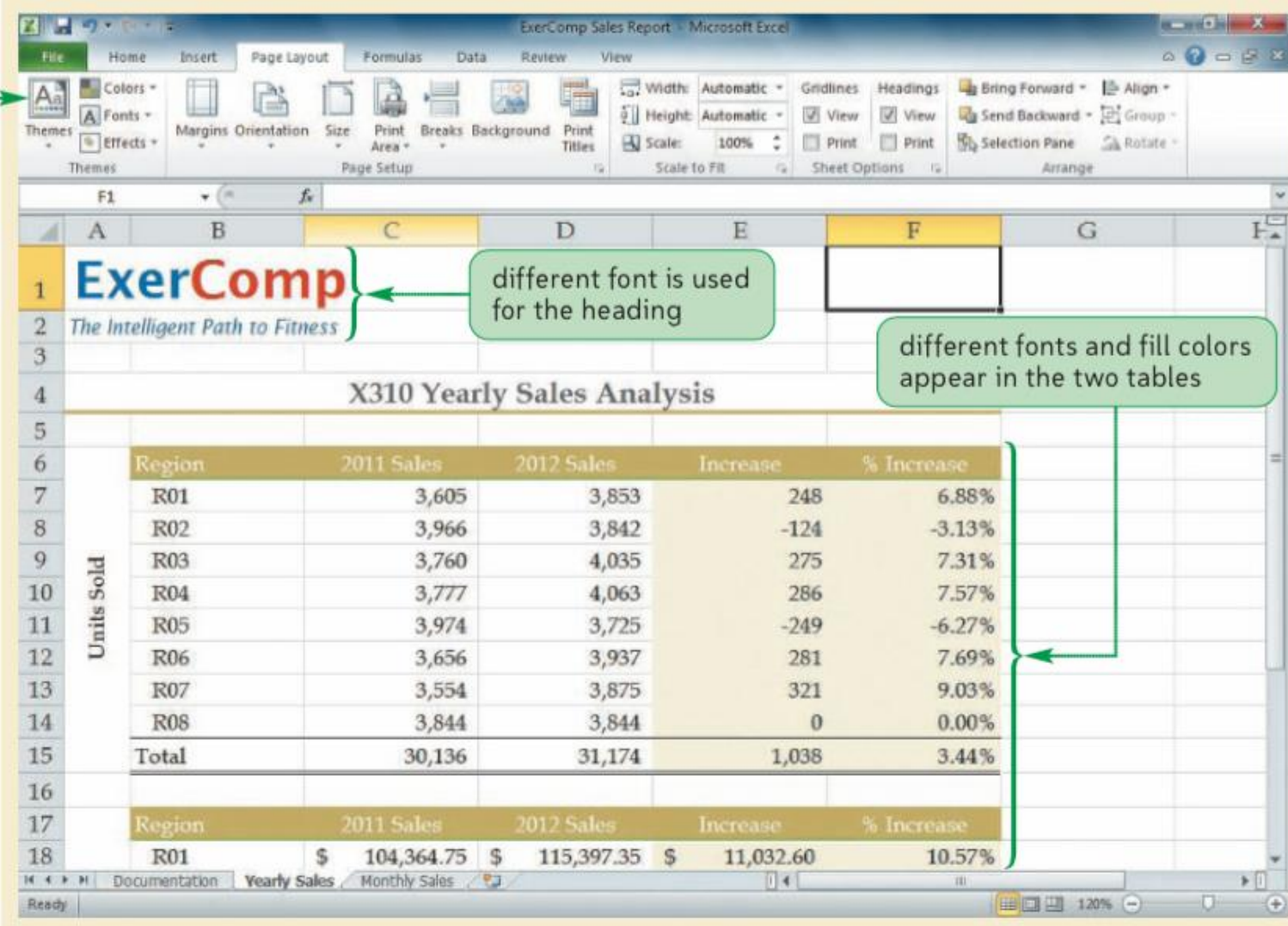
- Fonts, colors, and cell styles are organized in theme and non-theme categories.
- The appearance of these fonts, colors, and cell styles depends on the workbook's current theme. If you change the theme, the formatting of these elements also changes throughout the entire workbook.
- **To change the workbook's theme:**
 - Click the Page Layout tab on the Ribbon.
 - In the Themes group, click the Themes button. The Themes gallery opens. Office—the current theme—is the default.
 - Point to each theme in the Themes gallery. Live Preview shows how each theme changes the appearance of the Yearly Sales worksheet.
 - Click a theme to apply that theme to the workbook.

WORKING WITH THEMES

Themes button

different font is used for the heading

different fonts and fill colors appear in the two tables



X310 Yearly Sales Analysis					
Region	2011 Sales	2012 Sales	Increase	% Increase	
R01	3,605	3,853	248	6.88%	
R02	3,966	3,842	-124	-3.13%	
R03	3,760	4,035	275	7.31%	
R04	3,777	4,063	286	7.57%	
R05	3,974	3,725	-249	-6.27%	
R06	3,656	3,937	281	7.69%	
R07	3,554	3,875	321	9.03%	
R08	3,844	3,844	0	0.00%	
Total	30,136	31,174	1,038	3.44%	

Region	2011 Sales	2012 Sales	Increase	% Increase
R01	\$ 104,364.75	\$ 115,397.35	\$ 11,032.60	10.57%

TEAMWORK: SHARING STYLES AND THEMES

- Using a common style and design theme for all the files you create in Microsoft Office is a simple way **to give your files a consistent look and feel and project a professional image**. This consistency is especially important when a team of workers is collaborating on a set of documents. When all team members work from a common set of style and design themes, readers will not be distracted by inconsistent or clashing styles.
- **To quickly copy the styles from one workbook to another**, open the workbook with the styles you want to copy, and then open the workbook in which you want to copy those styles. In the Styles group on the Home tab, click the Cell Styles button, and then click Merge Styles. The Merge Styles dialog box opens, listing the currently open workbooks. Select the workbook with the styles you want to copy, and then click the OK button to copy those styles into the current workbook. If you modify any styles, you must copy the styles to the other workbook; Excel does not update styles between workbooks.
- Because other Office files, including those created with Word or PowerPoint, use the same file format for themes, **you can create one theme to use with all the Office files you create**. To save a theme, in the Themes group on the Page Layout tab, click the Themes button, and then click Save Current Theme. The Save Current Theme dialog box opens. Select a save location (in a default Theme folder on your computer or another folder), type a descriptive name in the File name box, and then click the Save button. If you saved the theme file in a default Theme folder, the theme appears in the Themes gallery, and any changes made to the theme are reflected in any Office file that uses that theme.

TEAMWORK: SHARING STYLES AND THEMES



- By creating a library of styles and themes, you can create a report containing pages generated from different Office programs and those pages will still share a consistent set of design elements. Employees with expertise in page design can **design a theme for the rest of the team to use**. If those styles and themes are changed or modified, the new design style can be quickly applied to new and existing documents without having to reformat each document. Through careful planning, **a well-designed theme can save you and your colleagues a lot of effort later on**.

WORKING WITH TABLE STYLES

- Formatting an entire table with a table style is **more efficient than formatting individual cells** in the table.
- In addition, using a table style ensures that the table's formatting reflects any changes made to the table, such as adding or deleting table rows or columns. For example, many tables display alternate rows with different fill colors. This banded rows effect makes the data easier to read, especially in large tables with many rows. You could create the banded rows effect by applying a cell style with a background fill to every other row in the table; but if you later add or delete a row from the table, the banded rows effect might be lost. A table style, on the other hand, applies alternating row colors to the entire Excel table and adjusts the banded rows effect as needed if you add or delete rows. This is because a table style treats the table as a single object rather than a collection of cells.

	A	B	C	D
1	Region	Year 1 Sales	Year 2 Sales	Difference
2	R01	3,605	3,853	248
3	R02	3,966	3,842	-124
4	R03	3,760	4,035	275
5	R04	3,777	4,063	286
6	R05	3,974	3,725	-249
7	R06	3,656	3,937	281
8	R07	3,554	3,875	321
9	R08	3,844	3,844	0
10	Total	30,136	31,174	1,038
11				

original table with banded rows

	A	B	C	D
1	Region	Year 1 Sales	Year 2 Sales	Difference
2	R01	3,605	3,853	248
3	R02	3,966	3,842	-124
4	R03	3,760	4,035	275
5	R07	3,554	3,875	321
6	R08	3,844	3,844	0
7	Total	18,729	19,449	720
8				

after deleting a row from a table formatted manually, the banded effect is lost

	A	B	C	D
1	Region	Year 1 Sales	Year 2 Sales	Difference
2	R01	3,605	3,853	248
3	R02	3,966	3,842	-124
4	R03	3,760	4,035	275
5	R07	3,554	3,875	321
6	R08	3,844	3,844	0
7	Total	18,729	19,449	720
8				

after deleting a row from a table formatted with a table style, the table formatting adjusts to keep banded rows

WORKING WITH TABLE STYLES



- **To apply a table style to a range of data:**
 - Select the range.
 - In the Styles group on the Home tab, click the Format as Table button, and then click the style you want to apply. The 'Format As Table' dialog box opens, confirming the range you selected for the table and whether the table includes header rows.
 - Verify that the range displayed is the correct one and then verify that the 'My table has headers' check box contains a check mark to include the text labels in the table.
 - Click the OK button to apply the table style to the selected range.
- After you apply a table style, you can choose which table elements to include in the style. Table styles have the following six elements that can be turned on or off:
 - Header Row, which formats the first row of the table
 - Total Row, which inserts a new row at the bottom of the table that adds the column values
 - First Column, which formats the first column of the table
 - Last Column, which formats the last column of the table
 - Banded Rows, which formats alternating rows in different colors
 - Banded Columns, which formats alternating columns in different colors

WORKING WITH TABLE STYLES

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



TIP

You can click any cell within a table to make the table active; you do not need to select all of the table cells.

The screenshot shows the Microsoft Excel 2010 interface with a table titled "X310 Monthly Sales Analysis". The table has 11 columns: Month, R01, R02, R03, R04, R05, R06, R07, R08, and Total. The rows are banded, alternating between light blue and white. A vertical label "Units Sold in 2011" is placed to the left of the table. Annotations include:

- "header row" pointing to row 6 (the first row of the table).
- "banded rows" pointing to rows 7-17 (the data rows of the table).
- "click to apply a table style" pointing to the "Format as Table" button in the ribbon.
- "filter arrow" pointing to the filter arrow in the "Total" column header.

Month	R01	R02	R03	R04	R05	R06	R07	R08	Total
Jan	288	345	326	307	364	310	316	352	2,608
Feb	278	304	294	297	310	278	275	294	2,330
Mar	294	320	297	304	316	291	297	307	2,426
Apr	288	313	300	300	320	284	275	295	2,375
May	284	329	304	297	313	288	275	310	2,400
Jun	313	339	316	315	326	307	288	329	2,533
Jul	313	332	320	310	313	300	304	336	2,528
Aug	294	339	315	339	339	304	307	323	2,560
Sep	284	310	310	304	316	284	281	304	2,393
Oct	284	326	304	297	316	281	281	300	2,389
Nov	339	364	326	320	364	345	294	336	2,688

WORKING WITH TABLE STYLES

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



The screenshot shows the Microsoft Excel 2010 interface with the 'Table Tools' ribbon active. The table 'Table1' is selected, and the 'Table Style Options' group is highlighted. The table data is as follows:

Month	R01	R02	R03	R04	R05	R06	R07	R08	Total
Jan	288	345	326	307	364	310	316	352	2,608
Feb	278	304	294	297	310	278	275	294	2,330
Mar	294	320	297	304	316	291	297	307	2,426
Apr	288	313	300	300	320	284	275	295	2,375
May	284	329	304	297	313	288	275	310	2,400
Jun	313	339	316	315	326	307	288	329	2,533
Jul	313	332	320	310	313	300	304	336	2,528
Aug	294	339	315	339	339	304	307	323	2,560
Sep	284	310	310	304	316	284	281	304	2,393
Oct	284	326	304	297	316	281	281	300	2,389
Nov	339	364	326	320	364	345	294	336	2,688
Dec	346	345	348	387	377	384	361	358	2,906
Total	3,605	3,966	3,760	3,777	3,974	3,656	3,554	3,844	30,136

Annotations in the image:

- header row formatted**: Points to the first row of the table (row 6).
- last column formatted**: Points to the 'Total' column (column K).
- selected table elements are displayed in the table**: Points to the 'Table Style Options' group in the ribbon.
- click to view the Table Styles gallery**: Points to the 'Table Styles' group in the ribbon.

HIGHLIGHTING CELLS WITH CONDITIONAL FORMATS



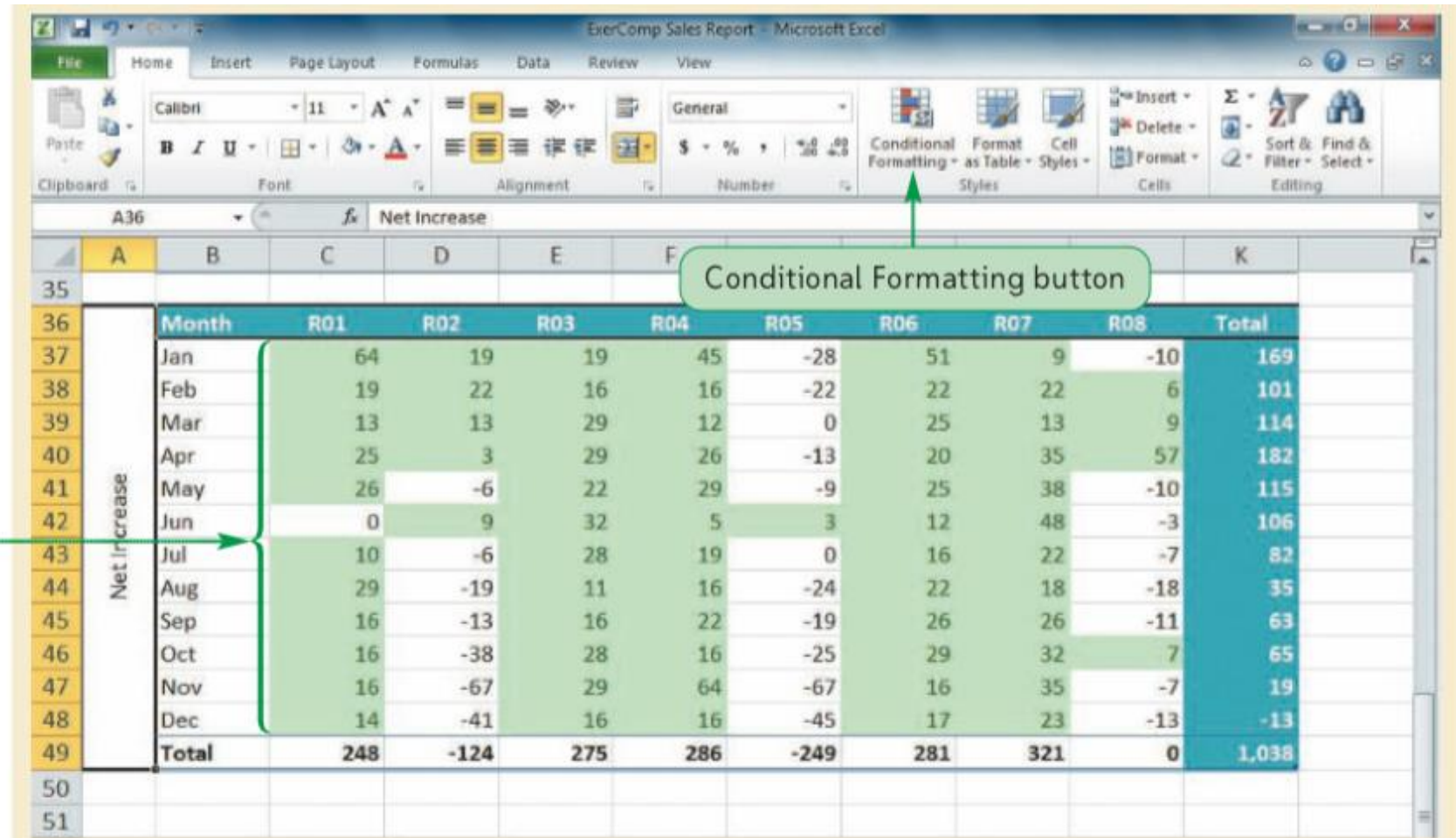
- **Highlighting a Cell Based on Its Value**
 - Select the range in which you want to highlight cells that match a specified rule.
 - In the Styles group on the Home tab, click the Conditional Formatting button, point to Highlight Cells Rules or Top/Bottom Rules, and then click the appropriate rule.
 - Select the appropriate options in the dialog box, and then click the OK button.
- **For example, to highlight positive numbers:**
 - Select the range to apply the conditional format rule.
 - In the Styles group on the Home tab, click the Conditional Formatting button, point to Highlight Cells Rules, and then click Greater Than. The ‘Greater Than’ dialog box opens.
 - Type 0 (a zero) in the ‘Format cells that are GREATER THAN’ box, click the with arrow, and then choose the formatting you want. Click the OK button to apply the rule.
- Conditional formats are **dynamic**, so that if the cell’s value changes, the cell’s format also changes as needed. Each conditional format has a set of rules that define how the formatting should be applied and under what conditions the format will be changed.
- Excel has **four conditional formats**—data bars, highlighting, color scales, and icon sets.
- The following Figure describes some of the ways that cells can be highlighted with conditional formats.

HIGHLIGHTING CELLS WITH CONDITIONAL FORMATS



Rule	Highlights
Greater Than	Cells that are greater than a specified number
Less Than	Cells that are less than a specified number
Between	Cells that are between two specified numbers
Equal To	Cells that are equal to a specified number
Text That Contains	Cells that contain specified text
A Date Occurring	Cells that contain a specified date
Duplicate Values	Cells that contain duplicate or unique values

HIGHLIGHTING CELLS WITH CONDITIONAL FORMATS



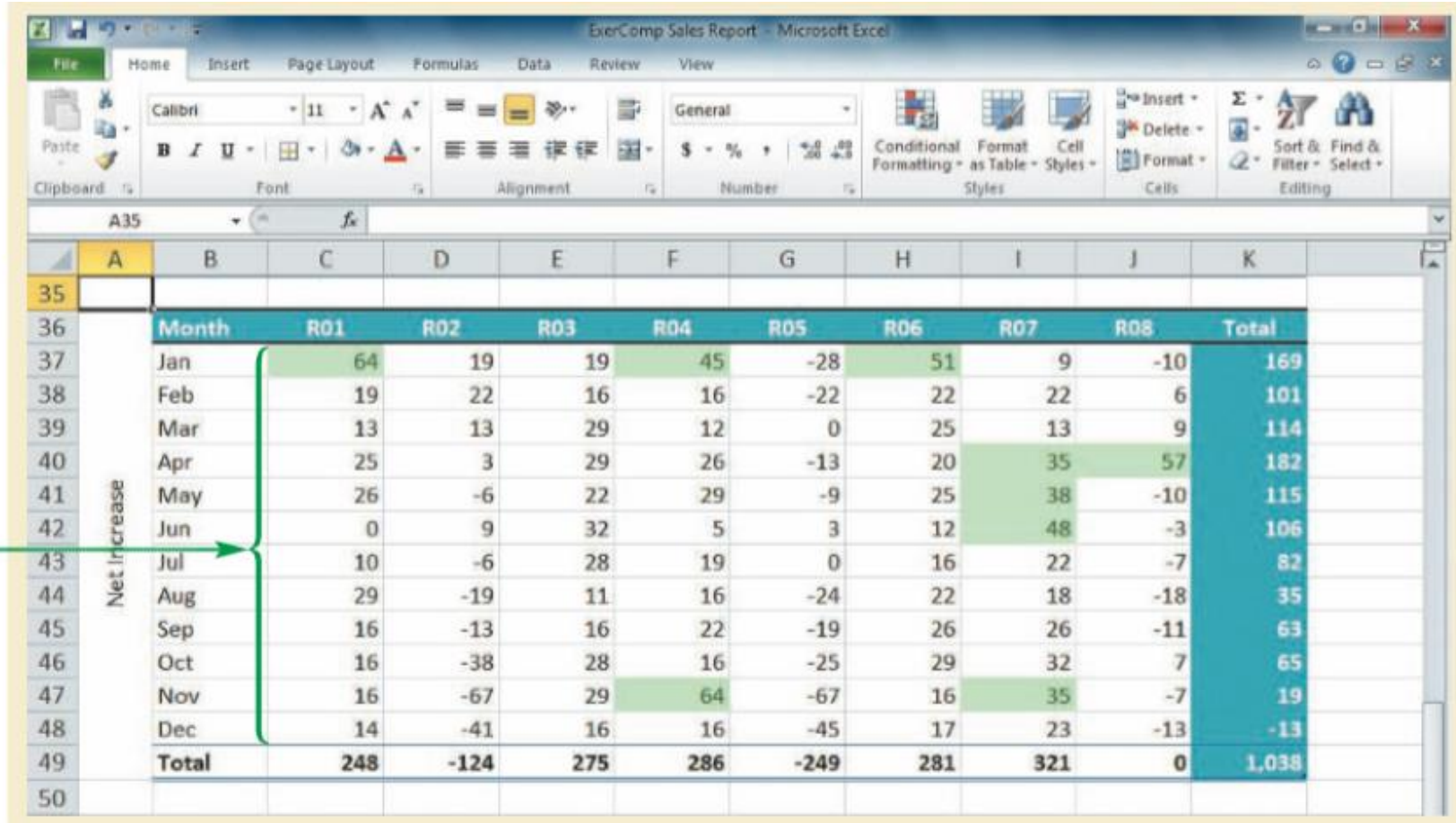
Conditional Formatting button

positive values are highlighted in green

Month	R01	R02	R03	R04	R05	R06	R07	R08	Total
Jan	64	19	19	45	-28	51	9	-10	169
Feb	19	22	16	16	-22	22	22	6	101
Mar	13	13	29	12	0	25	13	9	114
Apr	25	3	29	26	-13	20	35	57	182
May	26	-6	22	29	-9	25	38	-10	115
Jun	0	9	32	5	3	12	48	-3	106
Jul	10	-6	28	19	0	16	22	-7	82
Aug	29	-19	11	16	-24	22	18	-18	35
Sep	16	-13	16	22	-19	26	26	-11	63
Oct	16	-38	28	16	-25	29	32	7	65
Nov	16	-67	29	64	-67	16	35	-7	19
Dec	14	-41	16	16	-45	17	23	-13	-13
Total	248	-124	275	286	-249	281	321	0	1,038

HIGHLIGHTING CELLS WITH CONDITIONAL FORMATS

cells highlighted in green rank in the top 10 percent in sales increases



	Month	R01	R02	R03	R04	R05	R06	R07	R08	Total
35										
36	Jan	64	19	19	45	-28	51	9	-10	169
37	Feb	19	22	16	16	-22	22	22	6	101
38	Mar	13	13	29	12	0	25	13	9	114
39	Apr	25	3	29	26	-13	20	35	57	182
40	May	26	-6	22	29	-9	25	38	-10	115
41	Jun	0	9	32	5	3	12	48	-3	106
42	Jul	10	-6	28	19	0	16	22	-7	82
43	Aug	29	-19	11	16	-24	22	18	-18	35
44	Sep	16	-13	16	22	-19	26	26	-11	63
45	Oct	16	-38	28	16	-25	29	32	7	65
46	Nov	16	-67	29	64	-67	16	35	-7	19
47	Dec	14	-41	16	16	-45	17	23	-13	-13
48	Total	248	-124	275	286	-249	281	321	0	1,038
49										
50										

HIGHLIGHTING CELLS WITH CONDITIONAL FORMATS

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



cells highlighted
in red rank in the
bottom 10 percent
in sales increases

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K
35											
36		Month	R01	R02	R03	R04	R05	R06	R07	R08	Total
37		Jan	64	19	19	45	-28	51	9	-10	169
38		Feb	19	22	16	16	-22	22	22	6	101
39		Mar	13	13	29	12	0	25	13	9	114
40		Apr	25	3	29	26	-13	20	35	57	182
41		May	26	-6	22	29	-9	25	38	-10	115
42		Jun	0	9	32	5	3	12	48	-3	106
43		Jul	10	-6	28	19	0	16	22	-7	82
44		Aug	29	-19	11	16	-24	22	18	-18	35
45		Sep	16	-13	16	22	-19	26	26	-11	63
46		Oct	16	-38	28	16	-25	29	32	7	65
47		Nov	16	-67	29	64	-67	16	35	-7	19
48		Dec	14	-41	16	16	-45	17	23	-13	-13
49		Total	248	-124	275	286	-249	281	321	0	1,038
50											

To clear a conditional format:

- Select the relevant range.
- In the Styles group on the Home tab, click the Conditional Formatting button, point to Clear Rules, and then click Clear Rules from Selected Cells.

USING CONDITIONAL FORMATTING EFFECTIVELY



Conditional formatting is an excellent way to highlight important trends and data values to clients and colleagues. However, **it should be used judiciously**. An overuse of conditional formatting can sometimes obscure the very data values you want to emphasize. You'll need to make decisions about what to highlight and how it should be highlighted. Keep in mind the following tips as you consider the best ways to effectively communicate your findings to others:

- Document the conditional formats you use. If a bold, green font means that a number is in the top 10 percent of all, include that information in a legend in the worksheet.
- Don't clutter data with too much highlighting. Limit highlighting rules to one or two per data set. Highlights are designed to draw attention to points of interest. If you use too many, you'll end up highlighting everything—and, therefore, nothing.
- Use color sparingly in worksheets with highlights. It's difficult to tell a highlight color from a regular fill color, especially when fill colors are used in every cell.
- Consider alternatives to conditional formats. If you want to highlight the top 10 sales regions, it might be more effective to simply sort the data with the best-selling regions at the top of the list.

Remember that the goal of highlighting is to provide a strong visual clue of important data or results. Careful use of **conditional formatting helps readers to focus on the important points you want to make rather than be distracted by secondary issues and facts.**

HIDING WORKSHEET DATA



- Hiding rows, columns, and worksheets is a good way to manage a large volume of information; but it should never be used to hide data that is crucial to understanding a workbook.
- Note that hiding a row or column does not affect the other formulas in the workbook. Formulas still show the correct value even if they reference a cell in a hidden row or column.
- To hide and unhide worksheet rows:
- Select the rows you want to hide.
- In the Cells group on the Home tab, click the Format button, point to Hide & Unhide, and then click Hide Rows. The rows are hidden.
- To Unhide the hidden rows, select the two rows that come just before and after the hidden ones.
- In the Cells group, click the Format button, point to Hide & Unhide, and then click Unhide Rows. The hidden rows reappear.

FORMATTING THE WORKSHEET FOR PRINTING



- Excel supports a wealth of print options, including the ability to set the page orientation as well as specify whether the page will include headers and footers. **Print settings** can be applied to an entire workbook or to individual sheets.
- Because it is likely that other people, such as clients and colleagues, will see the printed version of your spreadsheet, you should take as much care in **formatting the printed output** as you do in formatting the contents of the electronic file.
- To view a worksheet in **Page Layout view**:
 - Click the Page Layout button on the status bar. The worksheet switches to Page Layout view.
 - Change the zoom level of the worksheet to 70% to view more of the page layout. See the following Figure.
- It is likely that in the worksheet's orientation, its contents do not fit on a single page and the tables break across pages. You can **change the orientation** from portrait to landscape so that the page is wide enough to fit all the table columns on one page.

FORMATTING THE WORKSHEET FOR PRINTING



Click to add header

ExerComp
The Intelligent Path to Fitness

X310 Monthly Sales Analysis

Month	F001	F002	F003	F004	F005	F006	F007	F008
Jan	288	345	325	307	364	310	315	352
Feb	278	304	294	297	310	278	275	294
Mar	294	320	297	304	315	291	297	307
Apr	288	313	300	300	320	284	275	295
May	284	329	304	297	313	288	275	310
Jun	313	339	315	315	325	307	288	329
Jul	310	332	320	310	313	300	304	306
Aug	294	339	315	339	339	304	307	323
Sep	284	310	310	304	315	284	281	304
Oct	284	325	304	297	315	281	281	300
Nov	339	364	325	320	364	345	294	335
Dec	345	345	345	387	377	384	361	358
Total	3,605	3,966	3,760	3,777	3,974	3,656	3,554	3,844

Units Sold in 2011

Month	F001	F002	F003	F004	F005	F006	F007	F008
Jan	352	364	345	352	335	351	325	342
Feb	297	325	310	313	288	300	297	300
Mar	307	333	325	315	315	315	310	315
Apr	313	315	329	325	307	304	310	352
May	310	323	325	325	304	313	313	300
Jun	313	348	348	320	329	319	335	325
Jul	323	325	345	329	313	315	325	329
Aug	323	320	325	355	315	325	325	305
Total	2,777	2,431	2,540	2,557	2,515	2,639	2,810	2,595

Units Sold in 2012

Page 1 of 4

Page Layout button

page is too narrow to fit all of the table columns in portrait orientation

worksheet zoomed to 70%

worksheet will print on four separate pages

DEFINING THE PRINT AREA

- By default, all cells in the active worksheet containing text, formulas, or values are printed. The region that is sent to the printer from the active sheet is known as the print area.
- To print part of a worksheet, you can **define the print area**, overriding the default setting. A print area can cover an adjacent or nonadjacent range in the current worksheet.
- There are many different ways to define the print area, but it's generally easiest to **set the print area in Page Break Preview**.
- To switch to Page Break preview and set the print area:
 - Click the Page Break Preview button on the status bar. (If the Welcome to Page Break Preview dialog box opens, click the OK button).
 - Change the zoom level of the worksheet to 70%.
 - Select the range you want to print.
 - In the Page Setup group on the Page Layout tab, click the Print Area button, and then click Set Print Area. The print area changes to cover only the selected range. The rest of the worksheet content is shaded to indicate that it will not be part of the printout.
 - In the Page Setup group, click the Print Area button, and then click Clear Print Area. The print area is reset to cover the entire contents of the worksheet.

INSERTING PAGE BREAKS

- Often the contents of a worksheet do not fit onto a single page. By default, Excel prints as much of the content that fits on single page without resizing the content, and then inserts automatic page breaks to continue printing the remaining worksheet content on successive pages. This can result in page breaks that leave a single column or row on a separate page or split worksheet content in awkward places such as within a table.
- One way to fix this problem is to scale the printout by reducing the font size to fit on a single sheet of paper. However, if you have more than one or two columns or rows to fit onto the page, the resulting text is often too small to read comfortably. The better fix is usually to split the worksheet into logical segments, which you can do by **inserting manual page breaks that specify exactly where the page breaks occur**. A page break is inserted directly above and to the left of a selected cell, directly above a selected row, or to the left of a selected column.
- **To insert a page break:**
 - Select the first cell below the row where you want to insert a page break.
 - In the Page Setup group on the Page Layout tab, click the Breaks button, and then click Insert Page Break.
- **To remove a page break:**
 - Select any cell below or to the right of the page break you want to remove.
 - In the Page Setup group on the Page Layout tab, click the Breaks button, and then click Remove Page Break (or click Reset All Page Breaks to remove all the page breaks from the worksheet).

INSERTING PAGE BREAKS

click to set or clear the print area

click to add or remove a page break

TIP
In Page Break Preview, a dashed blue line indicates an automatic page break and a solid blue line indicates a manual page break.

manual page breaks

first page

second page

third page

Page Break Preview button

Month	FD1	FD2	FD3	FD4	FD5	FD6	FD7	FD8	Total
Jan	288	345	326	307	364	310	316	352	2,608
Feb	278	304	294	297	310	270	275	294	2,330
Mar	294	320	257	304	316	291	297	307	2,426
Apr	288	313	300	320	284	275	295	310	2,400
May	284	329	304	287	313	288	275	310	2,400
Jun	313	339	316	315	326	307	288	329	2,533
Jul	313	332	320	310	313	300	304	336	2,528
Aug	294	339	315	339	339	304	307	323	2,568
Sep	294	310	310	304	316	284	281	304	2,393
Oct	284	326	304	297	316	281	281	300	2,383
Nov	339	364	326	320	364	345	294	336	2,608
Dec	346	345	348	367	377	384	361	358	2,306
Total	3,695	3,966	3,760	3,777	3,974	3,656	3,554	3,844	30,136

Month	FD1	FD2	FD3	FD4	FD5	FD6	FD7	FD8	Total
Jan	352	364	345	352	336	361	325	342	2,777
Feb	297	326	310	313	288	300	297	300	2,431
Mar	307	333	326	316	316	316	310	318	2,540
Apr	313	316	329	326	307	304	310	352	2,567
May	310	323	326	326	304	313	313	300	2,535
Jun	313	348	336	323	329	319	336	326	2,639
Jul	323	326	346	329	313	316	326	329	2,618
Aug	323	320	326	355	315	326	325	305	2,593
Sep	300	297	326	326	297	310	307	293	2,456
Oct	300	288	332	313	291	310	313	307	2,454
Nov	355	297	355	384	297	361	329	329	2,707
Dec	360	304	364	403	332	401	384	345	2,893
Total	3,853	3,842	4,035	4,063	3,725	3,937	3,875	3,844	31,174

Month	FD1	FD2	FD3	FD4	FD5	FD6	FD7	FD8	Total
Jan	84	19	19	45	-26	51	9	-10	163
Feb	19	22	16	16	-22	22	22	6	111
Mar	13	13	29	12	0	25	13	9	114

© Stella Moysiadou - stm@aueb.gr

305

ADDING PRINT TITLES

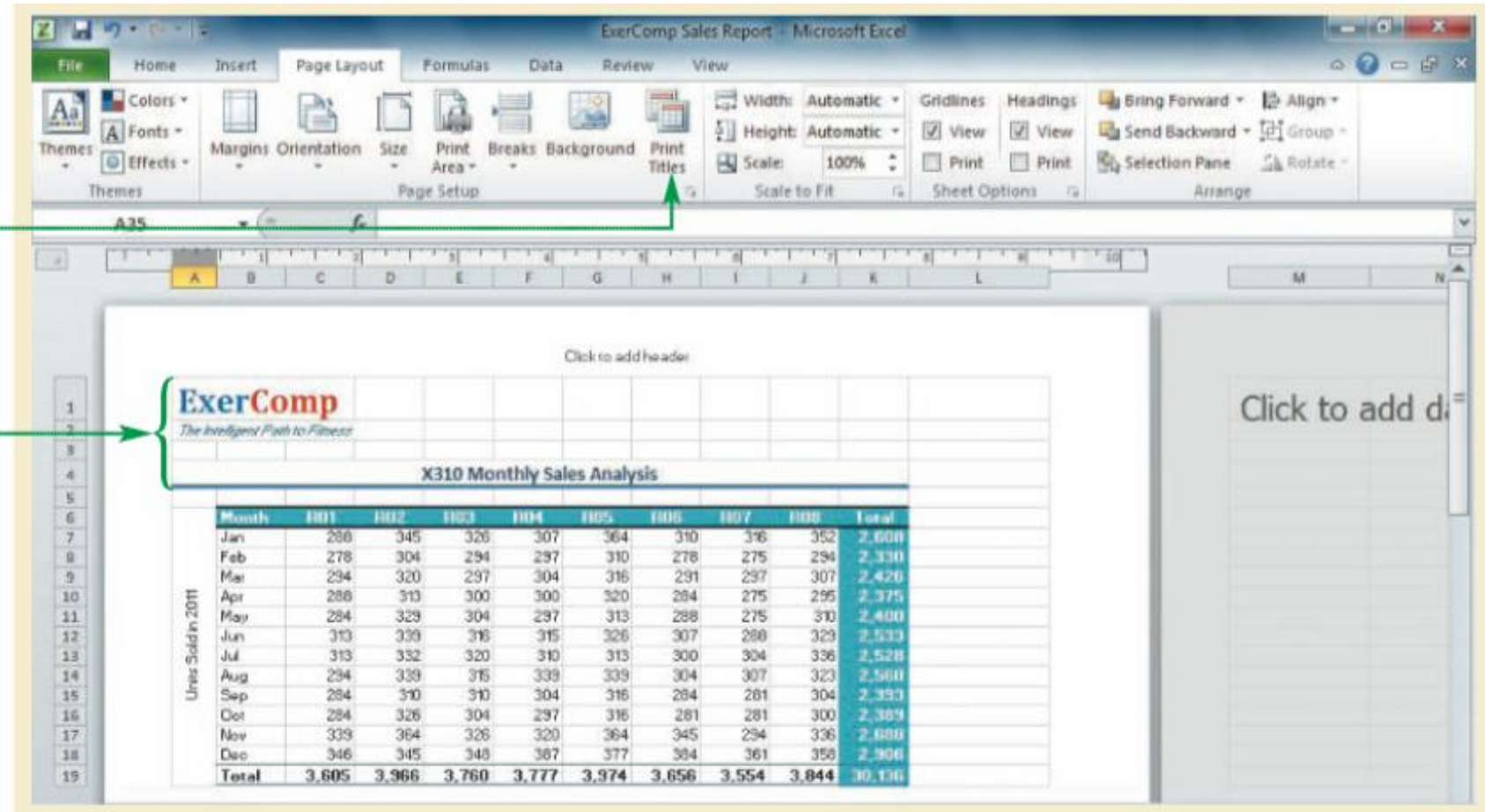


- It is a good practice to include descriptive information, such as the company name, logo, and worksheet title on each page of a printout in case a page becomes separated from the other pages. You can repeat information, such as the company name, by specifying which rows or columns in the worksheet act as print titles. If a worksheet contains a large table, you can print the table's column headings and row headings on every page of your printout by designating those initial columns and rows as print titles.
- **To define the print title for the pages:**
 - In the Page Setup group on the Page Layout tab, click the Print Titles button.
 - The Page Setup dialog box opens with the Sheet tab displayed.
 - Click the Rows to repeat at top box, move your pointer over the worksheet, and then select the range you want.
 - Click the OK button.
- The **Sheet tab** in the Page Setup dialog box provides **other print options**, such as printing the gridlines or row and column headings. You can also print the worksheet in black and white or in draft quality. For a multiple page printout, you can specify whether the pages are ordered by going down the worksheet and then across, or across first and then down.

ADDING PRINT TITLES

click to define
the print titles

first four rows
are printed on
every page



Click to add header

Click to add data

Month	2011	2012	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017	2018	Total
Jan	288	345	326	307	364	310	316	352	2,608
Feb	278	304	294	297	310	278	275	294	2,330
Mar	294	320	297	304	316	291	297	307	2,420
Apr	288	313	300	300	320	284	275	295	2,375
May	284	329	304	297	313	288	275	310	2,400
Jun	310	339	316	315	326	307	288	329	2,533
Jul	313	332	320	310	313	300	304	336	2,528
Aug	294	339	315	339	339	304	307	323	2,560
Sep	284	310	310	304	316	284	281	304	2,393
Oct	284	326	304	297	316	281	281	300	2,383
Nov	339	364	326	320	364	345	294	336	2,688
Dec	346	345	348	387	377	384	361	358	2,906
Total	3,605	3,966	3,760	3,777	3,974	3,656	3,554	3,844	30,130

CREATING PAGE HEADERS AND FOOTERS

- Another way to repeat information on each printed page is with headers and footers. Headers and footers contain helpful and descriptive text that is usually not found within the worksheet, such as the workbook's author, the current date, or the workbook filename. If the printout covers multiple pages, you can display the page number and the total number of pages in the printout to help ensure you and others have all the pages.
- The header and footer each have three sections: a left section, a center section, and a right section. Within each section, you type the text you want to appear or insert elements such as the worksheet name or the current date and time. These header and footer elements are dynamic; if you rename the worksheet, for example, the name is automatically updated in the header or footer.
- **To insert a header and footer:**
 - In Page Layout view, change the zoom level of the worksheet to 90%.
 - Scroll to the top of the worksheet, and then click the left section of the header directly above cell A1. The Header & Footer Tools contextual tab appears on the Ribbon.
 - Type 'Filename:' in the left section of the header, press the spacebar, and then, in the Header & Footer Elements group on the Design tab, click the 'File Name' button. The code &[File], which displays the filename of the current workbook, is added into the left section of the header.
 - Press the Tab key twice to move to the right section of the header, and then click the Current Date button in the Header & Footer Elements group. The code &[Date] is added into the right section of the header.

CREATING PAGE HEADERS AND FOOTERS

click to insert codes into the header or footer

workbook filename

click to switch between the header and footer

code to display current date

Header

Filename: ExerComp Sales Report

ExerComp
The Intelligent Path to Fitness

X310 Monthly Sales Analysis

Page 1 of 3

Prepared by: Tom Uhen

3/1/2013

current page and total number of pages

your name appears here

Footer

Filename: ExerComp Sales Report

ExerComp
The Intelligent Path to Fitness

X310 Monthly Sales Analysis

Documentation Yearly Sales Monthly Sales

DEFINING THE PAGE MARGINS

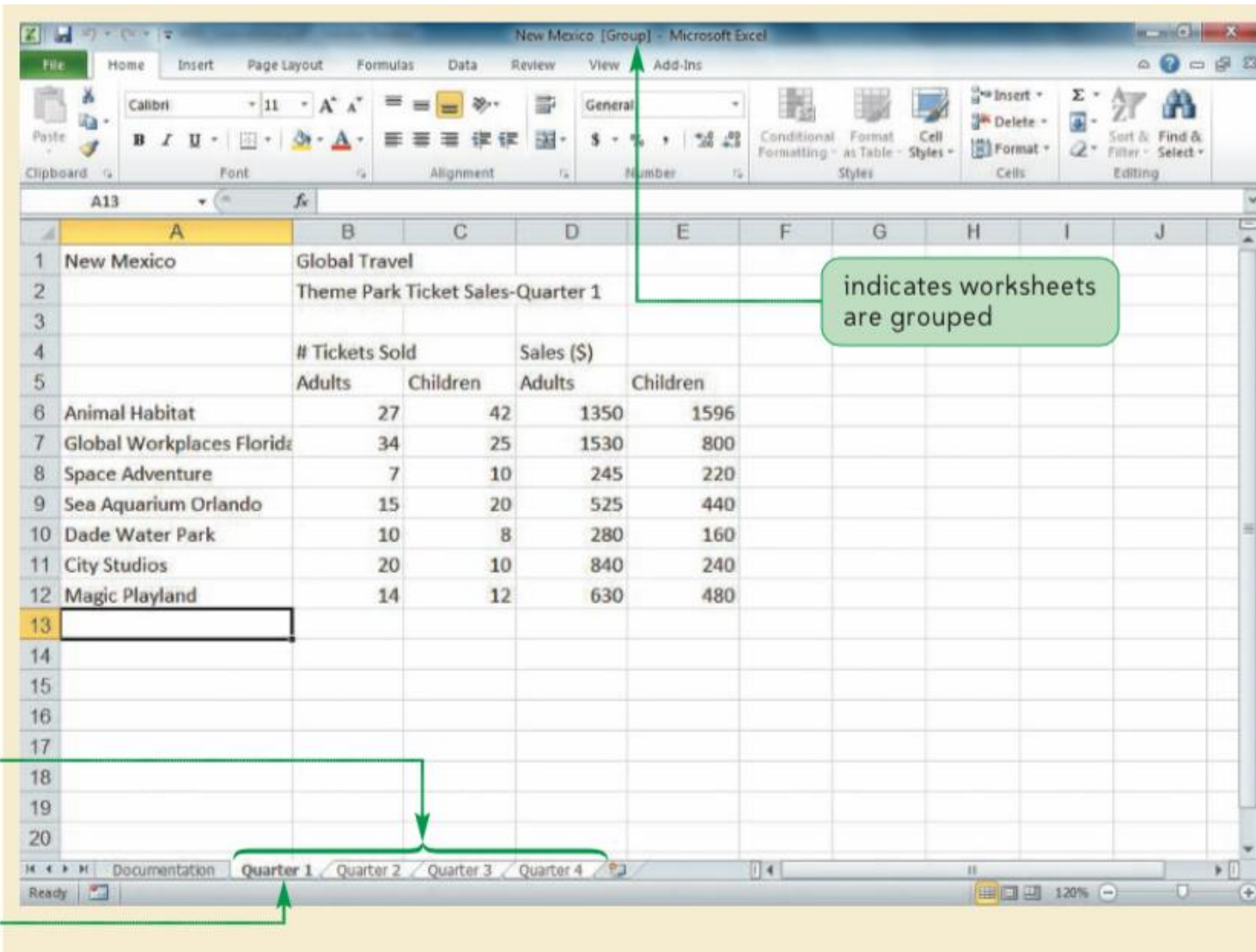


- Another way to fit a large worksheet on a single page is to reduce the size of the page margins. By default, Excel sets the page margins to between 0.7 and 0.75 inches, and allows for 0.3-inch margins around the page header and footer. You can reduce or increase these margins as needed by selecting from a set of predefined margin sizes or defining your own.
- **To set the page margins:**
 - Click the Page Layout tab on the Ribbon.
 - In the Page Setup group, click the Margins button. A menu opens with a list of predefined margins.
 - Click Wide to set 1-inch margins around the printed content with 0.5-inch margins around the header and footer. The size of the margins around the page increases, but does not affect the content. Each of the three tables and the print titles still fit on single sheets.

GROUPING WORKSHEETS

- Workbook data is often placed in several worksheets. Using multiple worksheets makes it easier to group and summarize data.
- Using multiple worksheets enables you to place summarized data first. Managers interested only in an overall picture can view the first worksheet of summary data without looking at the details available in the other worksheets. Others, of course, might want to view the supporting data in the individual worksheets that follow the summary worksheet.
- Worksheet groups save you time and help improve consistency among the worksheets because you can perform an action once, yet affect multiple worksheets.
- **Grouping and Ungrouping Worksheets**
 - To select an adjacent group, click the sheet tab of the first worksheet in the group, press and hold the Shift key, click the sheet tab of the last worksheet in the group, and then release the Shift key.
 - To select a nonadjacent group, click the sheet tab of one worksheet in the group, press and hold the Ctrl key, click the sheet tabs of the remaining worksheets in the group, and then release the Ctrl key.
 - To ungroup the worksheets, click the sheet tab of a worksheet not in the group or right-click the sheet tab of one worksheet in the group, and then click Ungroup Sheets on the shortcut menu.

GROUPING WORKSHEETS



indicates worksheets are grouped

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
1	New Mexico	Global Travel								
2		Theme Park Ticket Sales-Quarter 1								
3										
4		# Tickets Sold		Sales (\$)						
5		Adults	Children	Adults	Children					
6	Animal Habitat	27	42	1350	1596					
7	Global Workplaces Florida	34	25	1530	800					
8	Space Adventure	7	10	245	220					
9	Sea Aquarium Orlando	15	20	525	440					
10	Dade Water Park	10	8	280	160					
11	City Studios	20	10	840	240					
12	Magic Playland	14	12	630	480					
13										
14										
15										
16										
17										
18										
19										
20										

worksheets in the group

active worksheet in the group

EDITING GROUPED WORKSHEETS

- When you enter a formula in the active worksheet (in this case, the Quarter 1 work- sheet), the formula is entered in the same cells in all the worksheets in the group.
The grouped worksheets must have **the exact same organization and layout** (rows and columns) for this to work. Otherwise, any formulas you enter in the active sheet will be incorrect in the other worksheets in the group and could overwrite existing data.
- As with inserting formulas and text, any formatting changes you make to the active sheet are applied to all sheets in the group.
- When you enter, edit, or format cells in a worksheet group, the changes you make to one worksheet are automatically applied to the other worksheets in the group. For example, if you delete a value from one cell, the content is also deleted from the same cell in all the worksheets in the group. Be cautious when editing a worksheet that is part of a group. If the layout and structure of the other grouped worksheets are not exactly the same, you may inadvertently overwrite data in some of the worksheets. Also, **remember to ungroup the worksheet group after you finish entering data, formulas, and formatting**. Otherwise, changes you intend to make in one worksheet will be made to all the worksheets in the group, potentially producing incorrect results.

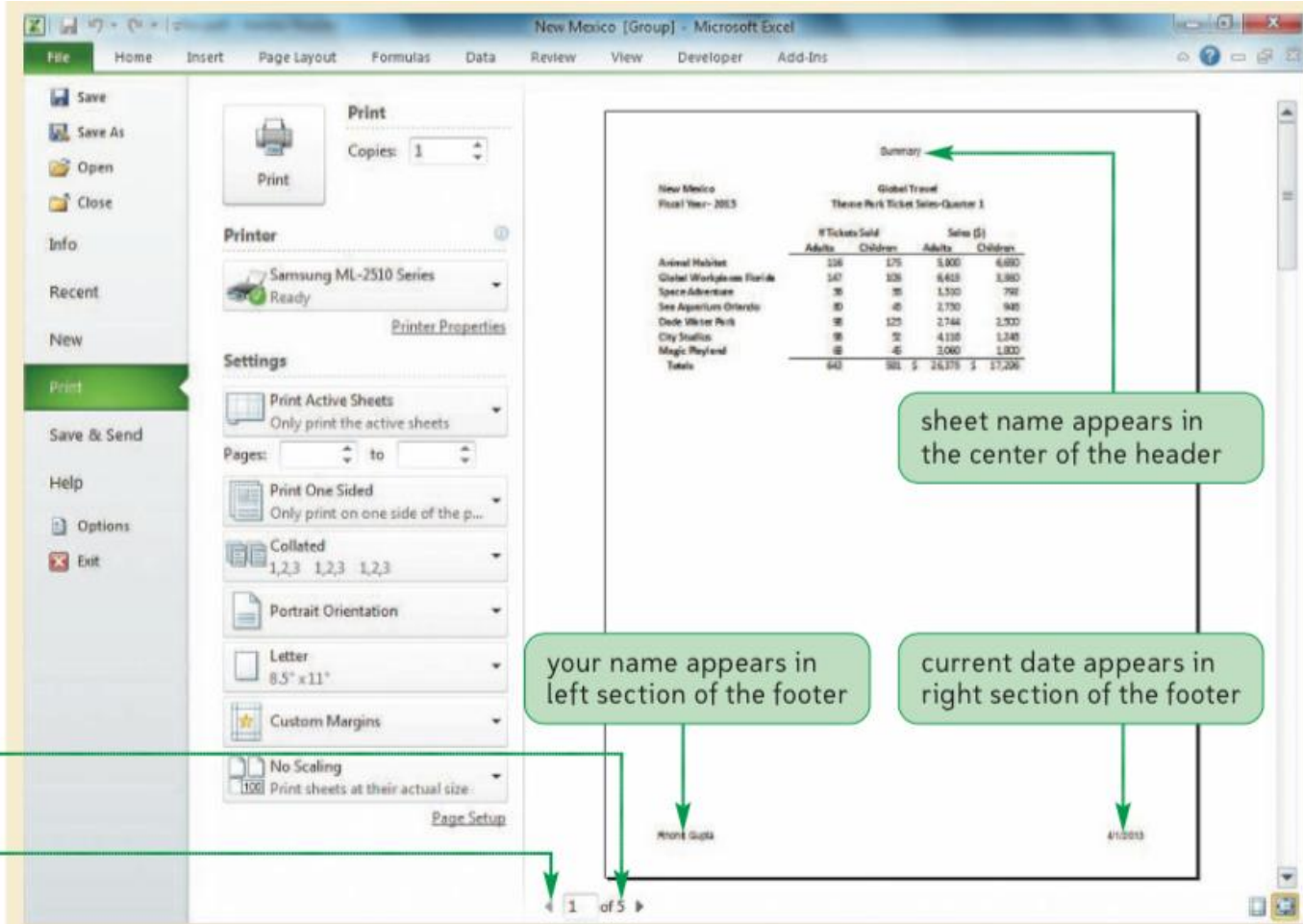
WRITTEN COMMUNICATION: USING MULTIPLE WORKSHEETS WITH IDENTICAL LAYOUTS



- Using multiple worksheets to organize complex data can help **make it simpler to understand and analyze as well as to navigate** to specific data. For example, a workbook that contains data about a variety of products, stores, or regions could use a different worksheet for each product, store, or region. This organization provides a way to view discrete units of data that can be combined and summarized in another worksheet.
- When you use multiple worksheets to organize similar types of data, the worksheets should have **identical layouts**. You can quickly group the worksheets with the identical layouts, and then enter the formulas, formatting, and labels in all of the grouped worksheets at once. This helps to ensure consistency and accuracy among the worksheets as well as make it faster to create the different worksheets needed.
- Using multiple worksheets with identical layouts enables you to **use 3-D references** to quickly summarize the data in another worksheet. The summary worksheet provides an overall picture of the data that is detailed in the other worksheets. Often, managers are more interested in this big picture view. However, the supporting data is still available in the individual worksheets when a deeper analysis is needed.
- So, when you are working with a large and complex worksheet filled with data, **consider the different ways to organize** it in multiple worksheets. Not only will you **save time** when entering and finding data, but also the **data becomes more understandable**, and **connections and results become clearer**.

PRINTING A WORKSHEET GROUP

- By creating a worksheet group, you apply the same page layout settings to all the worksheets in the group at the same time. You can also print all the worksheets in the group at once.



Print

Copies: 1

Printer: Samsung ML-2510 Series

Settings

- Print Active Sheets
- Only print the active sheets
- Pages: 1 to 5
- Print One Sided
- Only print on one side of the p...
- Collated
- 1,2,3 1,2,3 1,2,3
- Portrait Orientation
- Letter
- 8.5" x 11"
- Custom Margins
- No Scaling
- Print sheets at their actual size

Page Setup

Summary

New Mexico
Fiscal Year - 2013

Global Travel
Theme Park Ticket Sales-Quarter 1

	# Tickets Sold		Sales (\$)	
	Adults	Children	Adults	Children
Animal Habitat	128	175	5,800	4,600
Global Workplaces Florida	147	106	6,418	3,360
Space Adventure	78	95	3,520	750
Sea Aquariums Orlando	80	40	2,750	940
Dude Water Park	98	125	2,744	2,700
City Studios	98	52	4,138	1,248
Magic Playland	88	45	3,000	1,800
Totals	643	681	26,178	17,208

sheet name appears in the center of the header

your name appears in left section of the footer

current date appears in right section of the footer

five pages previewed, one for each worksheet in the group

click the arrows to move between pages

1 of 5



COPYING WORKSHEETS

- Select the sheet tabs of the worksheets you want to copy.
- Right-click the sheet tabs, and then click Move or Copy on the shortcut menu.
- Click the 'To book' arrow, and then click the name of an existing workbook or click (new book) to create a new workbook for the worksheets.
- In the 'Before sheet' box, click the worksheet you want to insert the new worksheet before.
- Click the Create a copy check box to insert a check mark to copy the worksheets.
- Click the OK button.

USING 3-D REFERENCES TO ADD VALUES ACROSS WORKSHEETS

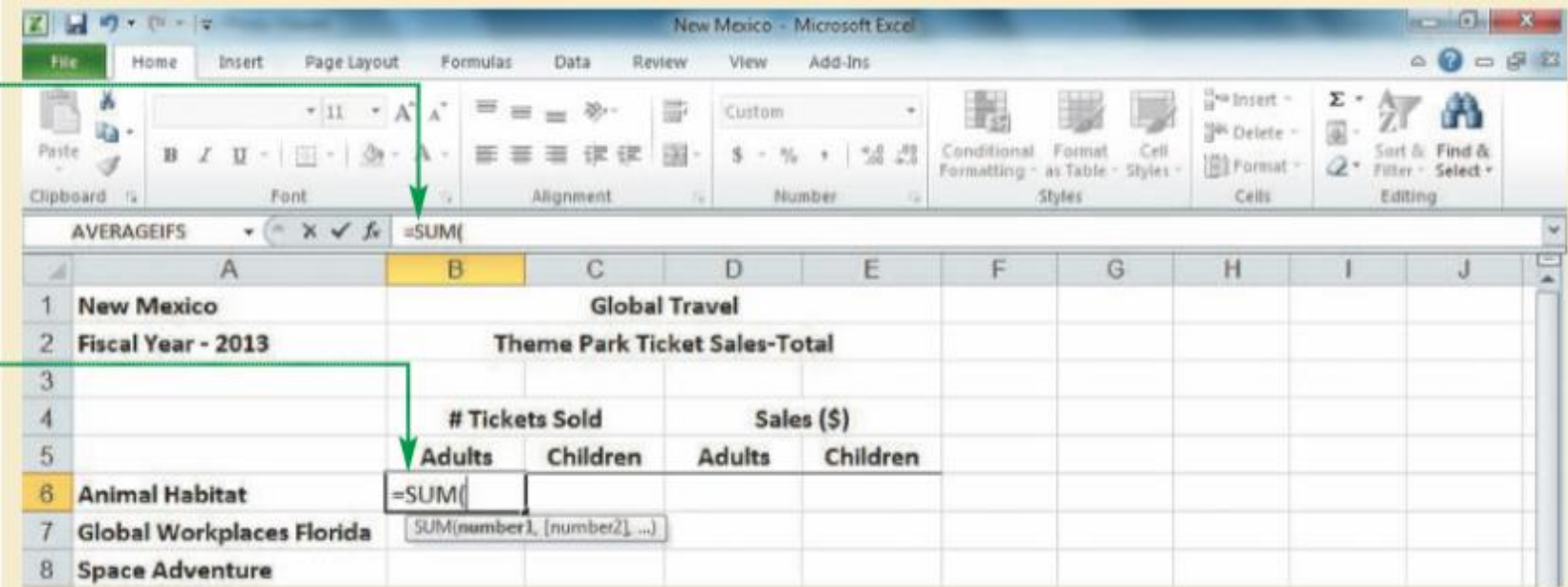
- When two or more worksheets have **identical row and column layouts**, as do the quarterly worksheets in the New Mexico workbook, you can enter formulas with 3-D references to summarize those worksheets in another worksheet. The 3-D reference specifies not only the range of rows and columns, but also the range of worksheet names in which the cells appear.
- **The general syntax of a 3-D cell reference** is: `WorksheetRange!CellRange`
 - In this syntax, `WorksheetRange` is the range of worksheets you want to reference and is entered as `FirstSheetName>LastSheetName` with a colon separating the first and last worksheets in the worksheet range.
 - `CellRange` is the same cell or range in each of those worksheets that you want to reference. An exclamation mark (!) separates the worksheet range from the cell or range.
- For **example**, the following formula adds the values in cell E13 in the worksheets between Quarter1 and Quarter4, including Quarter1 and Quarter4: `=SUM(Quarter1:Quarter4!E13)`
 - If worksheets named Quarter1, Quarter2, Quarter3, and Quarter4 are included in the workbook, the worksheet range `Quarter1:Quarter4` references all four worksheets. Although the Quarter2 and Quarter3 worksheets aren't specifically mentioned in this 3-D reference, all worksheets positioned within the starting and ending names are included in the calculation.

MANAGING 3-D REFERENCES

- The results of a formula using a 3-D reference reflect the current worksheets in the worksheet range. If you move a worksheet outside the referenced worksheet range or remove a worksheet from the workbook, the formula results will change.
- For example, consider a workbook with four worksheets named Quarter1, Quarter2, Quarter3, and Quarter4.
 - If you move the Quarter3 worksheet after the Quarter4 worksheet, the worksheet range Quarter1:Quarter4 includes only the Quarter1, Quarter2, and Quarter4 worksheets.
 - Similarly, if you insert a new worksheet or move an existing worksheet within the worksheet range, the formula results reflect the change.
 - To continue the example, if you insert a Quarter5 worksheet before the Quarter4 worksheet, the 3-D reference Quarter1:Quarter4 includes the Quarter5 worksheet.
- When you create a formula, **make sure that the 3-D cell reference reflects the appropriate worksheets.**
- Also, if you later insert or delete a worksheet within the 3-D reference, be aware of how doing so will affect the formula results.

ENTERING A FUNCTION THAT CONTAINS A 3-D REFERENCE

- Click the cell where you want to enter the formula.
- Type = to begin the formula, type the name of the function, and then type (to indicate the beginning of the argument.
- Click the sheet tab for the first worksheet in the worksheet range, press and hold the Shift key, and then click the tab for the last worksheet in the worksheet range.
- Select the cell or range to reference, and then press the Enter key.



The screenshot shows the Microsoft Excel 2010 interface. The formula bar at the top displays the formula `=SUM(`. A green arrow points from a text box on the left to the formula bar, stating "SUM function appears in the formula bar". Another green arrow points from a text box on the left to the active cell B6, stating "formula in which to enter the 3-D reference". The worksheet contains a table with the following data:

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
1	New Mexico	Global Travel								
2	Fiscal Year - 2013	Theme Park Ticket Sales-Total								
3										
4		# Tickets Sold		Sales (\$)						
5		Adults	Children	Adults	Children					
6	Animal Habitat	=SUM(
7	Global Workplaces Florida	SUM(number1, [number2] ...)								
8	Space Adventure									

ENTERING A FUNCTION THAT CONTAINS A 3-D REFERENCE

3-D reference in the SUM function references cell B6 in the worksheet range Quarter1:Quarter4

cell selected for the 3-D reference

worksheet range selected for the 3-D reference

The screenshot shows the Microsoft Excel 2010 interface. The formula bar displays the formula `=SUM(Quarter1:Quarter4!B6)`. The worksheet contains data for 'Global Travel' and 'Theme Park Ticket Sales-Quarter 1'. The data is organized into columns for '# Tickets Sold' (Adults, Children) and 'Sales (\$)' (Adults, Children). The 'Totals' row shows 129 tickets sold for adults and 127 for children, with total sales of \$5,400 for adults and \$3,936 for children. The worksheet tabs at the bottom are 'Documentation', 'Summary', 'Quarter 1', 'Quarter 2', 'Quarter 3', and 'Quarter 4'. The 'Quarter 1' tab is currently selected. The cell B6 in the 'Quarter 1' tab is highlighted, and a green arrow points from the text 'cell selected for the 3-D reference' to it. Another green arrow points from the text 'worksheet range selected for the 3-D reference' to the 'Quarter 1' tab. A third green arrow points from the text '3-D reference in the SUM function references cell B6 in the worksheet range Quarter1:Quarter4' to the formula bar.

	Global Travel			
	Theme Park Ticket Sales-Quarter 1			
	# Tickets Sold		Sales (\$)	
	Adults	Children	Adults	Children
1 New Mexico				
2 Fiscal Year - 2013				
3				
4				
5				
6 Animal Habitat	27	42	\$ 1,350	\$ 1,596
7 Global Workplaces Florida	SUM(number1, [number2], ...)		\$ 1,530	\$ 800
8 Space Adventure	7	10	\$ 245	\$ 220
9 Sea Aquarium Orlando	17	20	\$ 525	\$ 440
10 Dade Water Park	10	8	\$ 280	\$ 160
11 City Studios	20	10	\$ 840	\$ 240
12 Magic Playland	14	12	\$ 630	\$ 480
13 Totals	129	127	\$ 5,400	\$ 3,936
14				
15				
16				
17				
18				
19				
20				

LINKING WORKBOOKS

- When creating formulas in a workbook, you can reference data in other workbooks. To do so, you must **create a link between the workbooks**. When two files are linked, the source file contains the data, and the destination file (sometimes called the dependent file) receives the data.
- **To create the link** between destination and source files, you need to insert a formula in the workbook that references a specific cell or range in other workbooks.
- The **process** for entering a formula with an external reference is the same as entering any other formula using references within the same worksheet or workbook. You can enter the formulas by typing them or using the point-and-click method. In most situations, you will use the point-and-click method to switch between the source files and destination files so that Excel enters the references to the workbook, worksheet, and cell using the correct syntax.
- That reference, called an **external reference**, has the **syntax** [WorkbookName]WorksheetName!CellRange where
 - WorkbookName is the filename of the workbook (including the file extension) enclosed in square brackets;
 - WorksheetName is the name of the worksheet that contains the data followed by an exclamation mark; and
 - CellRange is the cell or range that contains the data.
- For **example**, the following formula references cell B6 in the Summary worksheet of the Colorado.xlsx workbook: =[Colorado.xlsx]Summary!B6

LINKING WORKBOOKS

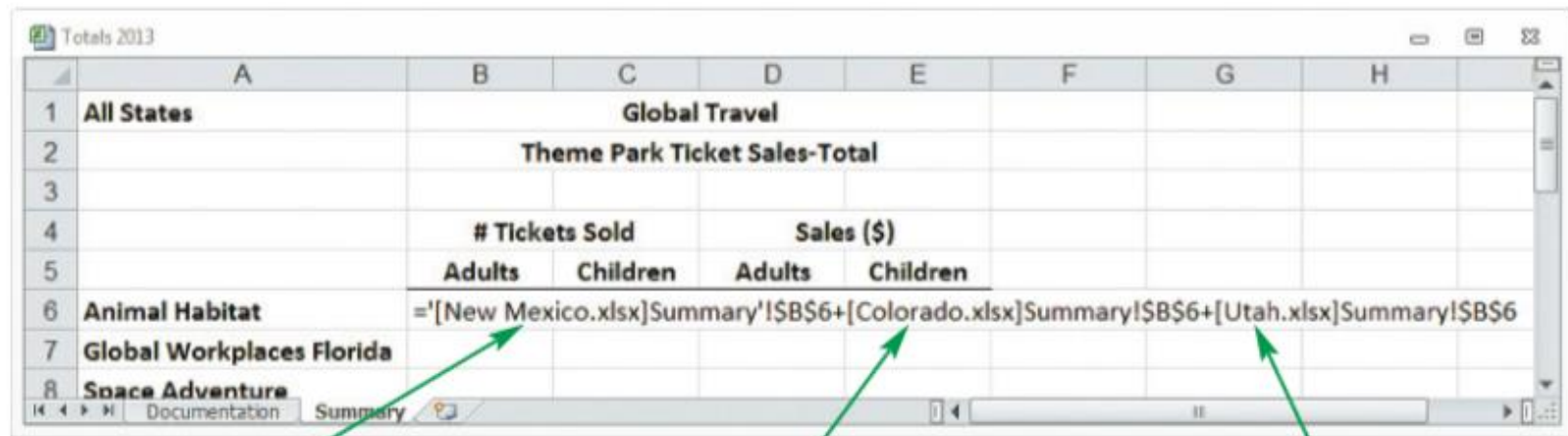


- If the workbook name or the worksheet name contains one or more spaces, you must enclose the entire workbook name and worksheet name in single quotation marks. For example, the following formula references cell B6 in the Summary worksheet of the New Mexico.xlsx workbook: `='[New Mexico.xlsx]Summary'!B6`
- When the source and destination workbooks are stored in the same folder, you need to include only the workbook name in the external reference. However, when the source and destination workbooks are located in different folders, the workbook reference must include the file's complete location (also called the path).
 - For example, if the destination file is stored in C:\TicketSales and the source file is stored in C:\TicketSales\Domestic Sales, the complete reference in the destination file would be: `= 'C:\TicketSales\Domestic Sales\[New Mexico.xlsx]Summary'!B6`
 - The single quotation marks start at the beginning of the path and end immediately before the exclamation mark.
- When you use **the point-and-click method** to build formulas with external references, Excel enters all of the required punctuation, including quotation marks.
- You **cannot use 3-D references** here because you are referencing multiple workbooks and 3-D references can only be used to reference multiple worksheets in the same workbook.

LINKING WORKBOOKS

- More than one person is usually involved in developing information that will be used in an organization's decision-making process. If each person has access to only part of the data, everyone's ability to see the whole picture and make good decisions is limited. Linking workbooks provides one way to **pull together all of the data being compiled by different people or departments to support the decision-making process.**

destination file

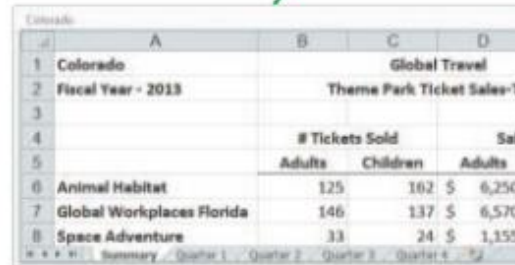


	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	All States	Global Travel						
2		Theme Park Ticket Sales-Total						
3								
4		# Tickets Sold		Sales (\$)				
5		Adults	Children	Adults	Children			
6	Animal Habitat	='[New Mexico.xlsx]Summary'!\$B\$6+'[Colorado.xlsx]Summary'!\$B\$6+'[Utah.xlsx]Summary'!\$B\$6						
7	Global Workplaces Florida							
8	Space Adventure							

source file



	A	B	C	D
1	New Mexico	Global Travel		
2	Fiscal Year - 2013	Theme Park Ticket Sale		
3				
4		# Tickets Sold		
5		Adults	Children	Adults
6	Animal Habitat	116	175	\$ 5,250
7	Global Workplaces Florida	147	105	\$ 6,250
8	Space Adventure	36	36	\$ 1,155



	A	B	C	D
1	Colorado	Global Travel		
2	Fiscal Year - 2013	Theme Park Ticket Sales-T		
3				
4		# Tickets Sold		Sale
5		Adults	Children	Adults
6	Animal Habitat	125	162	\$ 6,250
7	Global Workplaces Florida	146	137	\$ 6,570
8	Space Adventure	33	24	\$ 1,155



	A	B	C	D
1	Utah	Global Travel		
2	Fiscal Year - 2013	Theme Park Ticket Sales-		
3				
4		# Tickets Sold		\$
5		Adults	Children	Adults
6	Animal Habitat	105	162	\$ 5,250
7	Global Workplaces Florida	158	134	\$ 7,110
8	Space Adventure	46	37	\$ 1,610

MANAGING LINKED WORKBOOKS

- As you work with a linked workbook, you might need to replace a source file or change where you stored the source and destination files. However, **replacing or moving a file** can affect the linked workbook. Keep in mind the following guidelines to manage your linked workbooks:
 - **If you rename a source file**, the destination workbook won't be able to find it. A dialog box opens, indicating "This workbook contains one or more links that cannot be updated." Click the Continue button to open the workbook with the most recent values, or click the Change Source button in the Edit Links dialog box to specify the new name of that linked source file.
 - **If you move a source file to a different folder**, the link breaks between the destination and source files. Click the Change Source button in the Edit Links dialog box to specify the new location of the linked workbook.
 - **If you receive a replacement source file**, you can swap the original source file with the replacement file. No additional changes are needed.
 - **If you receive a destination workbook but the source files are not included**, Excel will not be able to find the source files, and a dialog box opens with the message "This workbook contains one or more links that cannot be updated." Click the Continue button to open the workbook with the most recent values, or click the Break Link button in the Edit Links dialog box to replace the external references with the existing values.
 - **If you change the name of a destination file**, you can open that renamed version destination file without affecting the source files or the original destination file.

UPDATING LINKED WORKBOOKS

- When workbooks are linked, it is important that the data in the destination file accurately reflects the contents of the source file. When data in a source file changes, you want the destination file to reflect those changes.
- **If both the source and destination files are open** when you make a change, the destination file is updated automatically.
- **If the destination file is closed when you make a change in a source file**, you choose whether to update the link to display the current values, or continue to display the older values from the destination file when you open the destination file.
 - As part of the Excel security system that attempts to protect against malicious software, links to other workbooks are not updated without your permission.
 - When you open a workbook with external reference formulas (the destination file), a **Security Warning** appears in the Information Bar, notifying you that the automatic update of links has been disabled.
 - If you “trust” the provider of the source file(s), you can enable the content, which allows the external reference formulas to function and updates the links in the destination workbook.
 - If you do not “trust” the provider of the source files or do not want the destination file updated at that time, do not enable the content. The old values in the destination workbook are displayed and the links to the source files remain disabled.

UPDATING A DESTINATION WORKBOOK WITH SOURCE WORKBOOKS CLOSED

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



click to update the
external reference
formulas

value is not
updated because
automatic update
of links is disabled

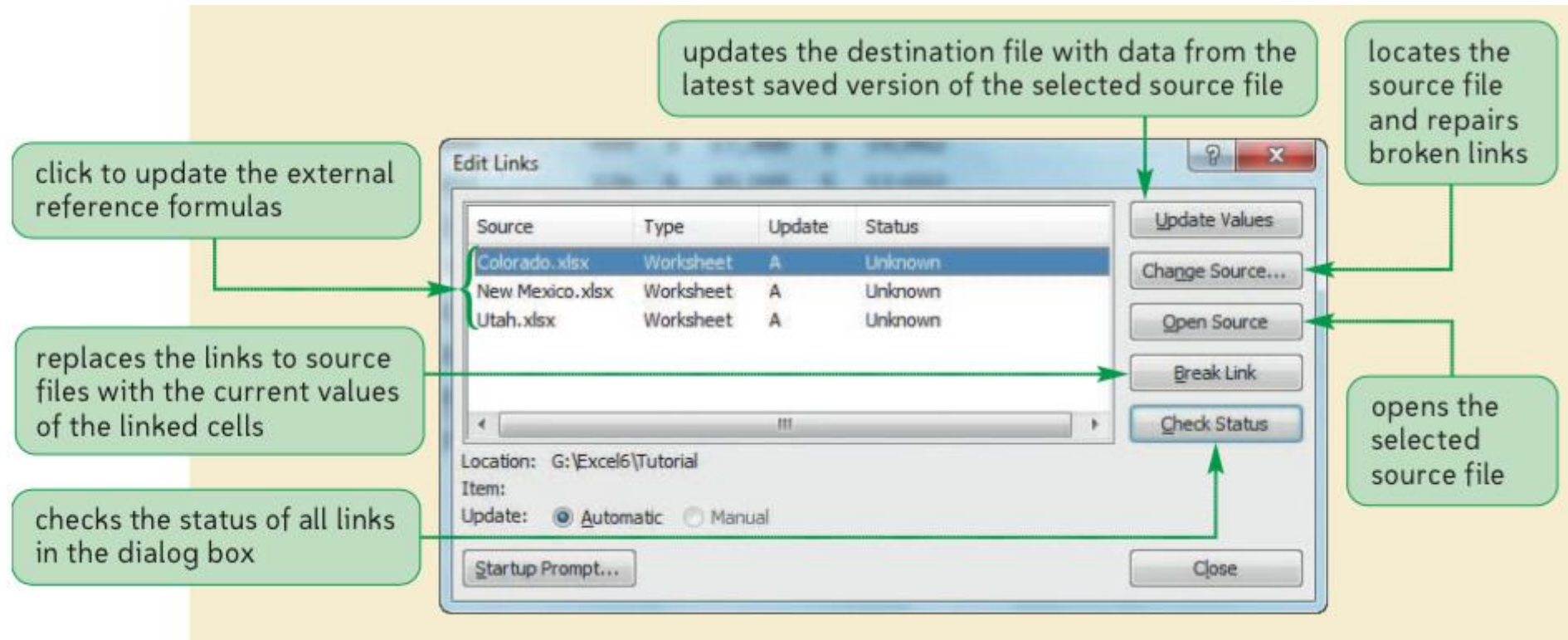
The screenshot shows the Microsoft Excel 2010 interface. A yellow security warning banner at the top states: "Automatic update of links has been disabled" with an "Enable Content" button. The ribbon is set to the "Formulas" tab, and the "Update Links" button is visible. A green arrow points from the text "click to update the external reference formulas" to this button. The active worksheet is "Totals 2013" and the selected cell is A1, which contains the text "All States". Below the warning, a table displays "Theme Park Ticket Sales-Total". The table has columns for the park name, "# Tickets Sold" (Adults, Children), and "Sales (\$)" (Adults, Children). The data is as follows:

	# Tickets Sold		Sales (\$)	
	Adults	Children	Adults	Children
1 All States				
2				
3				
4				
5				
6 Animal Habitat	346	499	\$ 17,300	\$ 19,962
7 Global Workplaces Florida	451	376	\$ 20,295	\$ 12,032
8 Space Adventure	115	97	\$ 4,025	\$ 2,134
9 Sea Aquarium Orlando	202	100	\$ 7,000	\$ 2,200
10 Dade Water Park	431	428	\$ 12,068	\$ 8,560
11 City Studios	283	149	\$ 11,886	\$ 3,576
12 Magic Playland	207	206	\$ 9,315	\$ 8,240
13 Total	2,035	1,855	\$ 81,889	\$ 56,704

A green arrow points from the text "value is not updated because automatic update of links is disabled" to the value "4,025" in cell D8, which is part of the "Space Adventure" row.

MANAGING LINKS

- When workbooks are linked, the Edit Links dialog box provides ways to manage the links. You can review the status of the links, update the data in the files, repair broken links, open the source file, and break the links, which converts all external reference formulas to their most recent values.
- Click the Data tab on the Ribbon.
- In the Connections group, click the Edit Links button. The Edit Links dialog box opens.



MANAGING LINKS

- The Edit Links dialog box lists all of the files that the destination workbook is linked to so that you can update, change, open, or remove the links. The dialog box shows the following information about each link:
 - **Source** indicates the file to which the link points.
 - **Type** identifies the type of each source file. In this case, the type is an Excel worksheet but it could also be a Word document, a PowerPoint presentation, or some other type of file.
 - **Update** specifies the way values are updated from the source file. The **letter A** indicates the link is updated automatically when you open the workbook or when both the source and destination files are open simultaneously. The **letter M** indicates the link must be updated manually by the user, which is useful when you want to see the older data values before updating to the new data. To manually update the link and see the new data values, click the Update Values button.
 - **Status** shows whether Excel successfully accessed the link and updated the values from the source document (status is OK), or Excel has not attempted to update the links in this session (status is Unknown).
- **To convert all external reference formulas to their current values:**
 - Click the Break Link button. A dialog box opens, alerting you that breaking links in the workbook permanently converts formulas and external references to their existing values.
 - Click the Break Links button. No links appear in the Edit Links dialog box. Click the Close button.

NAVIGATING AND ARRANGING MULTIPLE WORKBOOKS



- The **Switch Windows** button in the **Window** group on the **View** tab lists each open workbook so you can **change which workbook is active**. Another method is to click the Excel program button on the taskbar and then click the thumbnail of the workbook you want to make active.
- You might also want to **display all the open workbooks on your screen at the same time**. This way, you can easily click among the open workbooks to create links without having to continually change the active workbook, as well as quickly compare the contents of worksheets in different workbooks. You can arrange workbooks in the following layouts:
 - **Tiled**, which divides the open workbooks evenly on the screen.
 - **Horizontal**, which divides the open workbooks into horizontal bands.
 - **Vertical**, which divides the open workbooks into vertical bands.
 - **Cascade**, which layers the open workbooks on the screen.
- **To arrange the workbooks:**
 - On the View tab, in the Window group, click the Arrange All button.
 - Select the layout in which you want to arrange the open workbooks.
 - When arranging multiple workbooks, uncheck the Windows of active workbook option.
 - When arranging multiple worksheets within one workbook, check the option.
 - Click the OK button.

ARRANGING MULTIPLE WORKBOOKS

- active workbook's title bar has Excel icon and dark text
- active cell is in the active workbook
- scroll bars appear in the active workbook
- inactive workbooks (your workbook locations might differ)

The screenshot displays four Excel workbooks arranged in a 2x2 grid. The top-left workbook, titled 'Totals 2013', is the active workbook, as evidenced by its dark title bar and the green arrow pointing to the active cell A1. The other three workbooks, 'Utah', 'New Mexico', and 'Colorado', are inactive, shown with lighter title bars. Each workbook contains a table with columns for 'Global Travel', 'Theme Park Ticket Sales', and '# Tickets Sold' (Adults, Children, Adults). The 'Totals 2013' workbook shows data for 'All States'. The 'Utah' workbook shows data for 'Utah'. The 'New Mexico' workbook shows data for 'New Mexico'. The 'Colorado' workbook shows data for 'Colorado'. The status bar at the bottom indicates 'Ready' and '120%' zoom.

	A	B	C	D
1	All States			Global Travel
2				Theme Park Ticket Sales
3				
4				# Tickets Sold
5		Adults	Children	Adults
6	Animal Habitat			
7	Global Workplaces Florida			
8	Space Adventure			

	A	B	C	D
1	Utah			Global Travel
2	Fiscal Year - 2013			Theme Park Ticket Sales
3				
4				# Tickets Sold
5		Adults	Children	Adults
6	Animal Habitat	105	162	\$ 5,2
7	Global Workplaces Florida	158	134	\$ 7,2
8	Space Adventure	46	37	\$ 1,6

	A	B	C	D
1	New Mexico			Global Travel
2	Fiscal Year - 2013			Theme Park Ticket Sales-Q
3				
4				# Tickets Sold
5		Adults	Children	Adults
6	Animal Habitat	116	175	5,80
7	Global Workplaces Florida	147	105	6,61
8	Space Adventure	36	36	1,26

	A	B	C	D
1	Colorado			Global Travel
2	Fiscal Year - 2013			Theme Park Ticket Sale
3				
4				# Tickets Sold
5		Adults	Children	Adults
6	Animal Habitat	125	162	\$ 6,2
7	Global Workplaces Florida	146	137	\$ 6,5
8	Space Adventure	33	24	\$ 1,1

CREATING AN EXCEL WORKSPACE



- Rather than having to open each workbook individually, you can **create a workspace to open multiple workbooks at one time, saving time and avoiding having to remember all the filenames and folder locations.**
- A workspace is an Excel file that saves information about all of the currently opened workbooks, such as their locations, window sizes, zoom magnifications, and other settings.
- The workspace file has the file extension .xlw.
- The workspace does not contain the workbooks themselves—only information about them. To use that set of workbooks, you open the workspace file. Excel then opens the workbooks and settings in the same configuration they were in when you saved the workspace file.
- Even if a workbook is included in a workspace file, you can still open that workbook separately.
- **To create a workspace file:**
- Open the relevant workbooks, clicking the Don't Update button in the dialog that opens indicating that the workbook contains links.
- Switch to the workbook you want to appear first in the workspace you will create.
- Click the View tab on the Ribbon, and then click the Arrange All button in the Window group. The Arrange Windows dialog box opens.
- Click the Cascade option button, and then click the OK button. The workbooks overlap each other, with the title bars visible.

CREATING AN EXCEL WORKSPACE

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills



cascade arrangement
(your workbook order
might differ)

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	All States	Global Travel						
2		Theme Park Ticket Sales-Total						
3								
4		# Tickets Sold		Sales (\$)				
5		Adults	Children	Adults	Children			
6	Animal Habitat	346	499	\$ 17,300	\$ 19,962			
7	Global Workplaces Florida	451	376	\$ 20,295	\$ 12,032			
8	Space Adventure	115	97	\$ 4,075	\$ 2,134			
9	Sea Aquarium Orlando	202	100	\$ 7,000	\$ 2,200			
10	Dade Water Park	431	428	\$ 12,068	\$ 8,560			
11	City Studios	283	149	\$ 11,886	\$ 3,576			
12	Magic Playland	207	206	\$ 9,315	\$ 8,240			
13	Total	2,035	1,855	\$ 81,939	\$ 56,704			
14								



CREATING AN EXCEL WORKSPACE

- In the Window group, click the Save Workspace button. The Save Workspace dialog box opens and functions similarly to the Save As dialog box.
- Type the name you want in the File name box, verify that Workspaces is selected in the Save as type box, specify the save location, and then click the Save button. A dialog box might open, prompting you to save your changes to the open workbook files, if you haven't already done so.
- If prompted to save changes, click the Save button. The workspace file is saved. The workspace file has the file extension .xlw.
- **To open the workspace file:**
 - Close all four workbooks.
 - Click the File tab on the Ribbon, and then click the Open command in the navigation bar. The Open dialog box opens. The icon for the workspace file is different from the Excel workbook file icon.
 - Click the workspace file, and then click the Open button. A dialog box opens, indicating that the workbook contains links.
 - Click the Don't Update button. The workbooks open and are arranged in a cascade layout, the same layout in which you saved them. You can work with the workbooks as usual.
 - Click a workbook title bar to bring it to the front of the cascaded workbooks. This is now the active workbook.
 - The workspace file provides a quick way to open a series of workbooks in a specific display. Because it doesn't actually contain the workbooks, you must close each workbook separately, saving as needed.

CREATING A HYPERLINK



- A hyperlink is **a link in a file**, such as a workbook, to information within that file or another file. Hyperlinks can be placed in a worksheet and used to quickly jump to a specific cell or range within the active worksheet, another worksheet, or another workbook. Hyperlinks can also be used to jump to other files, such as a Word document or a PowerPoint presentation, or sites on the Web.
- **To insert a Hyperlink**
 - Select the text, graphic, or cell in which you want to insert the hyperlink.
 - In the Links group on the Insert tab, click the Hyperlink button.
 - To link to a file or Web page, click Existing File or Web Page in the Link to list, and then select the file or Web page from the Look in box.
 - To link to a location in the current workbook, click Place in This Document in the Link to list, and then select the worksheet, cell, or range in the current workbook.
 - To link to a new document, click Create New Document in the Link to list, and then specify the filename and path of the new document.
 - To link to an email address, click E-mail Address in the Link to list, and then enter the email address of the recipient and a subject line for the message.
 - Click the OK button.
- **To edit a hyperlink**, right click on it and then click Edit Hyperlink on the shortcut menu. The Edit Hyperlink dialog box opens; it has the same layout and information as the Insert Hyperlink dialog box.
- **To delete a hyperlink**, right-click the hyperlink cell and then click Clear Contents. To delete the hyperlink but keep the text, right-click the hyperlink cell, and then click Remove Hyperlink.

CREATING TEMPLATES

- If you want to create a new workbook that has the same format as an existing workbook, you could save the existing workbook with a new name and replace the values with new data or blank cells. The potential drawback to this method is that you might forget to rename the original file and overwrite data you intended to keep.
- A better method is to create a template workbook that includes all the text (row and column labels), formatting, and formulas but **does not contain any data. The template workbook is a model from which you create new workbooks.**
- When you create a new workbook from a template, an unnamed copy of the template opens. You can then enter data as well as modify the existing content or structure as needed. Any changes or additions you make to the new workbook do not affect the template file; the next time you create a workbook based on the template, the original text, formatting, and formulas will be present.
- **To Create a Workbook Based on a Template**
 - Click the File tab on the Ribbon, and then click the New tab in the navigation bar.
 - In the center pane, click a template category for the type of workbook you want to create, and then click a template.
 - In the right pane, check the preview, and then click the Download button.
 - Save the workbook with a new filename.

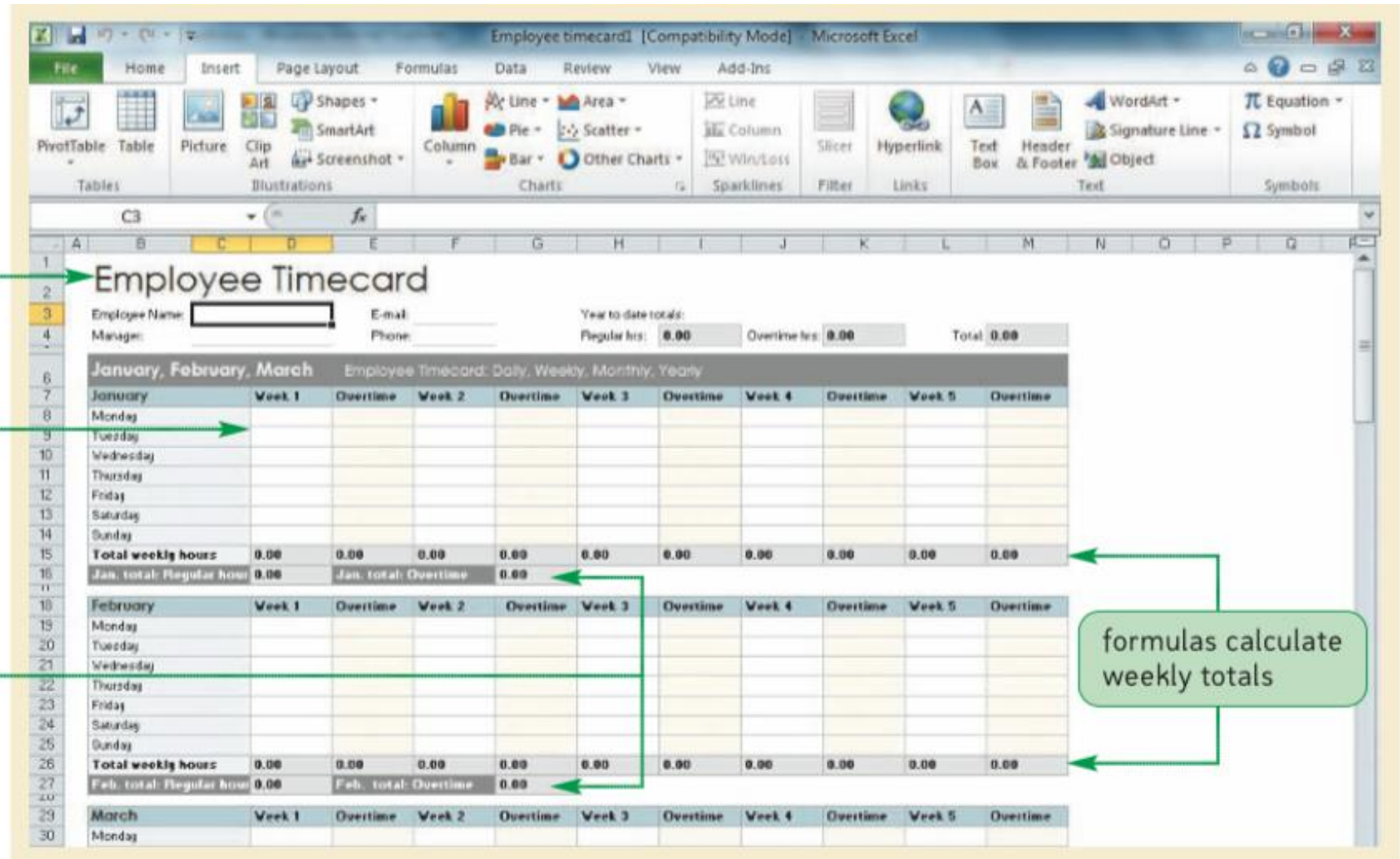
CREATING TEMPLATES

The screenshot displays the Microsoft Excel 2010 interface with the 'Available Templates' task pane open on the right. The 'Home' category is selected, showing various time sheet templates. Annotations with green callouts provide instructions:

- select the Employee timecard template**: Points to the 'Employee timecard (daily, weekly, monthly, and yearly)' template, which is highlighted with a yellow border.
- information about the selected template**: Points to the details for the selected template, including 'Provided by: Microsoft Corporation', 'Download size: 14KB', and a rating of 4 stars (3913 Votes).
- click to download the selected template**: Points to the 'Download' button located below the template preview.
- preview of the selected template**: Points to the 'Employee timecard' preview image.
- templates available in the selected category (you may see different templates)**: Points to the 'Office.com Templates' section of the task pane.

The task pane also shows a search bar and a list of other templates: 'Weekly time sheet (8 1/2 x 11, landscape)', 'Biweekly time sheet', 'Weekly time sheet by client and project', 'Weekly time sheet with tasks and overtime', and 'Weekly time sheet (8 1/2 x 11, portrait)'.

Microsoft Office
Shipping, Finance & Management Skills





CREATING CUSTOM TEMPLATES

- A **custom template** is a workbook template you create that is ready to run with the formulas for all calculations included as well as all formatting. A template can use any Excel feature, including formulas, charts, data validation, cell protection, and macros. To create a custom template, you build the workbook with all the necessary labels, formatting, and data, and then you save the workbook as a template. The template includes everything but the variable data.
- Before you create a template from an existing workbook, you should make sure that all the formulas work as intended, the numbers and text are entered correctly, and the worksheet is formatted appropriately. You should also remove any values and text that will change in each workbook created from the custom template. Be careful not to delete the formulas. When you are sure the workbook is complete and accurate, you save it as an Excel template file. You can store template files in any folder, but keep in mind that custom template files stored in the Templates folder are available on the New tab in Backstage view.
- **To Create a Workbook Based on a Template**
 - Prepare the workbook: enter values, text, and formulas as needed; apply formatting; and replace data values with zeros or blank cells.
 - Click the File tab on the Ribbon, and then click the Save As command in the navigation bar.
 - In the File name box, enter the template name.
 - Click the Save as type button, and then click Excel Template.
 - Save the file in the Templates folder or select an alternative folder location.
 - Click the Save button.

CREATING CUSTOM TEMPLATES

text reminds users
to enter data in
these cells

The screenshot shows the Microsoft Excel 2010 interface with a custom template titled 'New Mexico - Microsoft Excel'. The ribbon is set to 'Home'. The worksheet contains the following data:

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
1	Enter state name here	Global Travel								
2	Enter Fiscal Year - yyyy	Theme Park Ticket Sales-Quarter 1								
3										
4		# Tickets Sold		Sales (\$)						
5		Adults	Children	Adults	Children					
6	Animal Habitat	-	-	-	-					
7	Global Workplaces Florida	-	-	-	-					
8	Space Adventure	-	-	-	-					
9	Sea Aquarium Orlando	-	-	-	-					
10	Dade Water Park	-	-	-	-					
11	City Studios	-	-	-	-					
12	Magic Playland	-	-	-	-					
13	Totals	-	-	\$ -	\$ -					
14										

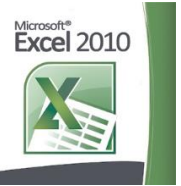
Annotations in the image:

- A green callout box on the left points to cells A1 and A2, containing the text: "text reminds users to enter data in these cells".
- A green callout box on the right points to the range B6:E13, containing the text: "cells in the range B6:E13 contain formulas and formatting but no values".

ACCESS YOUR TEMPLATES



- After you have saved a template, you can access the template from the New tab in Backstage view.
- If you saved the template file in the Templates folder, click the **My templates** button to open the New dialog box with the Personal Templates tab displayed to select the template you want to use.
- If you saved the template to another location, you can use the New from existing button to create a new workbook from the file, much like creating a workbook based on a template found in the Templates folder.
- The **New from existing** button opens a copy of the selected file, not the selected file.
- Also, the copy of the workbook that opens has a number at the end of the filename, and is considered an unnamed file, which prevents anyone from inadvertently overwriting the original file.



VALIDATING DATA ENTRY

- To ensure that correct data is entered and stored in a worksheet, you can use data validation.
- Each **validation rule** defines criteria for the data that can be stored in a cell or range. You can also add input and error alert messages for the user to that cell or range. You specify the validation criteria, the input message, and the error alert for the active cell in the Data Validation dialog box.
- When you create a validation rule, you **specify the type of data allowed as well as a list or range of acceptable values** (called validation criteria). For example, you might specify integers between 1 and 100, or a list of codes such as Excellent, Good, Fair, and Poor.

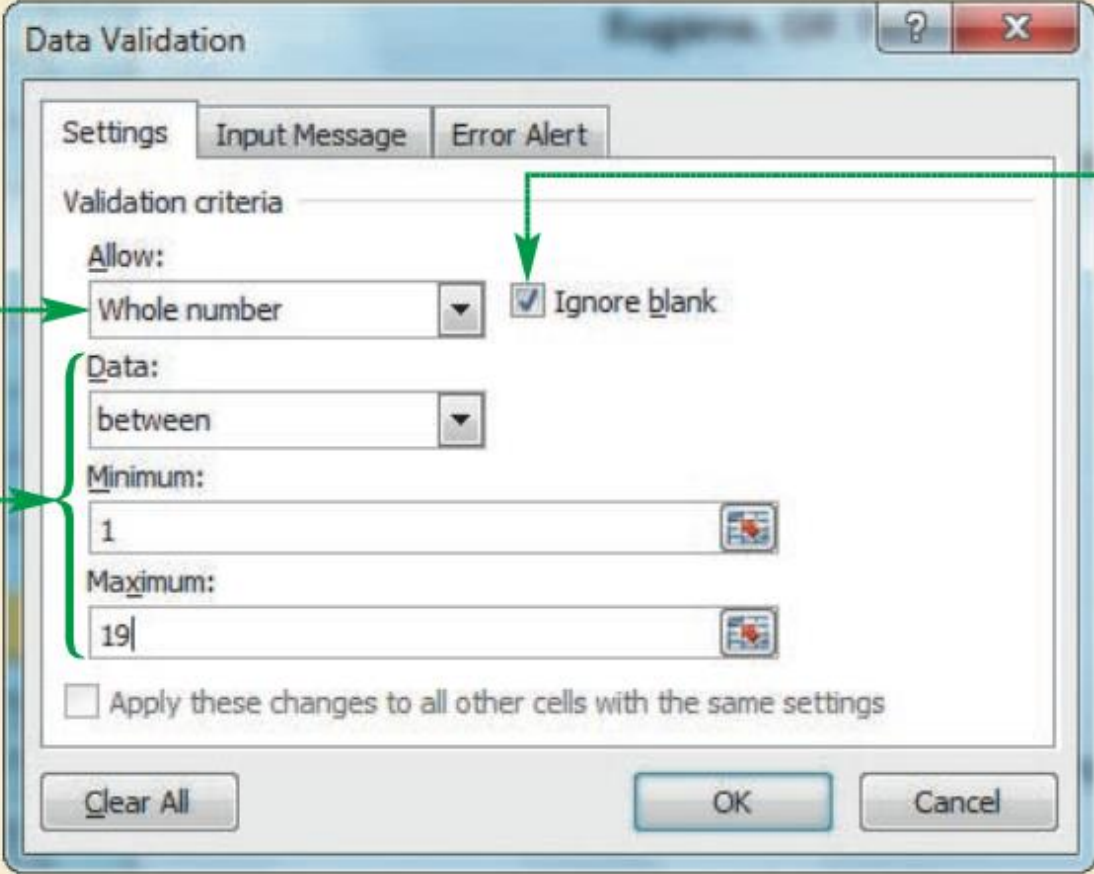
Type	Acceptable Values
Any value	Any number, text, or date; removes any existing data validation
Whole number	Integers only; you can specify the range of acceptable integers
Decimal	Any type of number; you can specify the range of acceptable numbers
List	Any value in a range or entered in the Data Validation dialog box separated by commas
Date	Dates only; you can specify the range of acceptable dates
Time	Times only; you can specify the range of acceptable times
Text length	Text limited to a specified number of characters
Custom	Values based on the results of a logical formula

VALIDATING DATA ENTRY



- In the **Data Tools group** on the **Data tab**, click the **Data Validation button**.
- Click the **Settings tab**.
- Click the **Allow arrow**, click the type of data allowed in the cell, and then enter the validation criteria for that data.
- Click the **Input Message tab**, and then enter a title and text for the input message.
- Click the **Error Alert tab**, and then, if necessary, click the **Show error alert after invalid data is entered check box** to insert a check mark.
- Select an alert style, and then enter the title and text for the error alert message.
- Click the **OK button**.

SPECIFYING VALIDATION CRITERIA



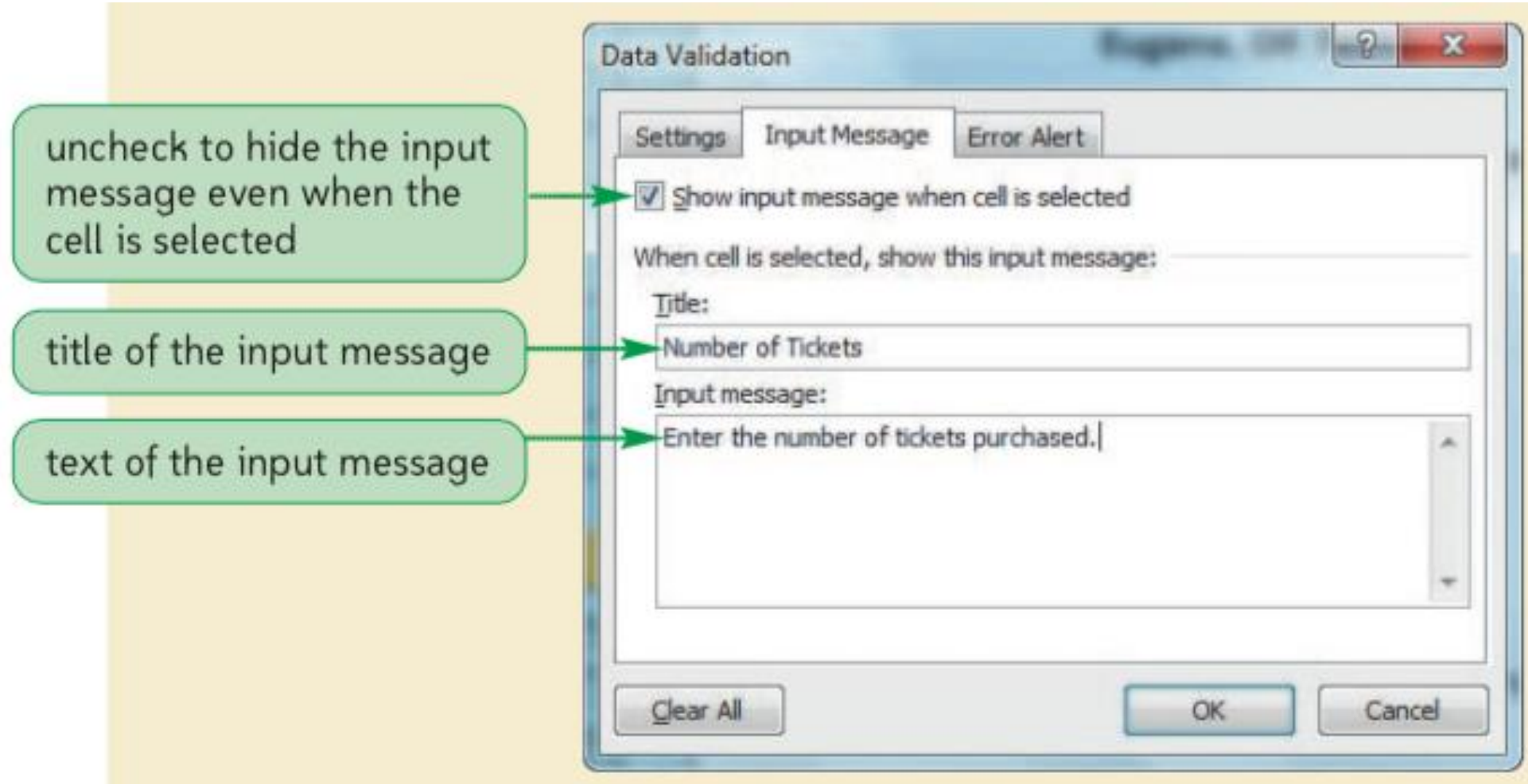
The screenshot shows the 'Data Validation' dialog box with the 'Settings' tab selected. The 'Allow:' dropdown is set to 'Whole number'. The 'Data:' dropdown is set to 'between'. The 'Minimum:' field contains '1' and the 'Maximum:' field contains '19'. The 'Ignore blank' checkbox is checked. Annotations include: a green box on the left stating 'select the type of value you want to allow in the cell' with an arrow pointing to the 'Allow:' dropdown; another green box on the left stating 'these options change to reflect the allowed value' with an arrow pointing to the 'Data:', 'Minimum:', and 'Maximum:' fields; and a green box on the right stating 'uncheck to apply the validation rule to empty cells (which means that the cell cannot be left blank)' with an arrow pointing to the 'Ignore blank' checkbox.

select the type of value you want to allow in the cell

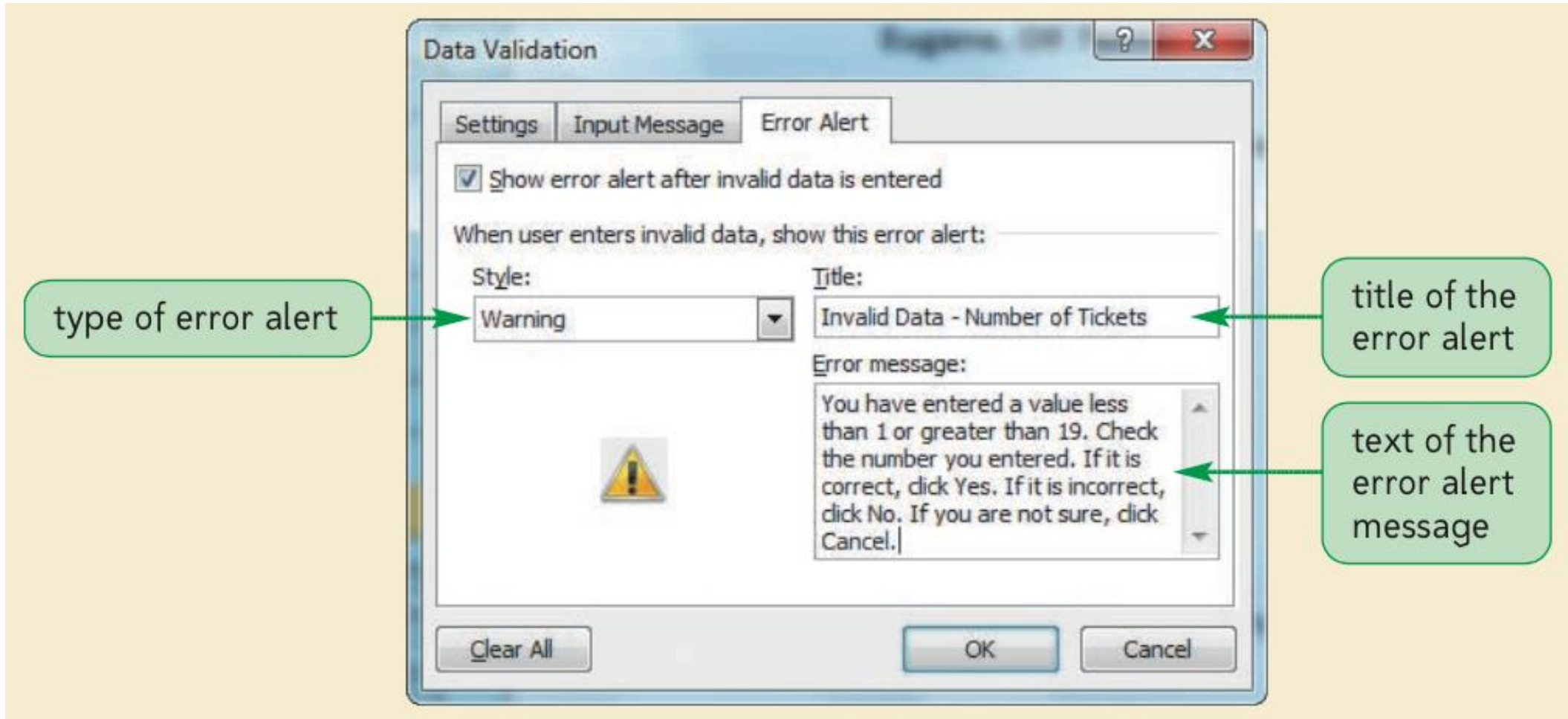
these options change to reflect the allowed value

uncheck to apply the validation rule to empty cells (which means that the cell cannot be left blank)

CREATING AN INPUT MESSAGE



CREATING AN ERROR ALERT STYLE AND MESSAGE



USING FORMULAS TO DEFINE COMPLEX VALIDATION CRITERIA



- The built-in data validation rules are adequate for most simple needs. Sometimes, however, those rules just don't fit your specific worksheet. In those cases, you need to create a custom validation rule that includes a formula.
- **To create a custom validation rule**, open the Data Validation dialog box. On the Settings tab, click the Allow arrow, and then click Custom. You can then create the data validation formula.
- The formula you specify must be in the form of a condition that returns either True or False.
 - If True is returned, the data entered is considered valid and accepted.
 - If False is returned, the entry is considered invalid and an error alert message is displayed.
- For example, someone can use data validation to prevent the entry of dates that fall on Saturday or Sunday.
 - The WEEKDAY function returns a number (1 to 7) for the date entered in the cell, and then you create a formula to display an error alert if values of 1 (Sunday) or 7 (Saturday) are detected.
 - Assuming the date is entered in cell B2, the following formula returns False if either Saturday or Sunday is entered in cell B2:
`=AND(WEEKDAY(B2)<>1,WEEKDAY(B2)<>7)`

VALIDATING EXISTING DATA

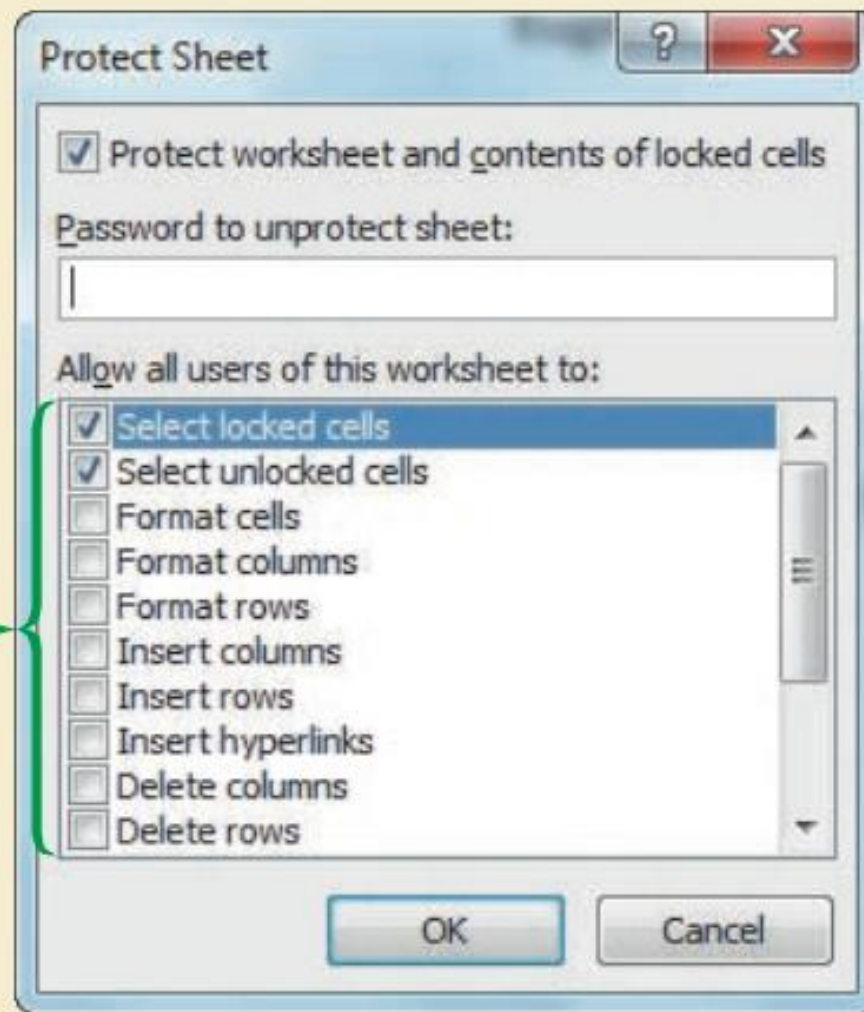
- Validation rules come into play only during data entry. If you add validation rules to a workbook that already contains data with erroneous values, Excel does not determine if any existing data is invalid.
- To ensure the entire workbook contains valid data, you need to also verify any data previously entered in the workbook. You can use the **Circle Invalid Data command** to find and mark cells that contain invalid data. Red circles appear around any data that does not meet the validation criteria, making it simple to scan a worksheet for errors. After you correct the data in a cell, the circle disappears.
- **To display circles around invalid data, perform the following steps:**
 - Apply validation rules to existing range.
 - In the Data Tools group on the Data tab, click the Data Validation button arrow, and then click Circle Invalid Data. Red circles appear around cells that contain invalid data.
 - To remove the circle from a single cell, enter valid data in the cell.
 - To hide all circles, in the Data Tools group on the Data tab, click the Data Validation button arrow, and then click Clear Validation Circles.
 - To ensure an error-free workbook, you should use the Circle Invalid Data command to verify data entered before you set up the validation criteria or to verify data in a workbook you inherited from someone else, such as a coworker.



PROTECTING A WORKSHEET

- Every cell in a workbook has a **locked property** that determines whether changes can be made to that cell. **The locked property has no impact as long as the worksheet is unprotected.** However, after you protect a worksheet, the locked property controls whether the cell can be edited. You unlock a cell by turning off the locked property. By default, the locked property is turned on for each cell, and worksheet protection is turned off.
- So, unless you unlock cells in a worksheet before protecting the worksheet, all of the cells in the worksheet will be locked, and you won't be able to make any changes in the worksheet.
- Usually, you will want to **protect the worksheet, but leave some cells unlocked.** For example, you might want to lock cells that contain formulas and formatting so they cannot be changed, but unlock cells in which you want to enter data.
- To protect some—but not all—cells in a worksheet, you first turn off the locked property of cells in which data can be entered. Then, you protect the worksheet to activate the locked property for the remaining cells.
 - Select the cells and ranges to unlock so that users can enter data in them.
 - In the Font group on the Home tab, click the Dialog Box Launcher.
 - In the Format Cells dialog box, click the Protection tab, click the Locked check box to remove the check mark, and then click the OK button.
 - In the Changes group on the Review tab, click the Protect Sheet button.
 - Enter a password (optional).
 - Select all of the actions you want to allow users to take when the worksheet is protected.
 - Click the OK button.

PROTECTING A WORKSHEET



check the actions you want users to be able to perform in the protected worksheet

TIP

Keep passwords in a safe place. Remember, passwords are case sensitive. If you forget the password, it is very difficult to remove the worksheet protection.



PROTECTING A WORKBOOK

- Worksheet protection applies only to the contents of a worksheet, not to the worksheet itself.
- **To keep a worksheet from being modified, you need to protect the workbook.**
- You can protect both the structure and the windows of a workbook.
 - **Protecting the structure** prohibits users from renaming, deleting, hiding, or inserting worksheets.
 - **Protecting the windows** prohibits users from moving, resizing, closing, or hiding parts of the Excel window.
- The default is to protect only the structure of the workbook, not the windows used to display it.
- You can also add a password to the workbook protection. However, the same guideline applies here as for protecting worksheets:
 - Add a password only if you are concerned that others might unprotect the workbook and modify it. If you add a password, keep in mind that it is case sensitive and you cannot unprotect the workbook without it.
- **To Protect a Workbook:**
 - In the Changes group on the Review tab, click the Protect Workbook button.
 - Click the check boxes to indicate whether you want to protect the workbook's structure, windows, or both.
 - Enter a password (optional).
 - Click the OK button.

UNPROTECTING A WORKSHEET AND A WORKBOOK

- You can turn off worksheet protection at any time. This is often referred to as unprotecting the worksheet.
- You need to unprotect a worksheet to edit its contents. If you assigned a password when you protected the worksheet, you would need to enter the password to remove worksheet protection.
- Likewise, you can unprotect the workbook. If you need to insert a new worksheet or rename an existing worksheet, you can unprotect the protected workbook, make the changes to the structure, and apply workbook protection again.
- **To turn off worksheet protection:** In the Changes group on the Review tab, click the Unprotect Sheet button.
- **To remove workbook protection,** click the Protect Workbook button in the Changes group on the Review tab.



INSERTING COMMENTS

- Comments are often used in workbooks to:
 - (a) explain the contents of a particular cell, such as a complex formula;
 - (b) provide instructions to users; and
 - (c) share ideas and notes from several users collaborating on a project.
- The username for your installation of Excel appears in bold at the top of the comments box.
- If you collaborate on a workbook, the top of the comments boxes would show the name of each user who created that comment.
- A small red triangle appears in the upper-right corner of a cell with a comment. The comment box appears when you point to a cell with a comment.
- **To Insert a Comment:**
 - Click the cell to which you want to attach a comment.
 - Right-click the cell, and then click Insert Comment on the shortcut menu.

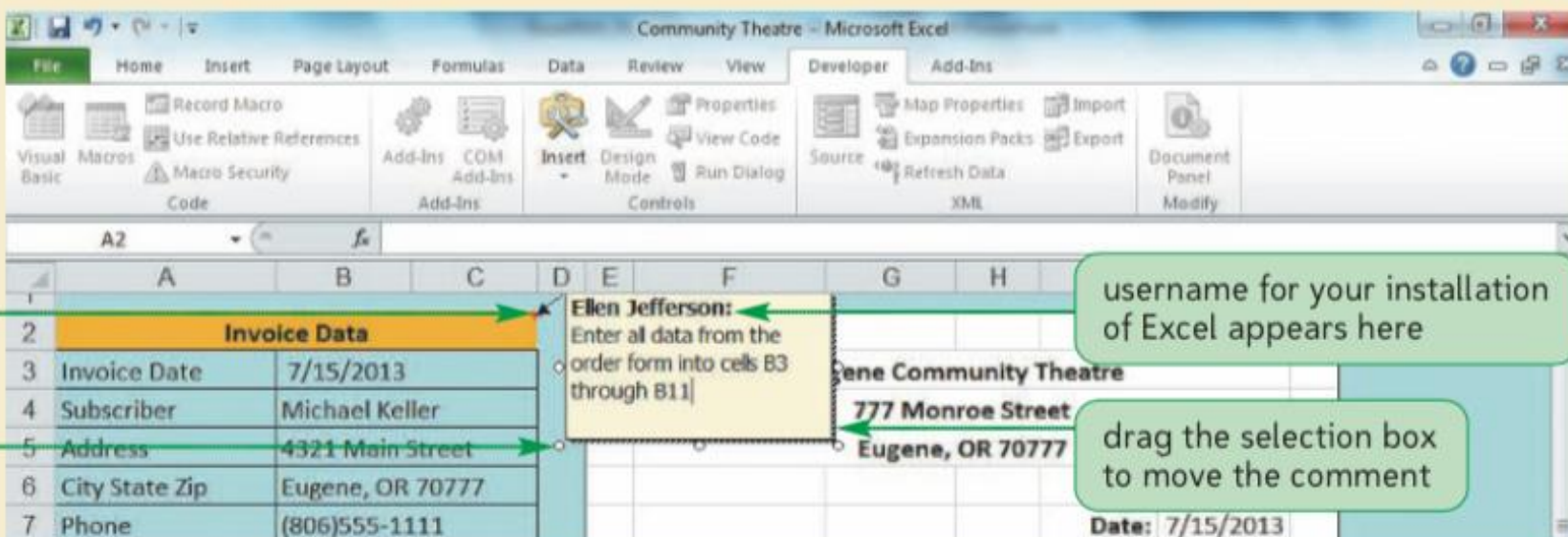
or

- In the Comments group on the Review tab, click the New Comment button.
- Type the comment into the box

INSERTING COMMENTS

red triangle
indicates this cell
has a comment

drag a sizing handle
to resize the box



username for your installation
of Excel appears here

drag the selection box
to move the comment

Invoice Date	7/15/2013
Subscriber	Michael Keller
Address	4321 Main Street
City State Zip	Eugene, OR 70777
Phone	(806)555-1111

Eugene Community Theatre
777 Monroe Street
Eugene, OR 70777
Date: 7/15/2013

TIP

To keep an active cell's comment on-screen, click the Show/Hide Comment button in the Comments group on the Review tab. Click the button again to hide the active cell's comment.

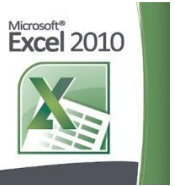
SHARING A WORKBOOK WITH MULTIPLE USERS

- To enable **several users to view and modify the same workbook**, you can share the workbook.
- A shared workbook can be edited simultaneously by more than one user when it is placed on a shared network folder, making it accessible to multiple users.
- A shared workbook can also be edited sequentially by users who work on the file in turns. One advantage of sharing a workbook is that you can track the changes made by different people and the time that each change was made.
- In a shared workbook, you can enter numbers and text, edit cells, move data, insert new rows and columns, and perform other usual editing tasks.
- However, you cannot delete worksheets and ranges, insert ranges, merge and split cells, edit charts, or use the drawing tools. In general, you can do anything in the workbook that does not drastically change the layout or content to such an extent that Excel can no longer reconcile your edits with the edits from other users.
- By default, Excel does not enable workbook sharing in order to prevent malicious software from opening and sharing personal information and sensitive data with the outside world. Before you can share a workbook, you must **reset the privacy options**. You set the privacy options for each workbook you wish to share, not the entire Excel program.

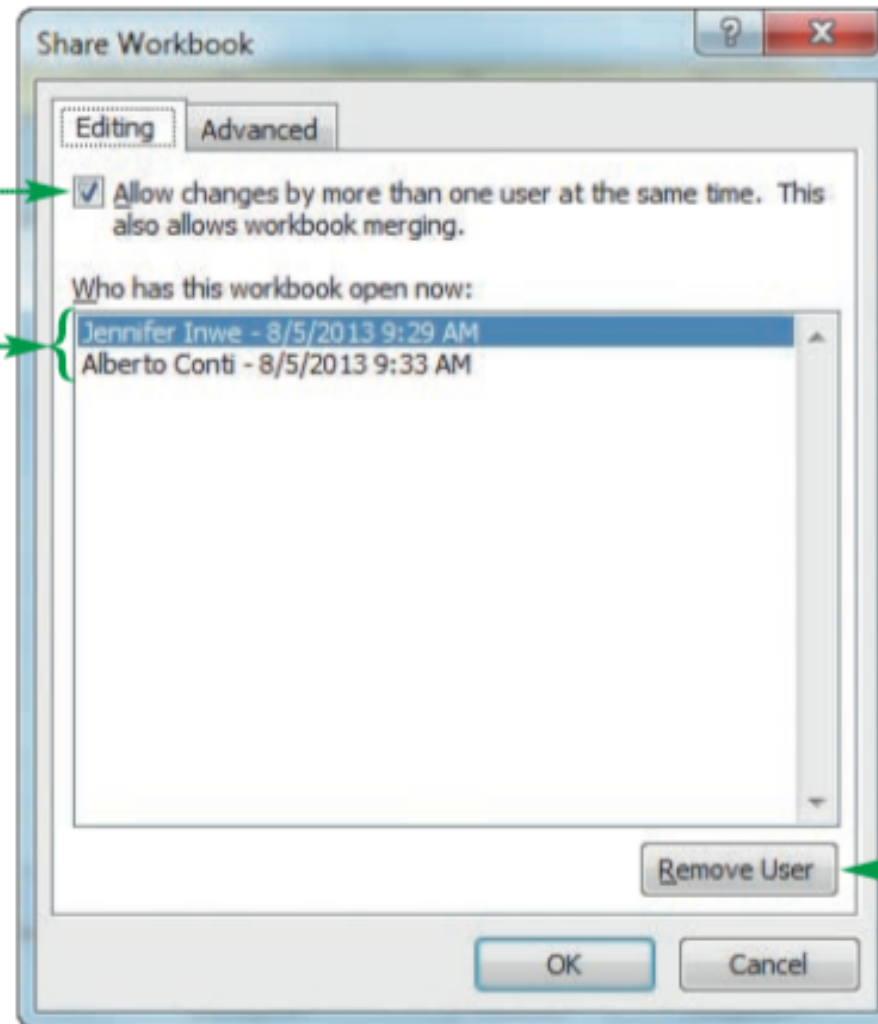
SHARING A WORKBOOK WITH MULTIPLE USERS



- **To reset the privacy options for a workbook:**
 - Click the File tab on the Ribbon, and then click Options in the navigation bar. The Excel Options dialog box opens.
 - Click Trust Center in the left pane, and then click the Trust Center Settings button in the right pane. The Trust Center dialog box opens.
 - Click Privacy Options in the left pane, and then uncheck the Remove personal information from file properties on save check box in the Document-specific settings section.
 - Click the OK button in each dialog box to return to the workbook.
- **To enable workbook sharing:**
 - Click the Review tab on the Ribbon, and then click the Share Workbook button in the Changes group. The Share Workbook dialog box opens with the Editing tab active.
 - Click the Allow changes by more than one user at the same time check box to insert a check mark. This allows others to access and edit this workbook.
 - Click the OK button. A dialog box opens indicating the workbook will be saved, which changes its status to shared.
 - Click the OK button. The workbook is saved and [Shared] appears on the title bar next to the workbook name. Close the workbook.



SHARING A WORKBOOK WITH MULTIPLE USERS



check to allow simultaneous editing of the workbook

list of users currently editing the workbook

click to disconnect the selected user from the shared workbook

RESOLVING CONFLICTS



- When people make changes to different cells, Excel marks those edits into the shared workbook and notifies current users of the change.
- Conflicts occur when users try to save different changes to the same cell. Suppose Jennifer and Alberto make different edits to cell B7. Alberto saves his workbook first and stores \$770,857 in cell B7. However, Jennifer is working at the same time and enters \$770,457 in cell B7. When Jennifer saves her workbook, the Resolve Conflicts dialog box opens, notifying her of the conflict in cell B7. From this dialog box, Jennifer can choose which edit to accept. She can repeat this process for each conflict.
- The **Resolve Conflicts dialog box** appears only when conflicts arise in the edits that the coworkers make while working on the document simultaneously.
- All users have equal authority to resolve conflicts. The last user to save the document is the one who sees the Resolve Conflicts dialog box.
- **Rejected edits are stored in a tracking log** so any user can review and retrieve them. This feature is particularly useful when a large group is editing a workbook and more control over the final content is needed.

RESOLVING CONFLICTS



Jennifer and Alberto edit the same document simultaneously

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	DataSafe							
2	Consolidated Income Statements							
3	(in thousands, except per share data)							
4				Fiscal year ends January 31,				
5	For the Fiscal Year	2011	2012	2013				
6								
7	Revenues	770,157	617,126	496,693				
8	Cost and expenses:							
9	Cost of goods sold	76,364	71,338	64,217				
10	Marketing and selling	260,553	237,107	199,939				
11	Research and development	142,806	122,432	93,702				



Alberto saves his workbook first with a new value in cell B7

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	DataSafe							
2	Consolidated Income Statements							
3	(in thousands, except per share data)							
4				Fiscal year ends January 31,				
5	For the Fiscal Year	2011	2012	2013				
6								
7	Revenues	770,857	617,126	496,693				
8	Cost and expenses:							
9	Cost of goods sold	76,364	71,338	64,217				
10	Marketing and selling	260,553	237,107	199,939				
11	Research and development	142,806	122,432	93,702				

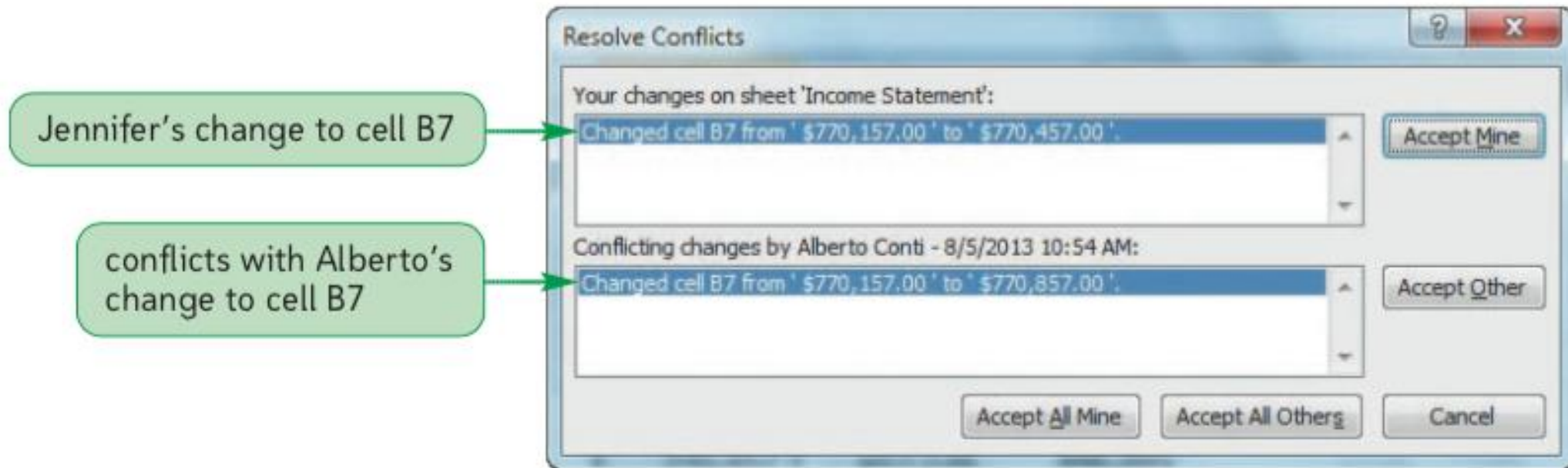


When Jennifer saves her workbook, a comment notifies her of Alberto's edit

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	DataSafe							
2	Consolidated Income Statements							
3	(in thousands, except per share data)							
4				Fiscal year ends January 31,				
5	For the Fiscal Year	2011	2012	2013				
6								
7	Revenues	770,857	617,126	496,693				
8	Cost and expenses:							
9	Cost of goods sold	76,364	71,338	64,217				
10	Marketing and selling	260,553	237,107	199,939				
11	Research and development	142,806	122,432	93,702				

Alberto Cont, 8/5/2013 10:13 AM:
Changed cell B7 from ' \$770,157.00 ' to ' \$770,857.00 '.

RESOLVING CONFLICTS

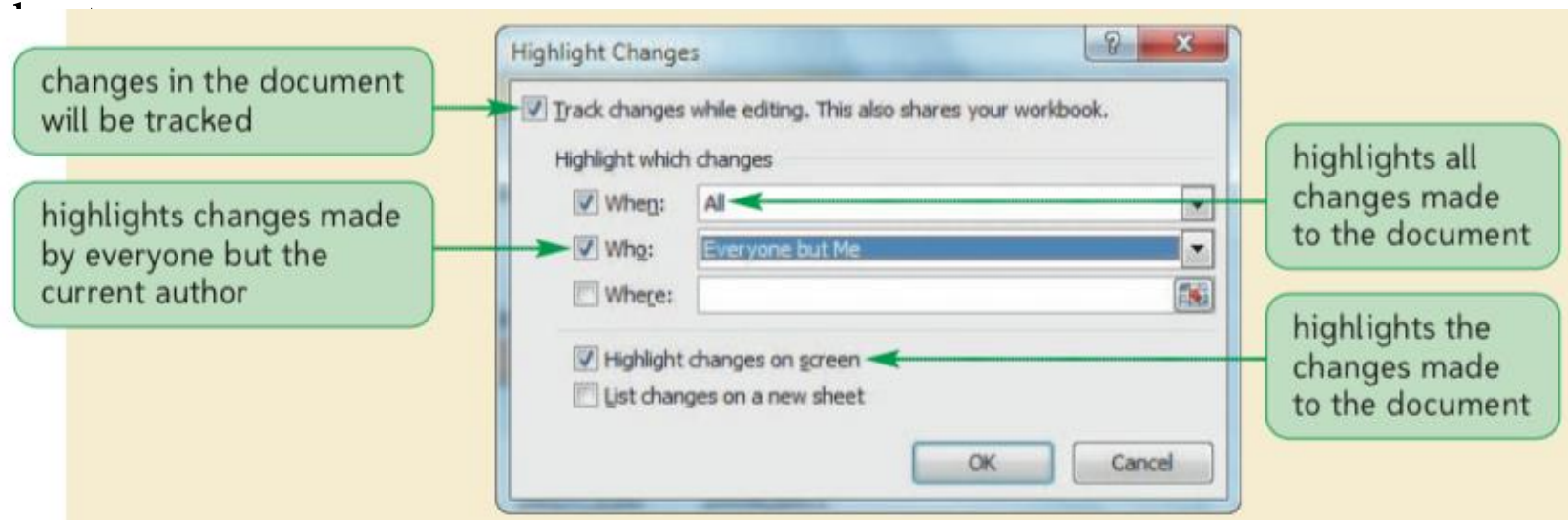


REVIEWING TRACKED CHANGES IN A SHARED WORKBOOK

- In the Changes group on the Review tab, click the Track Changes button, and then click Highlight Changes.
- Specify when, who, and where in the Highlight which changes section.
- Click the Highlight changes on screen check box to see edits in comments.

OR

- Click the List changes on a new sheet check box to view the tracking log.
- Click the OK button.
- Point to the highlighted cells to see the edits and/or **view the tracking log** in the History work

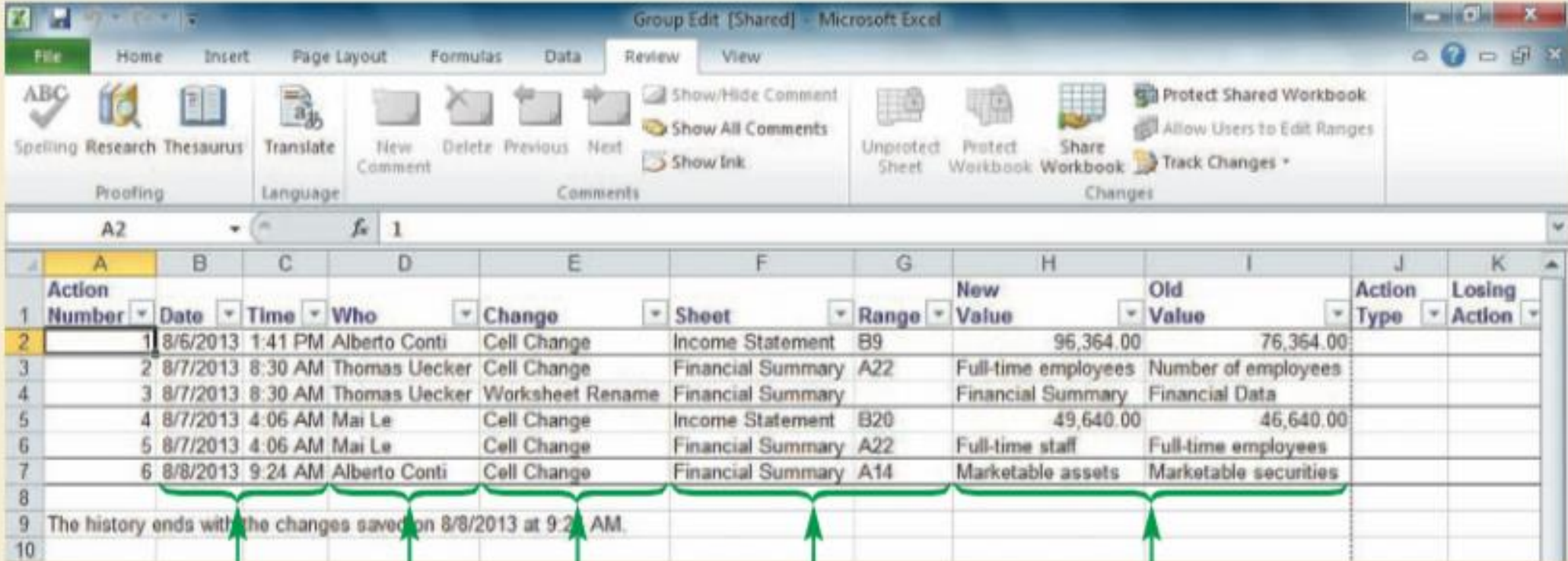


REVIEWING TRACKED CHANGES IN A SHARED WORKBOOK



- Examining all the sheets in a workbook to find the highlighted changes can be time consuming, especially in workbooks with many worksheets. **The tracking log** provides a faster method to review the changes. When you create a tracking log, which appears on the History worksheet, it lists all the changes made to the workbook along with information about the date and time each change was made, the person who made the change, the location of the change, and the change itself.
- **To show the contents of the tracking log:**
 - In the Changes group on the Review tab, click the Track Changes button, and then click Highlight Changes. The Highlight Changes dialog box opens.
 - Click the List changes on a new sheet check box to insert a check mark.
 - Click the OK button. The History worksheet is created, detailing the history of the six changes made to the workbook in chronological order along with who made each change, where it was made, and what kind of change it was.

REVIEWING TRACKED CHANGES IN A SHARED WORKBOOK



The screenshot shows the Microsoft Excel 2010 interface with the 'Review' tab selected. The 'Track Changes' group in the ribbon is visible. Below the ribbon, a table displays the history of tracked changes. The table has columns for Action Number, Date, Time, Who (author), Change (type), Sheet, Range, New Value, Old Value, Action Type, and Losing Action. The history shows several changes made between 8/6/2013 and 8/8/2013. Green arrows point from labels at the bottom to specific columns in the table: 'date and time of the edit' points to Date and Time; 'author of the edit' points to Who; 'type of edit' points to Change; 'location of the edit' points to Sheet and Range; and 'description of the edit' points to New Value and Old Value.

Action Number	Date	Time	Who	Change	Sheet	Range	New Value	Old Value	Action Type	Losing Action
1	8/6/2013	1:41 PM	Alberto Conti	Cell Change	Income Statement	B9	96,364.00	76,364.00		
2	8/7/2013	8:30 AM	Thomas Uecker	Cell Change	Financial Summary	A22	Full-time employees	Number of employees		
3	8/7/2013	8:30 AM	Thomas Uecker	Worksheet Rename	Financial Summary		Financial Summary	Financial Data		
4	8/7/2013	4:06 AM	Mai Le	Cell Change	Income Statement	B20	49,640.00	46,640.00		
5	8/7/2013	4:06 AM	Mai Le	Cell Change	Financial Summary	A22	Full-time staff	Full-time employees		
6	8/8/2013	9:24 AM	Alberto Conti	Cell Change	Financial Summary	A14	Marketable assets	Marketable securities		

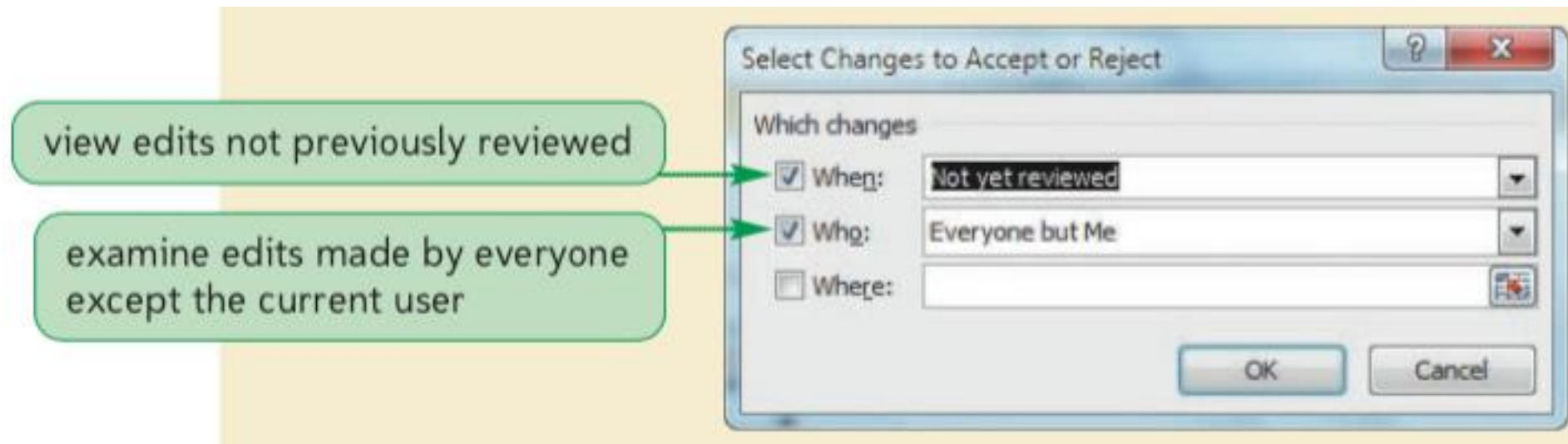
The history ends with the changes saved on 8/8/2013 at 9:24 AM.

Labels and arrows at the bottom:

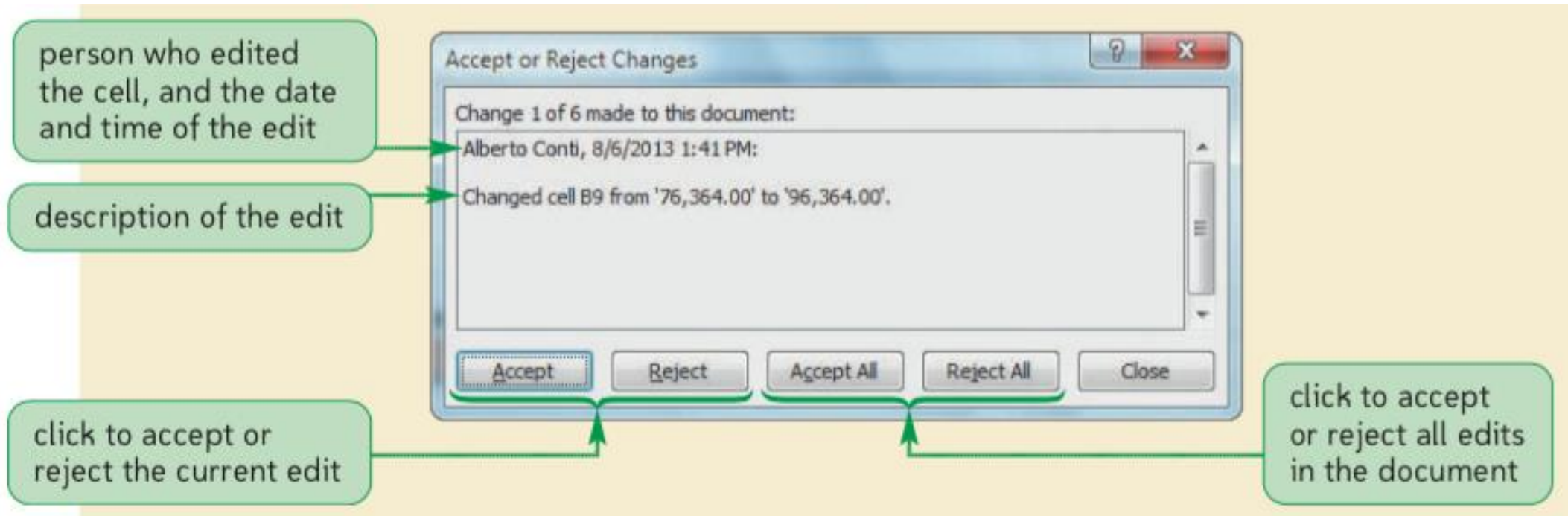
- date and time of the edit (points to Date and Time)
- author of the edit (points to Who)
- type of edit (points to Change)
- location of the edit (points to Sheet and Range)
- description of the edit (points to New Value and Old Value)

ACCEPTING AND REJECTING EDITS

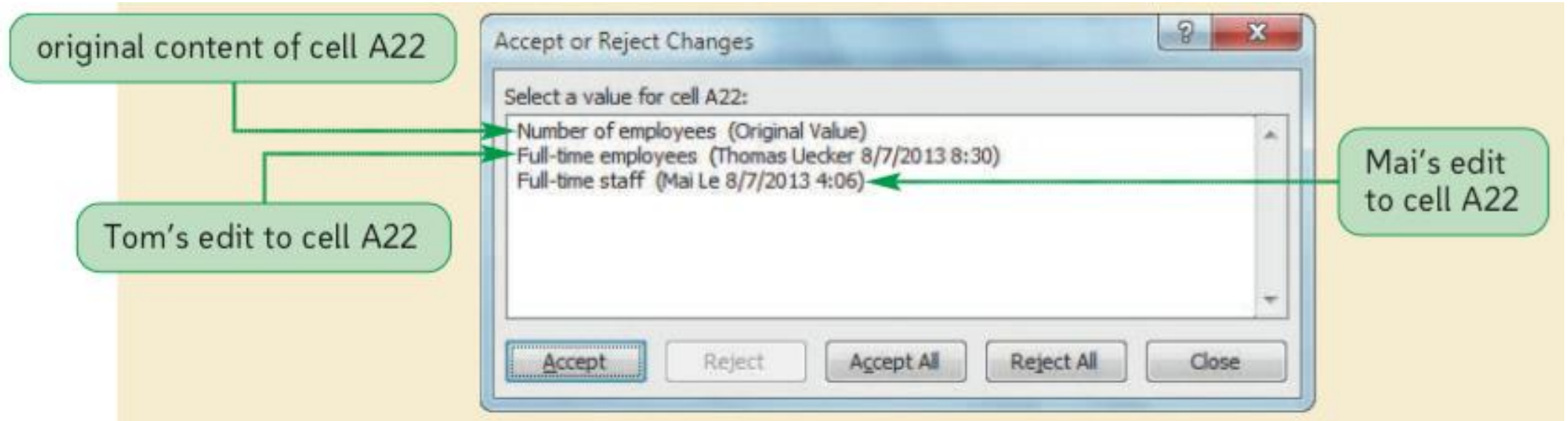
- In the Changes group on the Review tab, click the Track Changes button, and then click Accept/Reject Changes.
- Specify when, by whom, and where changes are to be reviewed.
- Click the OK button.
- Proceed through the list of changes, clicking the Accept, Reject, Accept All, Reject All, or Close buttons.



ACCEPTING AND REJECTING EDITS



ACCEPTING AND REJECTING EDITS



TIP

You can accept or reject all changes to the workbook at one time by clicking the Accept All or Reject All button.

MERGE AND COMPARE WORKBOOKS

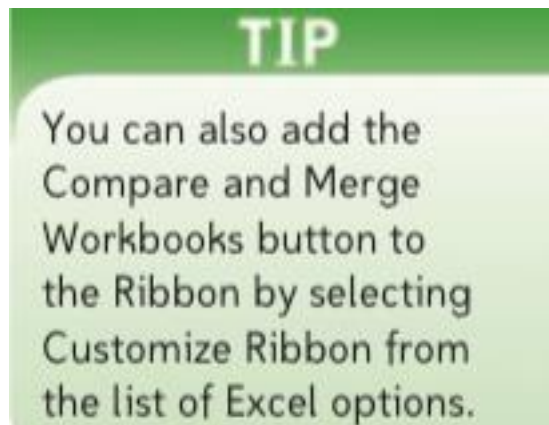


- When two (or more) copies of the same workbook have different edits, you can merge the workbooks to create a single workbook that combines the edits from both files. The following **conditions must be met to merge two workbooks**:
 - The two workbooks must be copies of the same file, which must also be a shared workbook.
 - The two workbooks must have different filenames.
 - The two workbooks must either have the same password or not be password-protected.
 - The Track Changes feature must be turned on for both workbooks.
 - The tracking log must be kept from the time the two workbooks are made from the original common file.
- **To Merge the Workbooks**
 - Customize the Quick Access Toolbar to display the Compare and Merge Workbooks button.
 - Open the workbook into which you want to merge the workbooks.
 - Click the Compare and Merge Workbooks button on the Quick Access Toolbar.
 - Select the workbook that you want to merge into the current document, and then click the OK button.

ADDING THE COMPARE AND MERGE WORKBOOKS BUTTON TO THE QUICK ACCESS TOOLBAR



- On the Quick Access Toolbar, click the **Customize Quick Access Toolbar** button , and then click More Commands.
- Click the Choose commands from arrow, and then click Commands Not in the Ribbon to display a list of all the Excel commands that do not appear on the Ribbon.
- Click Compare and Merge Workbooks from the list of commands, and then click the Add button. The Compare and Merge Workbooks command button is added to the commands on the Quick Access Toolbar.
- Click the OK button.



SETTING DOCUMENT PROPERTIES



- The Documentation worksheet includes **a description of the final workbook, its contents, and its purpose**. You can also make this information available by modifying the workbook's document properties, or metadata, which are the descriptive details about a file, including its author, title, and subject. The **five types of document properties** are:
 - **Standard properties**, which are properties associated with all Office files and include the author, title, and subject.
 - **Automatically updated properties**, which are properties usually associated with the file itself, such as the file size or the date the file was last edited. You cannot modify the automatically updated properties.
 - **Custom properties**, which are properties you define and create specifically for your workbook.
 - **Organization properties**, which are properties created for organizations using the Document Information Panel available with Microsoft InfoPath.
 - **Document library properties**, which are properties associated with documents in a document library on a Web site or in a public network folder.
- Users can **access document properties without opening the workbook**, making it easier to find key files. For example, in a network folder with hundreds of files, your colleagues can quickly locate workbooks you authored or workbooks about a specific topic.

SETTING DOCUMENT PROPERTIES

- To add document properties to the workbook:
 - Click the **File** tab on the Ribbon, and then click **Info** in the navigation bar to display information about the workbook in Backstage view.
 - Click the **Show All Properties** link in the right pane.

The screenshot displays the Microsoft Excel 2010 Backstage view for the file 'Financial Report Final Draft'. The 'File' tab is selected on the ribbon. The left navigation pane shows 'Info' as the active section. The main area is titled 'Information about Financial Report Final Draft' and contains three sections: 'Permissions', 'Prepare for Sharing', and 'Versions'. The 'Properties' pane on the right is expanded, showing various document metadata. Green callout boxes with arrows point to specific elements in the Properties pane:

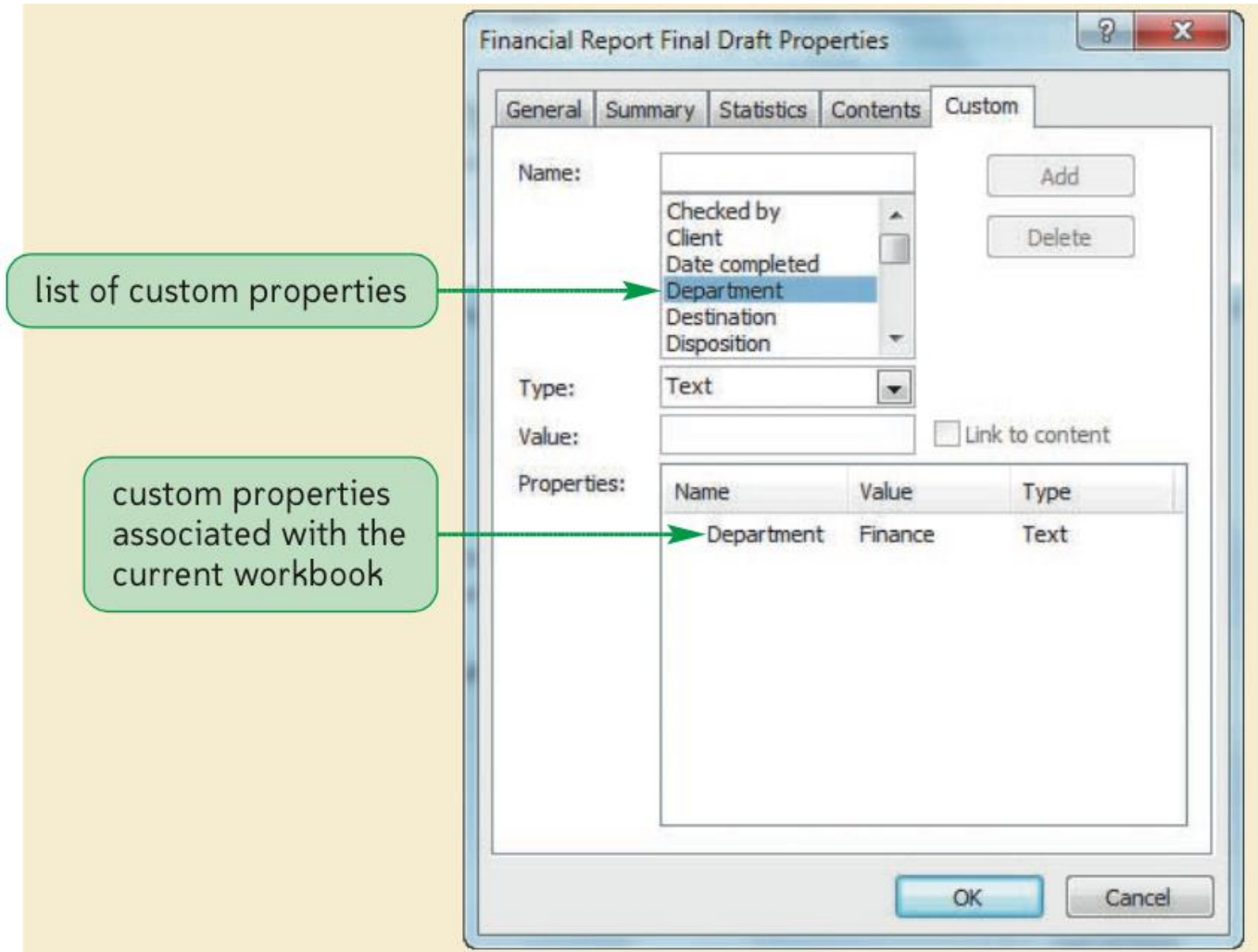
- click to view advanced properties tag**: Points to the 'Properties' link in the top right corner.
- document tags and comments**: Points to the 'Tags' and 'Comments' fields.
- document status**: Points to the 'Status' field.
- document subject**: Points to the 'Subject' field.
- document author (your name appears here)**: Points to the 'Author' field.
- document category**: Points to the 'Categories' field.

The Properties pane includes the following fields and values:

Field	Value
Size	33.5KB
Title	Add a title
Tags	stockholders; yearly meet...
Comments	Final draft of the 2013 fin...
Template	
Status	Final Draft
Categories	Financial Statements
Subject	DataSafe Financial Report
Hyperlink Base	Add text
Company	Specify the company
Related Dates	
Last Modified	Today, 5:58 PM
Created	8/07/2013 12:31 PM
Last Printed	Never
Related People	
Manager	Specify the manager
Author	Jennifer Inwe
	Add an author
Last Modified By	Jennifer Inwe
Related Documents	
Open File Location	
Show Fewer Properties	

SETTING DOCUMENT PROPERTIES

- **To enter a custom property:**
- At the top of the right pane of the Info tab in Backstage view, click the Properties button, and then click **Advanced Properties**. The Final Draft Properties dialog box opens.
- Click the Custom tab, and then click a property in the Name box. Verify that the data type is correctly set.
- Type the description you want in the Value box, and then click the Add button. The property is added to the Properties box.

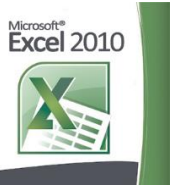


INSPECTING A WORKBOOK



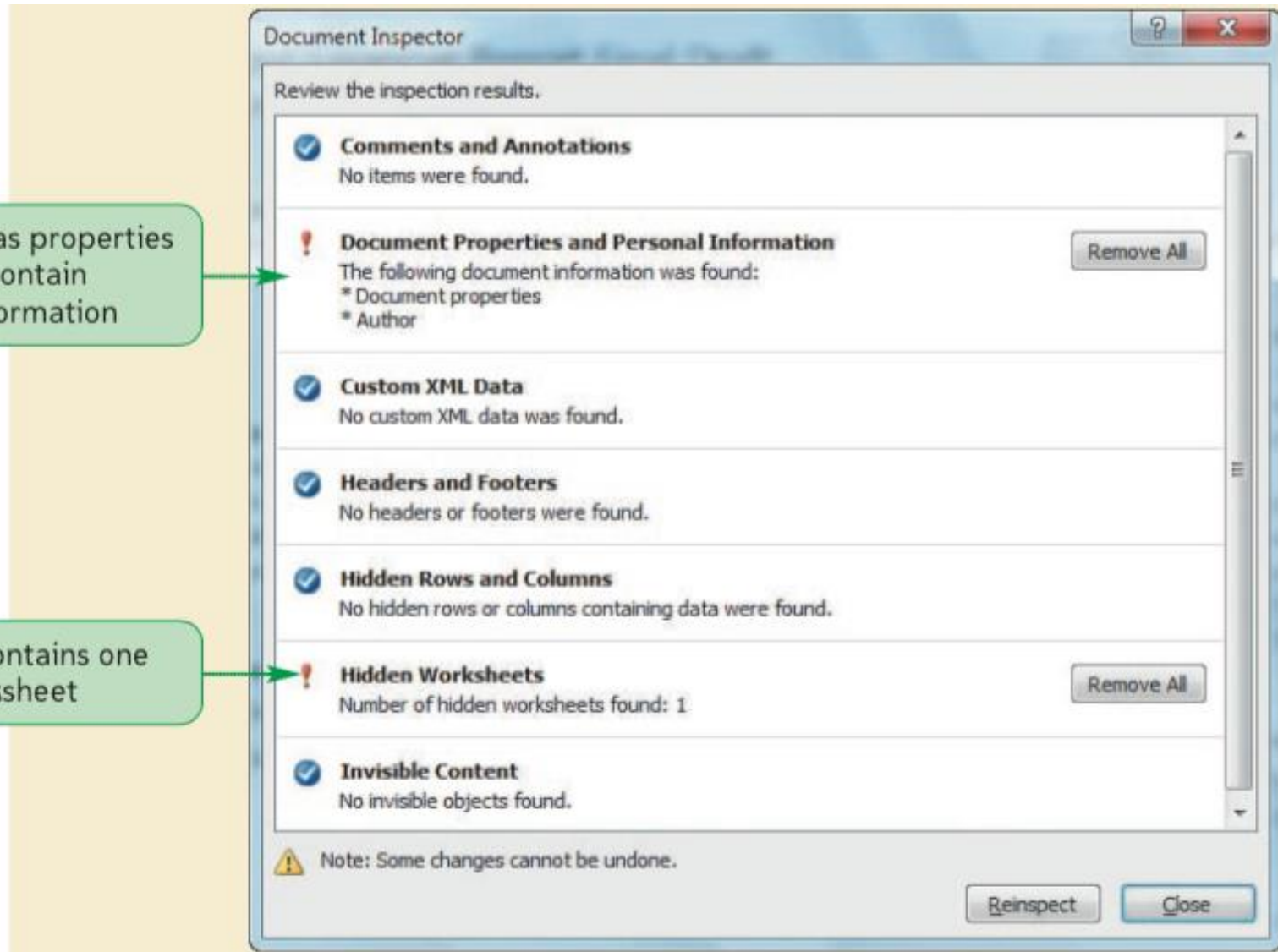
- Before distributing the workbook, you may want to ensure it doesn't contain **sensitive or personal information**.
- **Personal information** can come from comments and annotations, document properties and metadata attached to the workbook, custom XML data stored within the XML code for the workbook file, headers and footers, hidden worksheets and cells, cells whose display styles make them invisible to the user, and server information inserted by saving a workbook on the Document Workspace site or within a Document Library.
- To determine whether a workbook contains sensitive or personal information, you can use the **Document Inspector**, which searches the workbook to locate data and text that fit these categories. You can then remove any personal information, if necessary, with the Document Inspector.
- **To inspect the workbook:**
 - In the left pane of the Info tab in Backstage view, click the Check for Issues button, and then click Inspect Document.
 - Click the Yes button in the dialog box that opens prompting you to save the file.
 - The Document Inspector dialog box opens.
 - Leave all of the check boxes checked, and then click the Inspect button. The inspection results appear in the dialog box.

INSPECTING A WORKBOOK



workbook has properties that might contain personal information

workbook contains one hidden worksheet





HIDDEN WORKSHEETS

- Hidden worksheets are often used to conceal source data and documentation that is useful to the author but is distracting or confusing to other users.
- **To show and hide the hidden worksheet:**
 - Right-click any sheet tab in the workbook, and click Unhide on the shortcut menu. The Unhide dialog box opens, displaying a list of all the hidden sheets in the workbook.

ENCRYPTING A WORKBOOK

- You can encrypt a workbook to help secure its contents. Encryption is the process by which a file is encoded so that it cannot be opened without the proper password. The encryption password is different from the passwords to prevent users from editing a worksheet or the entire workbook. An encryption password **prevents unauthorized users from even opening the file**. Passwords can be up to 255 characters in length and can include numbers, symbols, and upper- and lowercase letters.

ENCRYPTING A WORKBOOK



- **To encrypt the workbook:**
 - Click the File tab on the Ribbon, and then click Info in the navigation bar.
 - Click the Protect Workbook button, and then click the Encrypt with Password button.
 - Type a password in the Password box, and then click the OK button.
 - Retype the password in the password box, and then click the OK button. A password is now required to open this workbook.
 - Save and close the workbook, and then reopen the workbook. The Password dialog box opens, preventing the workbook from opening without the password.

MARKING A WORKBOOK AS FINAL



- A final workbook has the editing, typing, and proofing commands disabled or turned off. The user can only view the contents of the file, not change it. Also, the Status document property value changes to Final.
- The Mark as Final command informs others that this workbook is intended to be the final version of the workbook. However, anyone can remove the Mark as Final status from the workbook by reapplying the Mark as Final command to deselect it.
- **To mark the financial report workbook as final:**
 - Click the File tab on the Ribbon, and then click Info in the navigation bar.
 - Click the Protect Workbook button, and then click Mark as Final. A dialog box opens indicating that the workbook will be marked as final and then saved.
 - Click the OK button. A second dialog box opens indicating that the file has been marked as final.
 - Click the OK button. A marked-as-final workbook is displayed with [Read-Only] in the title bar.
 - Click a blank cell in the active worksheet to confirm that you cannot edit the workbook.

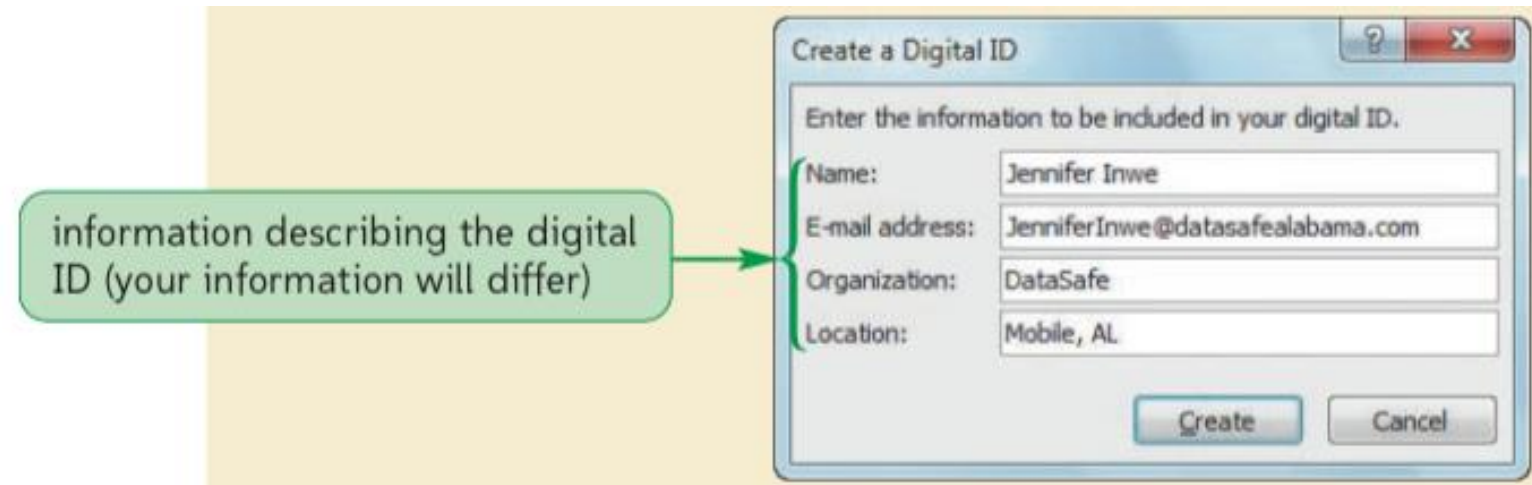
PROVIDING A DIGITAL SIGNATURE



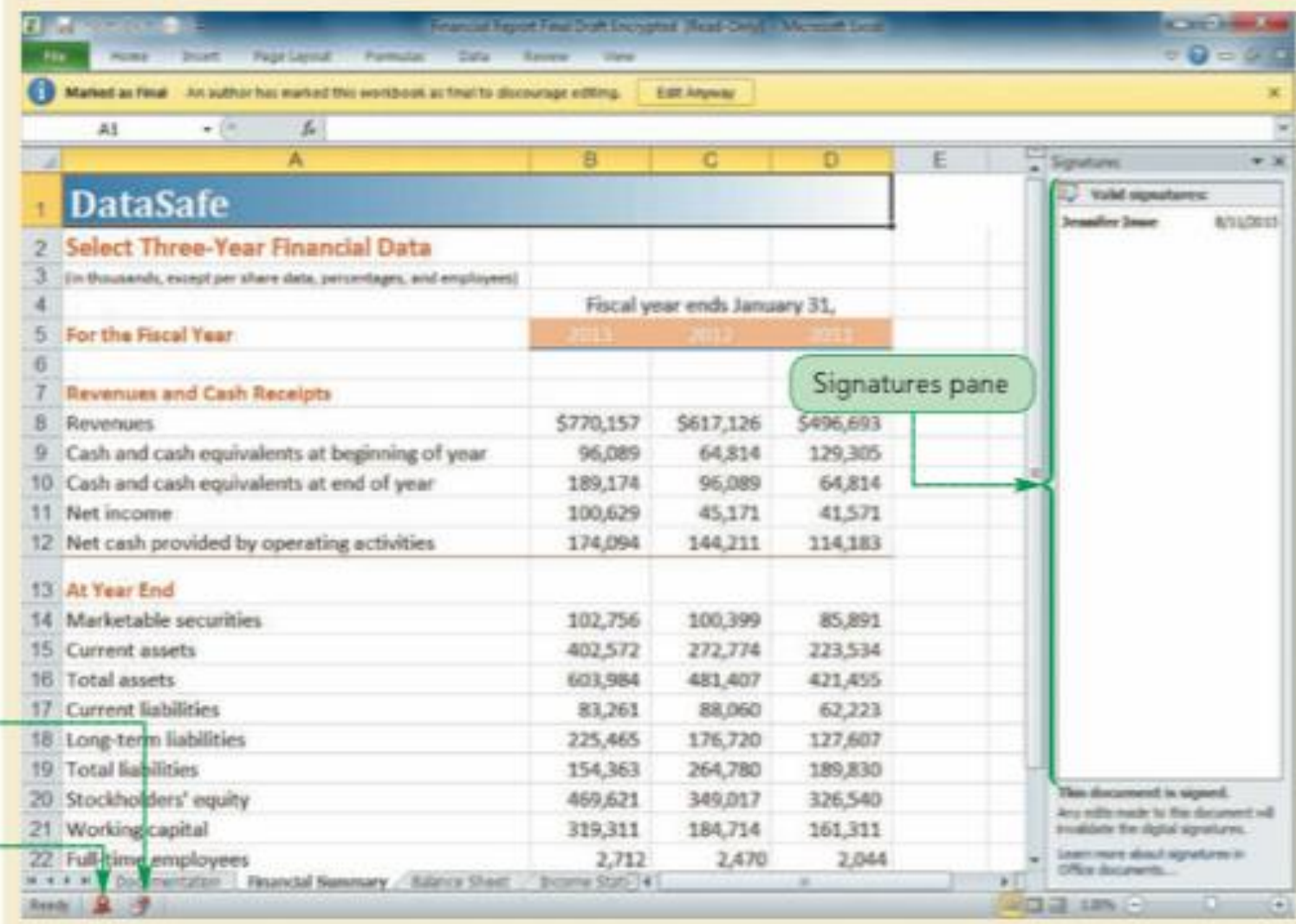
- A digital signature is **an electronic version of a written signature** and provides a way to authenticate a workbook. Digital signatures cannot be forged. Also, a workbook signed with a digital signature **cannot be altered without removing the signature**, ensuring that the workbook received is the one that the user intended to send.
- With a digital signature, other users know that the workbook comes from **a trusted source** and has not been altered since it was originally signed, and that its origin is accepted by all parties and can't be repudiated by the signer.
- To add a digital signature, you need a **digital ID or digital certificate**, which authenticates the source of the signature. If you do not have a digital certificate, you can get one from a third-party source or you can create your own.
- The third-party source, also known as a certificate authority (CA), is a trusted entity that issues certificates as a service for companies and individuals. The CA may be a commercial service that requires payment. If you create your own certificate, it authenticates the file only for that computer and not for other users on other computers.

PROVIDING A DIGITAL SIGNATURE

- **To Add a Digital Signature to a Workbook:**
 - Click the File tab on the Ribbon, and then click Info in the navigation bar.
 - Click the Protect Workbook button, and then click Add a Digital Signature.
 - If requested, specify whether to create a third-party digital ID or a local digital ID. Provide descriptive information for the digital ID.
 - If no digital IDs are made, specify whether to create a third-party digital ID or a local digital ID. Provide descriptive information for the digital ID, and then click the Create button.
 - Enter a purpose for the digital signature, click the Sign button, and then click the OK button.



PROVIDING A DIGITAL SIGNATURE



The screenshot shows an Excel 2010 window with a financial report titled "DataSafe". The report includes a table of financial data for the years 2011, 2012, and 2013. A green arrow points to the "Marked as final" status bar at the top, indicating that the workbook is marked as final. Another green arrow points to the "Signatures" pane on the right, which shows a digital signature for "Dimitrios Stavrakakis" dated 8/11/2011. A third green arrow points to the "Full-time employees" row in the table, indicating that the workbook is digitally signed.

Financial Report True Draft Encrypted (Read-Only) - Microsoft Excel

Marked as final: An author has marked this workbook as final to discourage editing. [Edit Anyway](#)

A1

	A	B	C	D	E
1	DataSafe				
2	Select Three-Year Financial Data				
3	(in thousands, except per share data, percentages, and employees)				
4		Fiscal year ends January 31,			
5	For the Fiscal Year:	2011	2012	2013	
6					
7	Revenues and Cash Receipts				
8	Revenues	\$770,157	\$617,126	\$496,693	
9	Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of year	96,089	64,814	129,305	
10	Cash and cash equivalents at end of year	189,174	96,089	64,814	
11	Net income	100,629	45,171	41,571	
12	Net cash provided by operating activities	174,094	144,211	114,183	
13	At Year End				
14	Marketable securities	102,756	100,399	85,891	
15	Current assets	402,572	272,774	223,534	
16	Total assets	603,984	481,407	421,455	
17	Current liabilities	83,261	88,060	62,223	
18	Long-term liabilities	225,465	176,720	127,607	
19	Total liabilities	154,363	264,780	189,830	
20	Stockholders' equity	469,621	349,017	326,540	
21	Working capital	319,311	184,714	161,311	
22	Full-time employees	2,712	2,470	2,044	

Signatures pane

Valid signatures:
Dimitrios Stavrakakis 8/11/2011

This document is signed.
Any edits made to this document will invalidate the digital signatures.
[Learn more about signatures in Office documents...](#)

indicates that the workbook is marked as final

indicates that the workbook is digitally signed

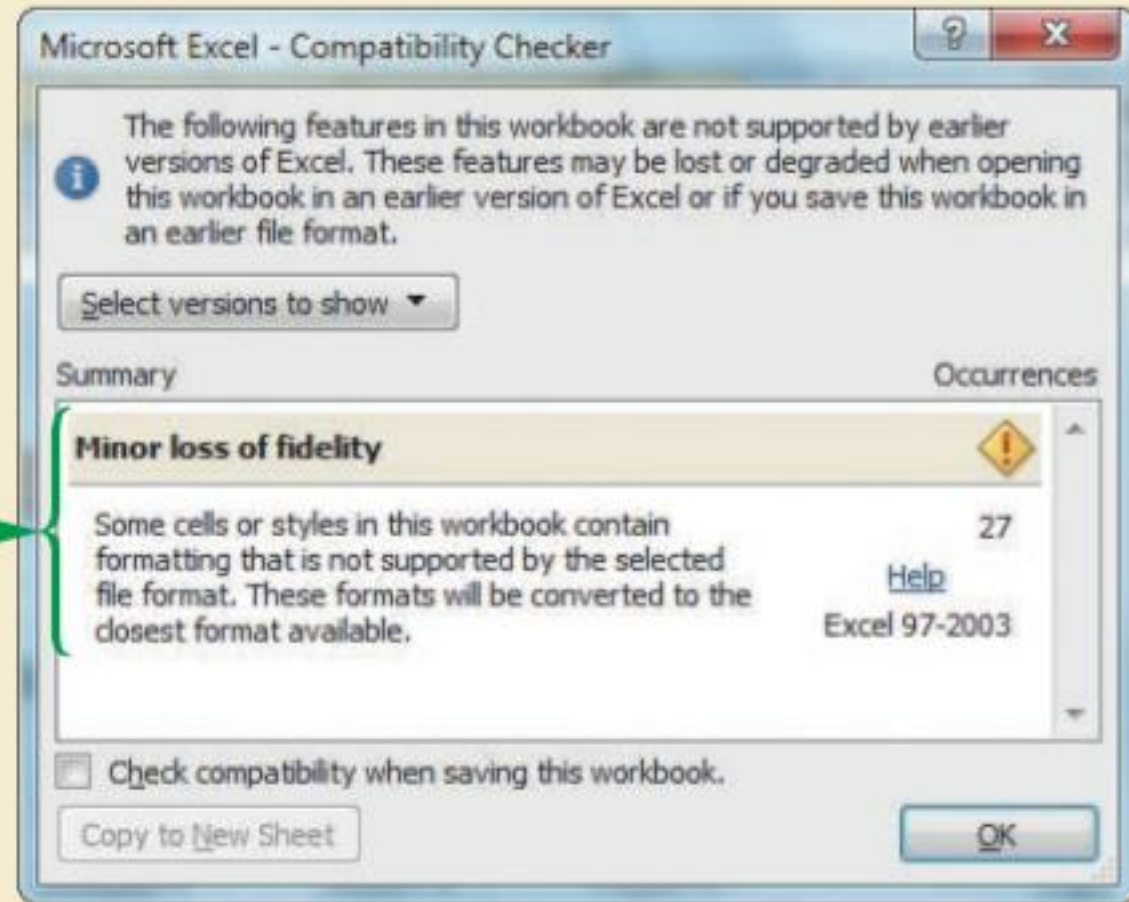
ENSURING BACKWARD COMPATIBILITY IN A WORKBOOK



- You will sometimes need to **create a copy of a workbook that is compatible with earlier Excel versions** to share with other users. The Compatibility Checker flags any content, formatting, or element in the workbook that cannot be transferred to earlier versions of Excel.
- **To run the Compatibility Checker:**
 - Click the File tab on the Ribbon, and then click Info in the navigation bar.
 - Click the Check for Issues button, and then click Check Compatibility. The Compatibility Checker dialog box opens.
 - Read the summary of features not supported in the earlier versions of Excel, and then click the OK button.
 - Save the workbook with the save as type set to Excel 97-2003 Workbook.
 - Click the Yes button to continue saving the file, and then click the No button when prompted to convert the file to an Office Open XML format. Excel performs a last compatibility check, again finding that there will be minor differences in the format styles.
 - Click the Continue button in the Compatibility Checker dialog box. The Excel 2003 version of the workbook is saved.
 - Save and close the workbook.

ENSURING BACKWARD COMPATIBILITY IN A WORKBOOK

workbook is mostly compatible
with Excel 2003 except for
minor formatting changes



AUTOMATING TASKS WITH MACROS



- Using a macro, you can **automate any task you perform repeatedly**. For example, you can create a macro to print a worksheet, insert a set of dates and values, or import data from a text file and store it in Excel.
- Macros perform repetitive tasks consistently and faster than you can. And, after the macro is created and tested, you can be assured the tasks are done exactly the same way each time.
- To create and run macros, you need to use **the Developer tab**. By default, this tab is not displayed on the Ribbon.
- **To display the Developer tab on the Ribbon:**
 - Click the File tab on the Ribbon to open Backstage view, and then click the Options button in the navigation bar. The Excel Options dialog box opens.
 - In the left pane, click Customize Ribbon.
 - In the right pane, click the Developer check box to insert a check mark.
 - Click the OK button. The Developer tab appears on the Ribbon.

AUTOMATING TASKS WITH MACROS

select Customize Ribbon

check the Developer check box to display the Developer tab on the Ribbon

Developer tab added to the Ribbon

RECORDING A MACRO



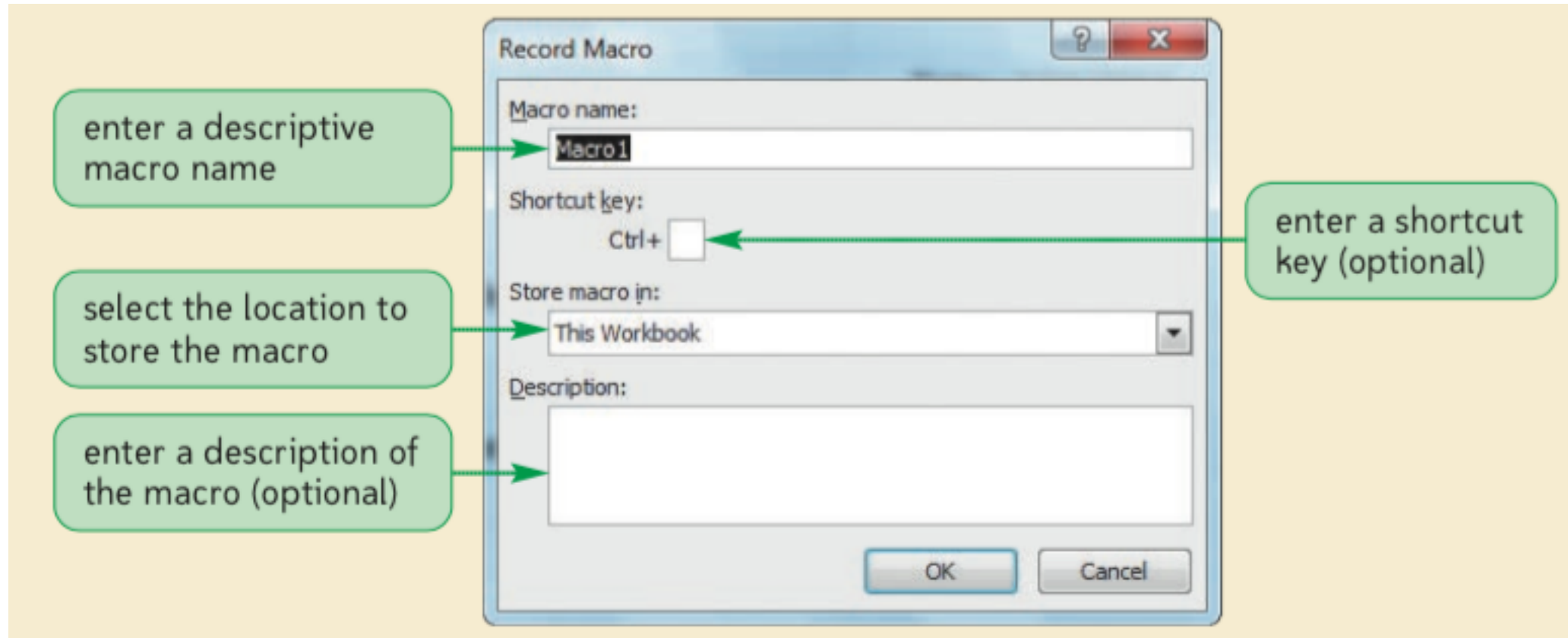
- You can create an Excel macro in one of two ways: You can use the **macro recorder** to record keystrokes and mouse actions as you perform them, or you can enter a series of commands in the **Visual Basic for Applications** (VBA) programming language.
- The macro recorder can record only those actions you perform with the keyboard or mouse. The macro recorder is a good choice for creating simple macros. For more sophisticated macros, you might need to write VBA code directly in the Visual Basic Editor.
- Each macro must have a **unique name that begins with a letter**. The macro name can contain up to 255 characters, including letters, numbers, and the underscore symbol. The macro name cannot include spaces or special characters. It is helpful to use a descriptive name that describes the macro's purpose.
- You can assign a **shortcut key** to run the macro directly from the keyboard. Macro shortcut keys are used to run a macro. Assigning a shortcut key overrides the equivalent default Excel shortcut for the open workbook. For example, using the Ctrl+p keys to run a macro overrides the default Excel 2010 shortcut for printing a selected area while the workbook containing the macro is open. Some people find macro shortcut keys a quick way to run a macro; others dislike them because they override the original function of the shortcut key. It's a personal preference.

RECORDING A MACRO



- A macro needs to be **stored** somewhere. By default, the macro is stored in the current workbook, making the macro available in only that workbook when it is open. Another option is to store the macro in the Personal Macro workbook, a hidden workbook named Personal.xlsb that opens whenever you start Excel, making the macro available any time you use Excel. The Personal Macro workbook stores commonly used macros that apply to many workbooks. It is most convenient for users on stand-alone computers. Finally, you can store the macro in a new workbook. Keep in mind that the new workbook must be open to use the macro. For example, an accountant might store a set of macros that help with end-of-the-month tasks in a separate workbook.
- You can also add a **description of the macro** to briefly explain what it does. You can also include the name of the person to contact and the date it was created.
- **To Record a Macro:**
 - In the Code group on the Developer tab, click the Record Macro button.
 - Enter a name for the macro, and then specify the location to store the macro.
 - Specify a shortcut key (optional).
 - Enter a description of the macro (optional).
 - Click the OK button to start the macro recorder.
 - Perform the tasks you want to automate.
 - Click the Stop Recording button.

RECORDING A MACRO

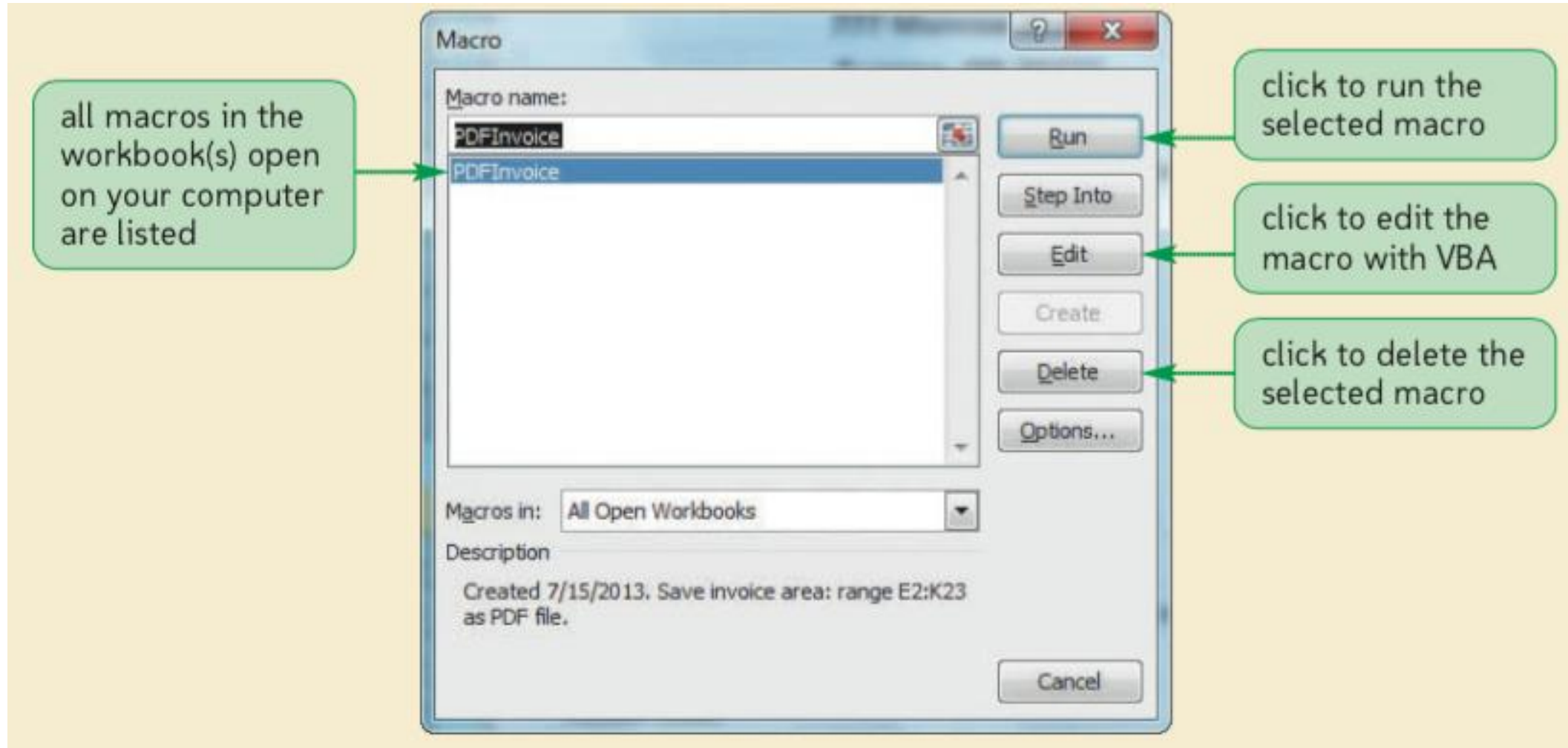


RUNNING A MACRO



- After you record a macro, you should run it to test whether it works as intended. Running a macro means Excel performs each of the steps in the same order as when it was recorded.
 - To run the macro you created, you can either use the shortcut key you specified or select the macro in the Macro dialog box.
 - The Macro dialog box lists all of the macros in the open workbooks. From this dialog box, you can select and run a macro, edit the macro with VBA, run the macro one step at a time so you can determine in which step an error occurs, or delete it.
 - **To Run a Macro:**
 - Press the shortcut key assigned to the macro.
- Or
- In the Code group on the Developer tab, click the Macros button.
 - Select the macro from the list of macros.
 - Click the Run button.

RUNNING A MACRO



REFERENCES

Microsoft Office
*Shipping, Finance &
Management Skills*



Ann Shaffer, P.Carey (2012), 'New Perspectives on Microsoft Office 2010', Course Technology

J.J. Parsons, D. Oja, D.W.Beskeen, C.M. Cram, J. Duffy (2012), 'Computer Concepts and Microsoft Office 2010 - Illustrated Series', Cengage Learning

Joan Lambert, Joyce Cox (2010), 'Microsoft Office Professional 2010 Step by Step', Microsoft Press

June Jamrich Parsons, Dan Oja, Roy Ageloff, Patrick Carey (2010), 'New Perspectives on Microsoft Excel 2010-Comprehensive', Course Technology Eds.

Paul McFedries (2010), 'Formulas and Functions: Microsoft Excel 2010', Pearson Education, Inc

R. T. Grauer, M. Poatsy (2013), 'Exploring Microsoft Office 2010 Plus', Pearson New International Edition

R. T. Grauer, M. Poatsy, (2013), 'Exploring Microsoft Office Excel 2010 Comprehensive', Pearson New International Edition